BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 9

On Governing the Empire

Constantine VII Porphyrogennetos

ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΙΔΙΟΝ ΥΙΟΝ ΡΩΜΑΝΟΝ

On Governing the Empire

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

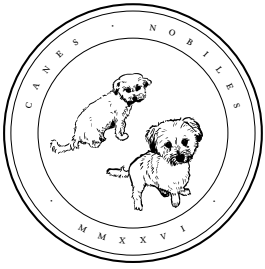


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 9 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows I. Bekker's edition, Constantinus Porphyrogenitus, De thematibus et de administrando imperio (Bonn, 1840)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

Prologue · To His Son Romanos 7
I · The Pechenegs and the Emperor 11
II · The Pechenegs and the Rus 13
III · The Pechenegs and the Turks 15
IV · The Pechenegs, the Rus, and the Turks 16
V · The Pechenegs and the Bulgarians 17
VI · The Pechenegs and the Chersonites 18
VII · Imperial Agents Sent from Cherson 19
VIII · Agents Sent by Warship from the City 21
IX · The Rus Voyage to Constantinople 24
X · How Khazaria Is to Be Fought 33
XI · Cherson and Bosporus 34
XII · Black Bulgaria and Khazaria 35
XIII · The Nations Near the Turks; What Not to Grant 36
XIV · The Genealogy of Muhammad 52
XV · The Fatimids 55
XVI · The Saracens' Going Forth 56
XVII · From Theophanes: Muhammad 57
XVIII · Abu Bakr 59
XIX · Umar 60
XX · Uthman 61
XXI · From Theophanes: Muawiya and His Line 62
XXII · From Theophanes: Justinian and the Later Caliphs 73
XXIII · Iberia and Spain 79

XXIV · Spain 83
XXV · From Theophanes: The Vandals in Africa 84
XXVI · The Genealogy of King Hugh 91
XXVII · The Theme of Lombardy 97
XXVIII · The Settling of Venice 105
XXIX · Dalmatia and Its Nations 109
XXX · An Account of Dalmatia 132
XXXI · The Croats 144
XXXII · The Serbs 151
XXXIII · The Zachlumi 163
XXXIV · The Terbouniotes and Kanalites 165
XXXV · The Diocletians 167
XXXVI · The Pagani 168
XXXVII · The Pechenegs 170
XXXVIII · The Origin of the Turks 176
XXXIX · The Kabaroi 182
XL · The Clans of the Kabaroi and Turks 183
XLI · Moravia 188
XLII · Geography from Thessalonike to Sarkel 190
XLIII · Taron 199
XLIV · Apachounes and Manzikert 214
XLV · The Iberians 223
XLVI · The Iberians and Adranoutzion 237
XLVII · The Cypriots' Migration 250
XLVIII · Canon 39 of the Sixth Council; Greek Fire 252
XLIX · The Slavs of Patras 255
L · The Slavs of the Peloponnese; Themes and Offices 261
LI · The Imperial Dromons 281
LII · The Levy of Horses in the Peloponnese 297
LIII · The History of Cherson 298

A wise son gladdens his father, and the Lord gives kings their thrones; let Romanos hear and learn. Constantine sets out what he must know: which nations can help or harm the Romans, and by whom each may be fought and subdued; their greed and their demands; their descent, customs, lands, and distances; the dealings between the Romans and other nations; and what has been changed in the state over time. He has written it so that his son may handle them wisely. The nations will dread him, God will shield him, and his throne will stand like the sun. The prologue closes in prayer for the son's reign, his house, and his enemies' fall.

Υἱὸς σοφὸς εὐφραίνει πατέρα, καὶ πατὴρ φιλόστοργος
(a)-son wise gladdens (a)-father and (a)-father loving
ἐπὶ υἱῷ τέρπεται φρονίμῳ. κύριος γὰρ δίδωσι νοῦν
over (a)-son delights sensible (the)-Lord for gives mind
ἡνίκα δεῖ εἰπεῖν, καὶ προστίθησιν οὖς τοῦ ἀκούειν.
when (one)-must to-speak and adds (an)-ear of-the to-hear
παρ᾽ αὐτῷ θησαυρὸς σοφίας, καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ δίδοται
with him (is)-(a)-treasure of-wisdom and from him is-given
πᾶν δώρημα τέλειον. καθιστᾷ βασιλεῖς ἐπὶ θρόνου, καὶ
every gift perfect he-sets kings upon (the)-throne and
κυρίαν τοῦ παντὸς δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς. νῦν οὖν ἄκουσόν μου,
lordship of-the all gives to-them now then hear me
υἱέ, καὶ τήνδε μεμαθηκὼς τὴν διδαχὴν ἔσῃ σοφὸς
son and this having-learned the teaching you-will-be wise
παρὰ φρονίμοις καὶ φρόνιμος παρὰ σοφοῖς λογισθήσῃ·
among (the)-sensible and sensible among (the)-wise you-will-be-reckoned
εὐλογήσουσί σε οἱ λαοί, καὶ μακαριοῦσί σε πλήθη ἐθνῶν.
will-bless you the peoples and will-call-blessed you multitudes of-nations
διδάχθητι ἃ χρή σε πρὸ πάντων εἰδέναι, καὶ
be-taught (the-things)-which (it)-is-needful you before all to-know and
νουνεχῶς τῶν τῆς βασιλείας οἰάκων ἀντιλαβοῦ. περὶ
sensibly of-the of-the empire helms take-hold concerning

τῶν ἐνεστώτων μελέτησον καὶ περὶ τῶν μελλόντων
the present-things take-thought and concerning the things-to-come
διδάχθητι, ἵνα πεῖραν μετ᾽ εὐβουλίας ἀθροίσῃς, καὶ
be-taught so-that experience with good-counsel you-may-gather and
μεγαλεπήβολος ἔσῃ περὶ τὰ πράγματα. ἰδοὺ ἐκτίθημί
great-in-enterprise you-will-be concerning the affairs behold I-set-out
σοι διδασκαλίαν ὥστε τῇ ἐκ ταύτης πείρᾳ καὶ γνώσει
for-you (a)-teaching so-that by-the from this experience and knowledge
συνετισθέντα περὶ τὰς βελτίστας βουλὰς καὶ τὸ κοινῇ
having-been-made-wise concerning the best counsels and the in-common
συμφέρον μὴ διαμαρτάνειν. πρῶτα μὲν ποῖον ἔθνος κατὰ
advantageous not to-miss first indeed what nation in
τί μὲν ὠφελῆσαι δύναται Ῥωμαίους κατὰ τί δὲ βλάψαι,
what indeed to-benefit is-able (the)-Romans in what and to-harm
καὶ πῶς ἕκαστον τούτων, καὶ παρὰ ποίου δύναται ἔθνους
and how each of-these and by what is-able nation
καὶ πολεμεῖσθαι καὶ ὑποτάσσεσθαι, ἔπειτα περὶ τῆς
both to-be-warred-upon and to-be-subjected then concerning the
ἀπλήστου καὶ ἀκορέστου αὐτῶν γνώμης, καὶ ὧν
insatiable and unsatisfied their mind and (of-the-things)-which
παραλόγως ἐξαιτοῦνται λαμβάνειν, εἶθ᾽ οὕτως καὶ περὶ
unreasonably they-demand to-receive then thus also concerning
διαφορᾶς ἑτέρων ἐθνῶν, γενεαλογίας τε ἐθνῶν καὶ βίου
(the)-difference of-other nations genealogy both of-nations and of-life
διαγωγῆς, καὶ θέσεως καὶ κράσεως τῆς κατοικουμένης
conduct and position and climate of-the inhabited
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν γῆς καὶ περιηγήσεως αὐτῆς, καὶ σταδιασμοῦ
by them land and description its and measurement
πρὸς τούτοις, καὶ περὶ τῶν ἔν τινι καιρῷ μεταξὺ
in-addition-to these also concerning the at some time between
Ῥωμαίων καὶ διαφόρων ἐθνῶν συμβεβηκότων, καὶ μετὰ
(the)-Romans and various nations having-happened and after

ταῦτα ὅσα ἐν τῇ καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς πολιτείᾳ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν
these(-things) whatever in the among us polity but also in
πάσῃ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ κατά τινας χρόνους ἐκαινοτομήθη.
all the of-(the)-Romans rule at certain times was-innovated
ταῦτα ἐσοφισάμην κατ᾽ ἐμαυτὸν καὶ εἶπα γνωστά σοι
these(-things) I-devised by myself and said known to-you
ποιῆσαι τῷ ἠγαπημένῳ μου υἱῷ, ἵν᾽ ἔχῃς εἰδέναι
to-make the beloved my son so-that you-may-be-able to-know
τὴν ἑκάστου τούτων διαφοράν, καὶ πῶς ἢ μεταχειρίζεσθαι
the of-each of-these difference and how either to-handle
ταῦτα καὶ οἰκειοῦσθαι ἢ πολεμεῖν καὶ ἀντιτάσσεσθαι.
these and to-win-over or to-war and to-oppose
πτοηθήσονται γάρ σε ὡς μεγαλοφυῆ, καὶ ὡς ἀπὸ πυρὸς
they-will-be-terrified for you as great-natured and as from fire
φεύξονται ἀπὸ σοῦ· φιμωθήσονται τὰ χείλη αὐτῶν, καὶ ὡς
they-will-flee from you will-be-muzzled the lips their and as
ὑπὸ βελῶν τοῖς σοῖς κατατρωθήσονται ῥήμασιν. ὀφθήσῃ
by arrows by-the your they-will-be-wounded words you-will-appear
αὐτοῖς φοβερός, καὶ ἀπὸ προσώπου σου τρόμος λήψεται
to-them terrible and from (the)-face your trembling will-seize
αὐτούς. καί σου ὁ παντοκράτωρ ὑπερασπιεῖ, καὶ συνετιεῖ
them and of-you the almighty will-shield and will-make-wise
σε ὁ πλάσας σε· κατευθυνεῖ σου τὰ διαβήματα, καὶ
you the (one)-having-formed you will-direct your the steps and
ἑδράσει σε ἐπὶ βάσιν ἀσάλευτον. ὁ θρόνος σου ὡς
will-establish you upon (a)-foundation unshaken the throne your as
ὁ ἥλιος ἐναντίον αὐτοῦ, καὶ οἱ ὀφθαλμοὶ αὐτοῦ ἔσονται
the sun before him and the eyes his will-be
βλέποντες ἐπί σε, καὶ οὐδὲν οὐ μὴ ἅψηταί σου τῶν
looking upon you and nothing not — will-touch you of-the
χαλεπῶν, καθότι αὐτός σε ἐξελέξατο καὶ ἀπὸ μήτρας
hard-things since he you chose and from (the)-womb

ἀφώρισεν, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ βασιλείαν ὡς ἀγαθῷ ὑπὲρ
set-apart and the his kingdom as to-(a)-good-man above
πάντας σοι ἔδωκε, καὶ τέθεικεν ὡς σκοπὴν ἐπὶ βουνοῦ
all to-you he-gave and has-set as (a)-watchtower upon (a)-hill
καὶ ὡς χρυσοῦν ἀνδριάντα ἐφ' ὑψηλοῦ, καὶ ὡς πόλιν ἐπ'
and as (a)-golden statue on (a)-high-place and as (a)-city on
ὄρους ἀνύψωσεν, ὥστε δωροφορεῖσθαι ὑπ' ἐθνῶν καὶ
(a)-mountain he-raised-up so-that to-be-brought-gifts by nations and
προσκινεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν κατοικούντων τὴν γῆν. ἀλλὰ σὺ
to-be-bowed-down-to by those dwelling-in the earth but you
κύριε ὁ θεός μου, οὗ ἡ βασιλεία ἀνώλεθρος καὶ αἰώνιος,
Lord — God my whose the kingdom (is)-indestructible and eternal
εἴης κατευοδῶν τὸν διὰ σοῦ ἐξ ἐμοῦ γεννηθέντα,
may-you-be prospering the(-one) through you from me begotten
καὶ ἔστω ἡ ἐπισκοπὴ τοῦ προσώπου σου ἐπ' αὐτόν, καὶ
and let-be the watching of-the face your upon him and
τὸ οὖς σου ἐπικλινέσθω ταῖς τούτου δεήσεσι. σκεπασάτω
the ear your let-incline to-the his prayers let-shelter
αὐτὸν ἡ χείρ σου, καὶ βασιλευέτω ἕνεκεν ἀληθείας, καὶ
him the hand your and let-him-reign for-the-sake-of truth and
ὁδηγήσῃ αὐτὸν ἡ δεξιά σου. κατευθυνθείησαν αἱ ὁδοὶ
may-guide him the right-hand your may-be-directed the ways
αὐτοῦ ἐνώπιόν σου τοῦ φυλάξασθαι τὰ δικαιώματά σου.
his before you of-the to-keep the ordinances your
πρὸ προσώπου αὐτοῦ πεσοῦνται πολέμιοι, καὶ λείξουσι
before (the)-face his will-fall enemies and will-lick
χοῦν οἱ ἐχθροὶ αὐτοῦ. κατασκιασθείη τὸ στέλεχος τοῦ
dust the foes his may-be-overshadowed the stock of-the
γένους αὐτοῦ πολυγονίας φύλλοις, καὶ ἡ σκιὰ τοῦ
family his of-fruitfulness with-leaves and the shadow of-the

καρποῦ αὐτοῦ ἐπικαλύψαι ὄρη βασίλεια, ὅτι διὰ
fruit his may-cover mountains royal because through
σοῦ βασιλεύουσι βασιλεῖς δοξάζοντές σε εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα.
you reign kings glorifying you to the age

I · THE PECHENEGS AND THE EMPEROR

Constantine says he writes in plain, everyday speech, not in Attic display, because his aim is to teach. It always profits the emperor to keep peace with the Pechenegs. He should send an envoy each year with fitting gifts, receive hostages in return, and have them honored in the city. For the Pechenegs border on Cherson, and if they are hostile they can raid it and the Regions.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ πρὸς πόσα
concerning the Pechenegs and toward how-many-things
συμβάλλονται μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων εἰρηνεύοντες.
they-contribute with the emperor of-(the)-Romans being-at-peace
Ἄκουσον τοίνυν, υἱέ, ἅ μοι δοκεῖ σε μὴ ἀγνοεῖν,
hear therefore son (the-things)-which to-me seems you not to-be-ignorant-of
καὶ νοήμων γενοῦ, ἵνα κτήσῃ κυβέρνησιν. φημὶ γὰρ
and intelligent become so-that you-may-acquire governance I-say for
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν εἶναι καλὸν τῶν ὑποτεταγμένων
also for-the others all to-be good of-the subjects
τὴν μάθησιν, διαφερόντως δὲ σοὶ τῷ ὑπὲρ τῆς
the learning especially and for-you the(-one) for the
πάντων σωτηρίας ὀφείλοντι διαμεριμνᾶν καὶ τὴν κοσμικὴν
of-all safety owing to-take-thought and the worldly
ὁλκάδα πηδαλιουχεῖν τε καὶ κυβερνᾶν. εἰ δὲ σαφεῖ καὶ
ship to-steer both and to-pilot if and in-clear and
κατημαξευμένῳ λόγῳ καὶ οἷον εἰκῇ ῥέοντι πεζῷ καὶ
well-worn speech and as-it-were at-random flowing plain and

ἁπλοϊκῷ πρὸς τὴν τῶν προκειμένων ἐχρησάμην δήλωσιν,
simple for the of-the matters-at-hand I-have-used setting-forth
μηδὲν θαυμάσῃς υἱέ· οὐ γὰρ ἐπίδειξιν καλλιγραφίας ἢ
in-no-way wonder son not for (a)-display of-fine-writing or
φράσεως ἠττικισμένης καὶ τὸ διῃρμένον διογκούσης καὶ
of-diction atticized and the elevated swelling and
ὑψηλοῦ ποιῆσαι ἐσπούδασα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον διὰ κοινῆς καὶ
lofty to-make I-was-eager but rather through common and
καθωμιλημένης ἀπαγγελίας διδάξαι σε ἔσπευσα ἅπερ
everyday speech to-teach you I-hastened (the-things)-which
οἶομαι δεῖν σε μὴ ἀγνοεῖν, καὶ ἃ τὴν
I-think (it)-is-needful you not to-be-ignorant-of and (the-things)-which the
ἐκ μακρᾶς ἐμπειρίας σύνεσίν τε καὶ φρόνησιν εὐμαρῶς
from long experience understanding both and prudence easily
σοι δύναται προξενεῖν. ὑπολαμβάνω γὰρ κατὰ πολὺ
for-you are-able to-procure I-suppose for in many-ways
συμφέρειν ἀεὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων εἰρήνην ἐθέλειν
to-be-advantageous always for-the emperor of-(the)-Romans peace to-wish
ἔχειν μετὰ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ φιλικὰς
to-have with the nation of-the Pechenegs and friendly
πρὸς αὐτοὺς ποιεῖσθαι συνθήκας τε καὶ σπονδάς, καὶ
toward them to-make treaties both and pacts and
ἀποστέλλειν καθ' ἕκαστον χρόνον ἐντεῦθεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς
to-send by each year from-here to them
ἀποκρισιάριον μετὰ ξενίων ἁρμοζόντων καὶ πρὸς τὸ
(an)-envoy with gifts fitting and for the
ἔθνος ἐπιτηδείων, καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι ἐκεῖθεν ὁμήρους
nation suitable and to-receive from-there hostages
ἤτοι ὄψιδας καὶ ἀποκρισιάριον, οἵτινες ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ
that-is pledges and (an)-envoy who in the God-guarded
ταύτῃ πόλει μετὰ τοῦ καθυπουργοῦντος εἰς ταῦτα
this city with the(-one) attending to these(-things)

συνελεύσονται, καὶ βασιλικῶν εὐεργεσιῶν καὶ φιλοτιμιῶν
will-come-together and of-imperial benefactions and gifts
τῶν ἐπαξίων πάντων τοῦ βασιλεύοντος ἀπολαύσουσιν, ὅτι
the worthy of-all of-the reigning(-one) will-enjoy because
γειτνιάζει τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν τῷ μέρει
borders the such nation of-the Pechenegs on-the region
τῆς Χερσῶνος, καὶ εἰ μὴ φιλίως ἔχουσι πρὸς ἡμᾶς,
— of-Cherson and if not in-friendly-way they-are toward us
δύνανται κατὰ τῆς Χερσῶνος ἐξέρχεσθαι καὶ κουρσεύειν καὶ
they-are-able against — Cherson to-go-out and to-raid and
λῃΐζεσθαι αὐτήν τε τὴν Χερσῶνα καὶ τὰ λεγόμενα κλίματα.
to-plunder itself both — Cherson and the called regions

II · THE PECHENEGS AND THE RUS

The Pechenegs border on the Rus and often plunder Russia when the two are not at peace. The Rus therefore seek peace with them: they buy cattle, horses, and sheep from them, and they cannot go to war abroad while the Pechenegs could attack their homes. Nor can the Rus come to Constantinople, for at the river barrages they must carry their boats overland, and there the Pechenegs fall on them and slaughter them.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ τῶν Ῥῶς.
concerning the Pechenegs and the Rus
Ὅτι καὶ τοῖς Ῥῶς οἱ Πατζινακῖται γείτονες καὶ ὅμοροι
that also to-the Rus the Pechenegs neighbors and bordering
καθεστήκασι, καὶ πολλάκις, ὅταν μὴ πρὸς ἀλλήλους
have-become and often when not with each-other
εἰρηνεύουσι, πραιδεύουσι τὴν Ῥωσίαν καὶ ἱκανῶς αὐτὴν
they-are-at-peace they-plunder — Russia and considerably it
παραβλάπτουσι καὶ λυμαίνονται.
they-harm and ravage

ὅτι καὶ οἱ Ῥῶς διὰ σπουδῆς ἔχουσιν εἰρήνην ἔχειν μετὰ
that also the Rus with eagerness hold peace to-have with
τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν· ἀγοράζουσι γὰρ ἐξ αὐτῶν βόας καὶ
the Pechenegs they-buy for from them cattle and
ἵππους καὶ πρόβατα, καὶ ἐκ τούτων εὐμαρέστερον διαζῶσι
horses and sheep and from these more-easily they-live
καὶ τρυφερώτερον, ἐπεὶ μηδὲν τῶν προειρημένων ζῴων
and more-luxuriously since none of-the aforementioned animals
ἐν τῇ Ῥωσίᾳ καθέστηκεν. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ πρὸς ὑπερορίους
in — Russia exists but not-even to beyond-the-border
πολέμους ἀπέρχεσθαι δύνανται ὅλως οἱ Ῥῶς εἰ μὴ μετὰ
wars to-go-away are-able at-all the Rus if not with
τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντες, διότι δύνανται ἐν τῷ
the Pechenegs being-at-peace because they-are-able in the
ἐκείνους τῶν οἰκείων ὑποχωρεῖν αὐτοὶ ἐπερχόμενοι
those from-the own(-lands) to-withdraw themselves coming-upon
τὰ ἐκείνων ἀφανίζειν τε καὶ λυμαίνεσθαι. διὸ
the(-things) of-those to-destroy both and to-ravage therefore
μᾶλλον ἀεὶ σπουδὴν οἱ Ῥῶς τίθενται, διά τε τὸ μὴ
rather always eagerness the Rus put because-of both the not
παραβλάπτεσθαι παρ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν εἶναι
to-be-harmed by them and because-of the strong to-be
τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος, συμμαχίαν παρ᾽ αὐτῶν λαμβάνειν καὶ
the such nation alliance from them to-receive and
ἔχειν αὐτοὺς εἰς βοήθειαν, ὡς ἂν καὶ τῆς ἔχθρας αὐτῶν
to-have them for help so-that — both of-the enmity their
ἀπαλλάττωνται καὶ τῆς βοηθείας καταπολαύοιεν.
they-may-be-rid and of-the help may-enjoy
ὅτι οὐδὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ταύτην τῶν Ῥωμαίων
that not-even to the reigning this of-the Romans
πόλιν οἱ Ῥῶς παραγίνεσθαι δύνανται εἰ μὴ μετὰ τῶν
city the Rus to-come are-able if not with the

Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντες, οὔτε πολέμου χάριν οὔτε
Pechenegs being-at-peace neither of-war for-the-sake nor
πραγματείας, ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ μετὰ τῶν πλοίων εἰς τοὺς
of-trade since in the with the ships at the
φραγμοὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ γίνεσθαι τοὺς Ῥῶς καὶ μὴ
barrages of-the river to-arrive the Rus and not
δύνασθαι διελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ ἐξαγάγωσι τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰ
to-be-able to-pass-through if not they-take-out of-the river the
πλοῖα αὐτῶν καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων βαστάζοντες διαβήσωσιν,
ships their and upon the shoulders carrying they-take-across
ἐπιτίθενται τότε αὐτοῖς οἱ τοῦ τοιούτου ἔθνους τῶν
set-upon then them those of-the such nation of-the
Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ ῥᾳδίως, ἅτε πρὸς δύο πόνους
Pechenegs and easily inasmuch-as against two labors
ἀντέχειν μὴ δύνανται, τροποῦνται καὶ κατασφάζονται.
to-hold-out not they-are-able they-are-routed and are-slaughtered

III · THE PECHENEGS AND THE TURKS

The Turks greatly fear the Pechenegs, who have often defeated them and nearly destroyed them, and so the Pechenegs hold them in check.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Τούρκων.
concerning the Pechenegs and Turks
Ὅτι καὶ τὸ τῶν Τούρκων γένος μεγάλως πτοεῖται
that also the of-the Turks race greatly is-terrified
καὶ δέδιε τοὺς εἰρημένους Πατζινακίτας διὰ τὸ
and fears the said Pechenegs because-of the
πολλάκις ἡττηθῆναι παρ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ τελείως σχεδὸν
often to-have-been-defeated by them and completely almost

παραδοθῆναι ἀφανισμῷ. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀεὶ φοβεροὶ
to-have-been-handed-over to-annihilation and because-of this always fearsome
τοῖς Τούρκοις οἱ Πατζινακῖται νομίζονται, καὶ συστέλλονται
to-the Turks the Pechenegs are-considered and are-held-in-check
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν.
by them

IV · THE PECHENEGS, THE RUS, AND THE TURKS

While the emperor is at peace with the Pechenegs, neither the Rus nor the Turks can attack the Romans or demand great sums for peace, for they fear that the emperor could turn the Pechenegs against them. The Pechenegs, bound by friendship and won by letters and gifts, can easily invade both their lands, enslave their women and children, and plunder their country.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Ῥῶς καὶ Τούρκων.
concerning the Pechenegs and Rus and Turks
Ὅτι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν
that the emperor of-(the)-Romans with the Pechenegs
εἰρηνεύοντος οὔτε Ῥῶς πολέμου νόμῳ κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων
being-at-peace neither (the)-Rus of-war by-law against the of-(the)-Romans
ἐπικρατείας οὔτε οἱ Τοῦρκοι δύνανται ἐπελθεῖν· ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε
dominion nor the Turks are-able to-come-upon but neither
ὑπὲρ τῆς εἰρήνης μεγάλα καὶ ὑπέρογκα χρήματά τε καὶ
for the peace great and excessive monies both and
πράγματα παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων δύνανται ἀπαιτεῖν, δεδιότες
goods from the Romans are-able to-demand fearing
τὴν διὰ τοῦ τοιούτου ἔθνους παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
the through the such nation from the emperor against them
ἰσχὺν ἐν τῷ ἐκείνους κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύειν. οἱ δὲ
strength in the those against (the)-Romans to-march-out the and

Πατζινακῖται καὶ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα φιλίᾳ συνδούμενοι
Pechenegs both by-the toward the emperor friendship being-bound
καὶ παρ᾽ ἐκείνου διὰ γραμμάτων καὶ δώρων ἀναπειθόμενοι
and by him through letters and gifts being-persuaded
δύνανται ῥᾳδίως κατὰ τῆς χώρας τῶν τε Ῥῶς καὶ τῶν
are-able easily against the land of-the both Rus and of-the
Τούρκων ἐπέρχεσθαι, καὶ ἐξανδραποδίζεσθαι τὰ τούτων
Turks to-come-upon and to-enslave the their
γύναια καὶ παιδάρια, καὶ ληΐζεσθαι τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν.
women and children and to-plunder the land their

V · THE PECHENEGS AND THE BULGARIANS

The emperor can seem more fearsome to the Bulgarians and force them to keep quiet by keeping peace with the Pechenegs, who border on them and can march against Bulgaria whenever they wish. The Bulgarians, having often been defeated and plundered by them, have learned that peace with the Pechenegs is to their advantage.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Βουλγάρων.
concerning the Pechenegs and Bulgarians
Ὅτι καὶ τοῖς Βουλγάροις φοβερώτερος ἂν εἶναι δόξειεν ὁ
that also to-the Bulgarians more-fearsome — to-be would-seem the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλεύς, καὶ ἀνάγκην ἡσυχίας ἐπιτιθέναι
of-the Romans emperor and (a)-necessity of-quiet to-impose
τούτοις δύναται, ἐκ τοῦ μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύειν,
on-them is-able from the with the Pechenegs to-be-at-peace
ἐπειδὴ καὶ πρὸς αὐτοὺς τοὺς Βουλγάρους οἱ εἰρημένοι
since also to them the Bulgarians the said
Πατζινακῖται πλησιάζουσι, καὶ ἡνίκα βουληθῶσιν ἢ δι᾽
Pechenegs are-near and when they-wish either for
οἰκεῖον κέρδος ἢ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων χάριτι,
own gain or for-the toward the emperor of-(the)-Romans favor

εὐχερῶς δύνανται κατὰ Βουλγαρίας ἐκστρατεύειν, καὶ ἀπὸ
easily they-are-able against Bulgaria to-march-out and from
τοῦ περιόντος πλήθους καὶ τῆς ἰσχύος αὐτῶν ὑπερνικᾶν
the superior multitude and the strength their to-overcome
αὐτοὺς καὶ ἡττᾶν. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ οἱ Βούλγαροι ἀγῶνα
them and to-defeat because-of this also the Bulgarians struggle
καὶ σπουδὴν διηνεκῶς ἔχουσι τοῦ εἰρηνεύειν καὶ ὁμονοεῖν
and eagerness continually have of-the to-be-at-peace and to-be-of-one-mind
μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν· ἐκ τοῦ γὰρ πολλάκις ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν
with the Pechenegs from the for often by them
καταπολεμηθῆναι καὶ πραιδευθῆναι τῇ πείρᾳ ἐγνώκασι
to-have-been-warred-down and to-have-been-plundered by-the experience they-have-learned
καλὸν καὶ συμφέρον εἶναι τὸ εἰρηνεύειν ἀεὶ πρὸς αὐτούς.
good and advantageous to-be the to-be-at-peace always toward them

VI · THE PECHENEGS AND THE CHERSONITES

Another group of Pechenegs lives near Cherson. They trade with the Chersonites and carry out missions for them and for the emperor to Russia, Khazaria, Zichia, and beyond, for an agreed fee paid in silks, ribbons, cloths, brocades, pepper, and leather. Being free and as it were independent, they do no service without pay.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Χερσωνιτῶν.
concerning the Pechenegs and Chersonites
Ὅτι καὶ ἕτερος λαὸς τῶν τοιούτων Πατζινακιτῶν τῷ μέρει
that also another people of-the such Pechenegs to-the region
τῆς Χερσῶνος παράκειται, οἵτινες καὶ πραγματεύονται μετὰ
— of-Cherson lies-near who also trade with
τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ ποιοῦσι τὰς δουλείας αὐτῶν τε καὶ
the Chersonites and do the services their both and
τοῦ βασιλέως εἴς τε τὴν Ῥωσίαν καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ τὴν
of-the emperor into both — Russia and Khazaria and —

Ζιχίαν καὶ εἰς πάντα τὰ ἐκεῖθεν μέρη, δηλονότι λαμβάνοντες
Zichia and into all the there parts evidently receiving
παρὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν τὸν προσυμπεφωνημένον μισθὸν
from the Chersonites the previously-agreed pay
ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης διακονίας κατὰ τὸ ἀνῆκον τῆς δουλείας
for the such service according-to the befitting of-the service
καὶ τοῦ κόπου αὐτῶν, οἷον βλαττία, πράνδια, χαρέρια,
and of-the labor their such-as purple-cloths ribbons loose-cloths
σήμεντα, πέπερι, δερμάτια ἀληθινὰ πάρδικα, καὶ ἕτερα εἴδη
brocades pepper leathers scarlet Parthian and other kinds
τὰ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπιζητούμενα, καθὼς ἂν ἕκαστος Χερσωνίτης
the by them sought-after as — each Chersonite
ἕκαστον Πατζινακίτην πείσῃ συμφωνῶν ἢ πεισθῇ·
each Pecheneg may-persuade agreeing or be-persuaded
ἐλεύθεροι γὰρ ὄντες καὶ οἷον αὐτόνομοι οἱ τοιοῦτοι
free for being and as-it-were independent the such
Πατζινακῖται οὐδεμίαν δουλείαν ἄνευ μισθοῦ ποιοῦσί ποτε.
Pechenegs no service without pay do ever

VII · IMPERIAL AGENTS SENT FROM CHERSON

An imperial agent who reaches Cherson must at once send to Patzinakia for hostages and escorts. He leaves the hostages in the fortress and travels with the escorts. The Pechenegs, insatiable for rarities, demand presents for themselves, their wives, their parents, and their horses, and the escorts demand pay again on the way back.

περὶ τῶν ἀποστελλομένων βασιλικῶν ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος ἐν
concerning the being-sent imperial-agents from Cherson into
Πατζινακίᾳ.
Patzinakia

Ὅτι ἡνίκα περάσῃ βασιλικὸς εἰς Χερσῶνα ἕνεκα
that when crosses (an)-imperial-agent to Cherson for-the-sake-of
τῆς τοιαύτης διακονίας, ὀφείλει εὐθὺς ἀποστέλλειν εἰς
the such service he-ought at-once to-send into
Πατζινακίαν καὶ ἐπιζητεῖν ὄψιδας παρ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ
Patzinakia and to-ask-for hostages from them and
διασώστας, καὶ ἐρχομένων αὐτῶν τοὺς μὲν ὄψιδας εἰς
escorts and coming them the indeed hostages in
τὸ κάστρον Χερσῶνος κρατουμένους καταλιμπάνειν, αὐτὸς
the fortress of-Cherson held to-leave-behind he
δὲ μετὰ τῶν διασωστῶν πρὸς Πατζινακίαν ἀπέρχεσθαι
and with the escorts to Patzinakia to-go-away
καὶ τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ἐπιτελεῖν. οἱ δὲ τοιοῦτοι Πατζινακῖται
and the commanded-things to-accomplish the and such Pechenegs
ἄπληστοι ὄντες καὶ τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς σπανίων ὀξεῖς
insatiable being and of-the among them rare-things keen
ἐπιθυμηταὶ ἀναίδην ἐπιζητοῦσι ξενάλια ἱκανά, οἱ μὲν
desirers shamelessly ask-for presents considerable the indeed
ὄψιδες ἄλλα μὲν λόγῳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἄλλα λόγῳ τῶν
hostages some indeed on-account their and others on-account of-the
αὐτῶν γυναικῶν, οἱ δὲ ἀποσῶσται τὰ μὲν ὑπὲρ τοῦ
their wives the and escorts the(-ones) indeed for the
κόπου αὐτῶν τὰ δὲ ὑπὲρ τοῦ κόπου τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτῶν.
labor their the(-ones) and for the labor of-the beasts their
εἶτα εἰσερχομένου τοῦ βασιλικοῦ εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν
then entering the imperial-agent into the land their
ζητοῦσι πρότερον τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως δῶρα· καὶ πάλιν ὅτε
they-ask-for first the of-the emperor gifts and again when
χωρήσουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους αὐτῶν, ζητοῦσι τὰ τῶν
they-make-room-for the men their they-ask-for the(-gifts) of-the
γυναικῶν αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν γονέων αὐτῶν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσοι
wives their and of-the parents their but also as-many-as

ἐν τῷ ἀποσώζειν αὐτὸν ὑποστρέφοντα πρὸς Χερσῶνα
in the to-escort him returning to Cherson
κατέλθωσι μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ζητοῦσι παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ῥογευθῆναι
come-down with him ask from him to-be-paid
διὰ τὸν κόπον αὐτῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτῶν.
because-of the labor their both and of-the beasts their

VIII · AGENTS SENT BY WARSHIP FROM THE CITY

Pechenegs also live toward Bulgaria, along the Dnieper and the Dniester, and an agent sent by warship can reach them without going to Cherson. Staying on board, he summons them, exchanges hostages, receives their oaths, and gives the imperial gifts. They can be hired against the Rus, the Bulgarians, or the Turks. When the cleric Gabriel urged the Turks to drive out the Pechenegs, their chiefs cried out that they would not fight them, for the Pechenegs are many and bad children. A closing note adds that the Pechenegs cross the Dnieper after spring and always summer there.

περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς θεοφυλάκτου πόλεως ἀποστελλομένων
concerning the from the God-guarded city being-sent
βασιλικῶν μετὰ χελανδίων διά τε τοῦ Δανουβίου καὶ
imperial-agents with warships through both the Danube and
Δάναπρι καὶ Δάναστρι ποταμοῦ ἐν Πατζινακίᾳ.
Dnieper and Dniester river into Patzinakia
Ὅτι καὶ εἰς τὸ μέρος τῆς Βουλγαρίας καθέζεται λαὸς
that also in the region — of-Bulgaria dwells (a)-people
τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ μέρος τοῦ Δάναπρι καὶ τοῦ
of-the Pechenegs toward the region of-the Dnieper and of-the
Δάναστρι καὶ τῶν ἑτέρων τῶν ἐκεῖσε ὄντων ποταμῶν,
Dniester and of-the other the there being rivers
καὶ βασιλικοῦ ἀποστελλομένου ἐντεῦθεν μετὰ χελανδίων
and (an)-imperial-agent being-sent from-here with warships

δύναται καὶ χωρὶς τοῦ εἰς Χερσῶνα ἀπελθεῖν ἐνταῦθα
is-able even without the to Cherson to-go-away here
συντόμως καὶ ταχέως εὑρίσκειν τοὺς αὐτοὺς Πατζινακίτας·
quickly and swiftly to-find the same Pechenegs
οὓς καὶ εὑρὼν μηνύει διὰ ἀνθρώπου αὐτοῦ ὁ βασιλικὸς
whom also having-found informs through (a)-man his the imperial-agent
ἐντὸς τῶν χελανδίων μένων καὶ μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τὰ βασιλικὰ
inside the warships remaining and with himself the imperial
ἐπιφερόμενος καὶ φυλάττων ἐν τοῖς χελανδίοις πράγματα.
bringing and guarding in the warships goods
καὶ κατέρχονται πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ ὅτε κατέλθωσι, δίδωσι
and they-come-down to him and when they-come-down gives
πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλικὸς ἀνθρώπους αὐτοῦ ὄψιδας, καὶ
to them the imperial-agent men his (as)-hostages and
λαμβάνει καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων Πατζινακιτῶν
receives also he from the such Pechenegs
ἑτέρους ὄψιδας, καὶ κρατεῖ αὐτοὺς εἰς τὰ χελάνδια,
other hostages and holds them in the warships
καὶ τότε συμφωνεῖ μετ' αὐτῶν· καὶ ὅτε ποιήσουσιν οἱ
and then agrees with them and when make the
Πατζινακῖται πρὸς τὸν βασιλικὸν τοὺς ὅρκους κατὰ τὰ
Pechenegs to the imperial-agent the oaths according-to the
ζάκανα αὐτῶν, ἐπιδίδωσιν αὐτοῖς τὰς βασιλικὰς δωρεάς,
customs their he-hands-over to-them the imperial gifts
καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεται φίλους ἐξ αὐτῶν ὅσους βούλεται,
and takes friends from them as-many-as he-wishes
καὶ ὑποστρέφει. οὕτω δὲ χρὴ συμφωνεῖν μετ' αὐτῶν
and returns thus and (one)-must agree with them
ὥστε, ὅπου ἂν χρεωποιηθῇ αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλεύς, ποιήσωσι
so-that wherever — has-need-of them the emperor they-may-do
δουλείαν, εἴτε εἰς τοὺς Ῥῶς εἴτε εἰς τοὺς Βουλγάρους
service whether against the Rus or against the Bulgarians

εἴτε καὶ εἰς τοὺς Τούρκους· εἰσὶ γὰρ δυνατοὶ τοῦ πάντας
or also against the Turks they-are for able of-the all
τούτους πολεμεῖν, καὶ πολλάκις κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐλθόντες
these to-war and often against them having-come
φοβεροὶ νῦν καθεστήκασιν. καὶ τοῦτο δῆλον καὶ ἐντεῦθέν
fearsome now they-have-become and this (is)-clear also from-here
ἐστιν. τοῦ γὰρ κληρικοῦ Γαβριήλ ποτε πρὸς τοὺς Τούρκους
is of-the for cleric Gabriel once to the Turks
ἀποσταλέντος ἀπὸ κελεύσεως βασιλικῆς, καὶ πρὸς αὐτοὺς
having-been-sent by command imperial and to them
εἰπόντος ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς δηλοποιεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀπελθεῖν καὶ
having-said that the emperor makes-known-to you to-go-away and
ἀποδιῶξαι τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τόπου αὐτῶν καὶ
to-drive-out the Pechenegs from the place their and
καθεσθῆναι ὑμᾶς (ὑμεῖς γὰρ καὶ πρότερον ἐκεῖσε ἐκαθέζεσθε)
to-settle you you for also formerly there were-settled
πρὸς τὸ εἶναι πλησίον τῆς βασιλείας μου, καὶ ὅτε θέλω
for the to-be near the empire my and when I-wish
ἀποστέλλω, καὶ ἐν τάχει εὑρίσκω ὑμᾶς, πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες
I-send and in speed I-find you all the chiefs
τῶν Τούρκων μιᾷ φωνῇ ἐξεβόησαν ὅτι ἡμεῖς μετὰ τοὺς
of-the Turks with-one voice cried-out that we with the
Πατζινακίτας ἑαυτοὺς οὐ βάλλομεν· οὐ γὰρ δυνάμεθα
Pechenegs ourselves not throw not for we-are-able
πολεμεῖν πρὸς αὐτούς, ὅτι καὶ χώρα μεγάλη καὶ λαὸς
to-war against them because both (the)-land (is)-great and (the)-people
πολὺς καὶ κακὰ παιδία εἰσί. καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ τὸν λόγον
many and bad children they-are and for-the rest(-of-time) the word
τοῦτον πρὸς ἡμᾶς μὴ εἴπῃς· οὐ γὰρ ἀγαπῶμεν αὐτόν.
this to us not say not for we-love it

ὅτι καὶ οἱ Πατζινακῖται ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ
that also the Pechenegs beyond the Dnieper river
μετὰ τὸ ἔαρ διέρχονται, καὶ ἀεὶ ἐκεῖσε καλλοκαιρίζουσι.
after the spring cross and always there spend-the-summer

IX · THE RUS VOYAGE TO CONSTANTINOPLE

The dugouts that come to Constantinople gather each spring at Kiev, where the Rus buy them from the Slavs who cut them in winter. In June they sail down the Dnieper. At each of the seven barrages, named in Russian and in Slavonic, they put men ashore, punt or drag the boats past the rocks, and at the fourth carry them six miles overland while watching for the Pechenegs. On St. Gregory's island they sacrifice cocks under a great oak. They rest and refit at St. Aitherios, then coast past the Danube mouths to Mesembria. In winter the princes go out on rounds among the tributary Slavs and return to Kiev in April. A closing note adds that the Uzes can make war on the Pechenegs.

περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς Ῥωσίας ἐρχομένων Ῥῶς μετὰ τῶν
concerning the from — Russia coming Rus with the
μονοξύλων ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει.
dugouts to Constantinople
Ὅτι τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς ἔξω Ῥωσίας μονόξυλα κατερχόμενα
that the from the outer Russia dugouts coming-down
ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει εἰσὶ μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Νεμογαρδάς,
to Constantinople are indeed from — Nemogarda
ἐν ᾧ Σφενδοσθλάβος ὁ υἱὸς Ἴγγωρ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
in which Sviatoslav the son of-Igor the prince
Ῥωσίας ἐκαθέζετο, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τὸ κάστρον τὴν
of-Russia was-settled are and also from the fortress —
Μιλινίσκαν καὶ ἀπὸ Τελιούτζαν καὶ Τζερνιγώγαν καὶ ἀπὸ
Miliniska and from Teliutza and Tzernigoga and from
τοῦ Βουσεγραδέ. ταῦτα οὖν ἅπαντα διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
— Vousegrade these then all through the river

κατέρχονται Δανάπρεως, καὶ ἐπισυνάγονται ἐπὶ τὸ κάστρον
come-down of-(the)-Dnieper and are-gathered at the fortress
τὸ Κιοάβα τὸ ἐπονομαζόμενον Σαμβατάς. οἱ δὲ
— Kiev the(-one) named Samvatas the and
Σκλάβοι οἱ πακτιῶται αὐτῶν, οἱ Κριβηταινοὶ λεγόμενοι
Slavs the tributaries their the Krivitzians called
καὶ οἱ Λενζανῆνοι καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Σκλαβίνιοι, εἰς τὰ
and the Lenzanenes and the other Slavonians in the
ὄρη αὐτῶν κόπτουσι τὰ μονόξυλα ἐν τῷ τοῦ χειμῶνος
mountains their cut the dugouts in the of-the winter
καιρῷ, καὶ καταρτήσαντες αὐτῶν τοῦ καιροῦ ἀνοιγομένου,
season and having-fitted-out them the season opening
ἡνίκα διαλυθῇ ὁ παγετός, εἰς τὰς πλησίον οὔσας λίμνας
when has-melted the frost into the near being lakes
εἰσάγουσιν αὐτά. καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐκεῖνα εἰσβάλλουσιν εἰς
they-bring them and since those empty into
ποταμὸν τὸν Δάναπριν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε οὗτοι εἰς τὸν
(the)-river the Dnieper from the there these into the
αὐτὸν ποταμὸν εἰσέρχονται καὶ ἀπέρχονται εἰς τὸ Κιόβα,
same river enter and go-away to — Kiev
καὶ σύρουσιν εἰς τὴν ἐξάρτησιν, καὶ ἀπεμπολοῦσιν αὐτὰ
and drag(-them) to the fitting-out and sell them
εἰς τοὺς Ῥῶς. οἱ δὲ Ῥῶς σκαφίδια καὶ μόνα ταῦτα
to the Rus the and Rus hulls and only these
ἀγοράζοντες, τὰ παλαιὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα καταλύοντες ἐξ
buying the old their dugouts dismantling from
αὐτῶν βάλλουσι καὶ πέλλας καὶ σκαρμοὺς εἰς αὐτὰ καὶ
them they-put both oars and rowlocks into them and
λοιπὰς χρείας, ἐξοπλίζουσιν αὐτά. καὶ Ἰουνίου μηνὸς διὰ
other needs they-equip them and of-June month through
τοῦ ποταμοῦ Δανάπρεως ἀποκινοῦντες κατέρχονται εἰς τὸ
the river Dnieper setting-out they-come-down to —

Βιτετζέβη, ὅπερ ἐστὶ πακτιωτικὸν κάστρον τῶν Ῥῶς. καὶ
Vitetzevi which is (a)-tributary fortress of-the Rus and
συναθροιζόμενοι ἐκεῖσε μέχρι δύο καὶ τριῶν ἡμερῶν, ἡνίκα
gathering there up-to two and three days when
ἂν ἅπαντα ἀποσυναχθῶσι τὰ μονόξυλα, τότε ἀποκινοῦσι
— *all have-been-assembled the dugouts then they-set-out*
καὶ κατέρχονται διὰ τοῦ εἰρημένου Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ.
and come-down through the said Dnieper river
καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον φραγμὸν τὸν
and first indeed they-come to the first barrage the(-one)
ἐπονομαζόμενον Ἐσσουπῆ, ὃ ἑρμηνεύεται Ῥωσιστὶ καὶ
named Essoupi which is-interpreted in-Russian and
Σκλαβινιστὶ μὴ κοιμᾶσθαι. ὁ δὲ τούτου φραγμὸς τοσοῦτόν
in-Slavonic not to-sleep the and of-this barrage so
ἐστι στενὸς ὅσον τὸ πλάτος τοῦ τζυκανιστηρίου· μέσον
is narrow as the breadth of-the polo-ground in-(the)-middle
δὲ αὐτοῦ πέτραι εἰσὶ ῥιζικαῖαι ὑψηλαὶ νησίων δίκην
and of-it rocks are rooted high of-islets in-the-manner-of
ἀποφαινόμεναι. πρὸς αὐτὰς οὖν ἐρχόμενον τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ
appearing against them then coming the water and
πλημμυροῦν, κἀκεῖθεν ἀποκρημνιζόμενον πρὸς τὸ κάτω
flooding and-from-there plunging-down to the lower
μέρος, ἦχον μέγαν καὶ φόβον ἀποτελεῖ. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
part noise great and fear produces and because-of this
μέσον αὐτῶν οὐ τολμῶσιν οἱ Ῥῶς διελθεῖν, ἀλλὰ πλησίον
between them not dare the Rus to-pass-through but near
σκαλώσαντες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους ἐκβαλόντες εἰς τὴν
having-put-in and the indeed men having-put-out onto the
ξηράν, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ πράγματα ἐάσαντες εἰς τὰ μονόξυλα,
dry-land the and other goods having-left in the dugouts
εἶθ' οὕτως γυμνοί, τοῖς ποσὶν αὐτῶν ψηλαφοῦντες,
then thus naked with-the feet their feeling-their-way

ἵνα μή τινι λίθῳ προσκρούσωσιν. τοῦτο δὲ ποιοῦσιν
so-that not on-some stone they-may-strike this and do
οἱ μὲν πλώραν, οἱ δὲ μέσον, οἱ δὲ καὶ
some indeed (at)-(the)-prow others and (at)-(the)-middle the(-others) and also
εἰς τὴν πρύμναν μετὰ κονταρίων κοντοβευόμενοι. καὶ
at the stern with poles punting and
μετὰ τοιαύτης ἁπάσης ἀκριβείας διέρχονται τὸν τοιοῦτον
with such all exactness they-pass-through the such
πρῶτον φραγμὸν διὰ τῆς γωνίας καὶ τῆς ὄχθης τοῦ
first barrage by the edge and the bank of-the
ποταμοῦ. ἡνίκα δὲ διέλθωσι τὸν τοιοῦτον φραγμόν,
river when and they-have-passed-through the such barrage
πάλιν ἀπὸ τῆς ξηρᾶς ἀναλαμβανόμενοι τοὺς λοιποὺς
again from the dry-land taking-up the others
ἀποπλέουσι, καὶ κατέρχονται εἰς τὸν ἕτερον φραγμὸν
they-sail-off and come-down to the other barrage
τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν Οὐλβορσὶ Σκλαβινιστὶ
the(-one) called in-Russian indeed Oulvorsi in-Slavonic
δὲ Ὀστροβουνίπραχ, ὅπερ ἑρμηνεύεται τὸ νησίον τοῦ
and Ostrovouniprach which is-interpreted the islet of-the
φραγμοῦ. ἔστι κἀκεῖνος ὅμοιος τῷ πρώτῳ, χαλεπός τε καὶ
barrage is and-that-one like to-the first hard both and
δυσδιέξοδος. καὶ πάλιν ἐκβαλόντες τὸν λαὸν διαβιβάζουσι
hard-to-get-through and again having-put-out the people they-take-across
τὰ μονόξυλα καθὼς καὶ πρότερον. ὁμοίως δὲ διέρχονται
the dugouts as also before likewise and they-pass-through
καὶ τὸν τρίτον φραγμὸν τὸν λεγόμενον Γελανδρί, ὃ
also the third barrage the(-one) called Gelandri which
ἑρμηνεύεται Σκλαβινιστὶ ἦχος φραγμοῦ. εἶθ' οὕτως τὸν
is-interpreted in-Slavonic noise of-(the)-barrage then thus the
τέταρτον φραγμόν, τὸν μέγαν, τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσιστὶ
fourth barrage the great the(-one) called in-Russian

μὲν Ἀειφάρ, Σκλαβινιστὶ δὲ Νεασήτ, διότι φωλεύουσιν οἱ
indeed Aeifar in-Slavonic and Neasit because nest the
πελεκᾶνοι εἰς τὰ λιθάρια τοῦ φραγμοῦ. ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ
pelicans in the stones of-the barrage at this then the
φραγμῷ σκαλώνουσιν ἅπαντα εἰς τὴν γῆν ὀρθόπλωρα,
barrage put-in all to the land prow-first
καὶ ἐξέρχονται οἱ ὡρισμένοι ἄνδρες φυλάττειν τὴν βίγλαν
and go-out the appointed men to-keep the watch
μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ ἀπέρχονται, καὶ τὰς βίγλας οὗτοι διὰ
with them and go-away and the watches these because-of
τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἀγρύπνως φυλάττουσιν. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ
the Pechenegs sleeplessly keep the and others
τὰ πράγματα ἅπερ ἔχουσιν εἰς τὰ μονόξυλα ἀναλαβόμενοι,
the goods which they-have in the dugouts having-taken-up
τὰ ψυχάρια μετὰ τῶν ἁλύσεων διὰ τοῦ ξηροῦ αὐτὰ
the slaves with the chains through the dry-land them
διαβιβάζουσι μίλια ἕξ, ἕως ἂν διέλθωσι τὸν φραγμόν.
take-across miles six until — they-have-passed-through the barrage
εἶθ' οὕτως οἱ μὲν σύροντες οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τοὺς ὤμους
then thus some indeed dragging others and also on the shoulders
βαστάζοντες τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα εἰς τὸ τοῦ φραγμοῦ
carrying the their dugouts to the of-the barrage
ἐκεῖθεν μέρος διαβιβάζουσι, καὶ οὕτως ῥίπτοντες αὐτὰ
beyond part take-across and thus throwing them
εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τὰ πετζιμέντα αὐτῶν ἐμβλησκόμενοι
into the river and the baggage their loading-in
εἰσέρχονται καὶ αὖθις ἐναποπλέουσιν. ἀπερχόμενοι δὲ εἰς
they-embark and again sail-off going-away and to
τὸν πέμπτον φραγμὸν τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν
the fifth barrage the(-one) named in-Russian indeed
Βαρουφόρος Σκλαβινιστὶ δὲ Βουλνηπράχ, διότι μεγάλην
Varouforos in-Slavonic and Voulniprach because (a)-great

λίμνην ἀποτελεῖ, πάλιν εἰς τὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ γωνίας τὰ
lake it-forms again at the of-the river edges the
αὐτῶν μονόξυλα διαβιβάσαντες καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὸν πρῶτον
their dugouts having-taken-across as also at the first
φραγμὸν καὶ εἰς τὸν δεύτερον, καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν ἕκτον
barrage and at the second they-reach the sixth
φραγμόν, λεγόμενον μὲν Ῥωσιστὶ Λεάντι Σκλαβινιστὶ
barrage called indeed in-Russian Leanti in-Slavonic
δὲ Βερούτζη, ὅ ἐστι βράσμα νεροῦ, καὶ διαβαίνουσι
and Veroutzi which is (a)-boiling of-water and they-pass-through
καὶ αὐτὸν ὁμοίως. καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου ἀποπλέουσι καὶ πρὸς
also it likewise and from this they-sail-off also to
τὸν ἕβδομον φραγμὸν τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν
the seventh barrage the(-one) called in-Russian indeed
Στρούβουν Σκλαβινιστὶ δὲ Ναπρεζή, ὃ ἑρμηνεύεται
Strouvoun in-Slavonic and Naprezi which is-interpreted
μικρὸς φραγμός, καὶ διαβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ λεγόμενον
small barrage and passing-through to the called
πέραμα τοῦ Κραρίου, ἐν ᾧ διαπερῶσιν ἀπὸ Ῥωσίας οἱ
crossing — of-Krarion at which cross from Russia the
Χερσωνῖται, καὶ οἱ Πατζινακῖται ἐπὶ Χερσῶνα, ἔχον τὸ
Chersonites and the Pechenegs toward Cherson having the
αὐτὸ πέραμα τὸ μὲν πλάτος ὅσον τοῦ Ἱπποδρομίου,
same crossing the indeed breadth as-much-as of-the Hippodrome
τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἀπὸ κάτω ἕως ὅτου παρακύπτουσιν οἱ φίλοι,
the and height from below up-to where peer-over the friends
ὅσον καὶ φθάνειν σαγίτταν τοῦ τοξεύοντος ἔνθεν
as-far-as also to-reach (an)-arrow of-the(-one) shooting from-here
ἐκεῖσε· ὅθεν καὶ εἰς τὸν τοιοῦτον τόπον κατέρχονται
to-there whence also to the such place come-down
οἱ Πατζινακῖται, καὶ πολεμοῦσι τοὺς Ῥῶς. μετὰ δὲ
the Pechenegs and war-upon the Rus after and

τὸ διελθεῖν τὸν τοιοῦτον τόπον τὴν νῆσον τὴν
the to-pass-through the such place the island the(-one)
ἐπιλεγομένην ὁ ἅγιος Γρηγόριος καταλαμβάνουσιν, ἐν ᾗ
called the holy Gregory they-reach on which
νήσῳ καὶ τὰς θυσίας αὐτῶν ἐπιτελοῦσιν διὰ τὸ ἐκεῖσε
island also the sacrifices their they-perform because-of the there
ἵστασθαι παμμεγέθη δρῦν. καὶ θύουσι πετεινοὺς ζῶντας.
to-stand (a)-huge oak and they-sacrifice cocks living
πηγνύουσι δὲ καὶ σαγίττας γυρόθεν, ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ ψωμία
they-fix and also arrows around others and also bits-of-bread
καὶ κρέατα, καὶ ἐξ ὧν ἔχει ἕκαστος, ὡς τὸ ἔθος
and meats and of (the-things)-which has each as the custom
αὐτῶν ἐπικρατεῖ. ῥίπτουσι δὲ καὶ σκαρφία περὶ τῶν
their prevails they-throw and also lots concerning the
πετεινῶν, εἴτε σφάξαι αὐτοὺς εἴτε καὶ φαγεῖν εἴτε καὶ
cocks whether to-slaughter them or also to-eat or also
ζῶντας ἐάσειν. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ νησίου τούτου Πατζινακίτην
living to-let(-go) from and the islet this (a)-Pecheneg
οἱ Ῥῶς οὐ φοβοῦνται, ἕως ἂν φθάσωσιν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν
the Rus not fear until — they-reach to the river
τὸν Σελινάν. εἶθ' οὕτως ἀποκινοῦντες ἐξ αὐτοῦ μέχρι
the Selinas then thus setting-out from it up-to
τεσσάρων ἡμερῶν ἀποπλέουσιν, ἕως οὗ καταλάβωσιν εἰς
four days they-sail-off until — they-reach to
τὴν λίμνην τοῦ ποταμοῦ στόμιον οὖσαν· ἐν ᾗ ἔστι καὶ
the lake of-the river mouth being in which is also
ἡ νῆσος τοῦ ἁγίου Αἰθερίου. καταλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι τὴν
the island of-the holy Aitherios having-reached then these the
τοιαύτην νῆσον προσαναπαύουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ἐκεῖσε ἕως δύο
such island they-rest themselves there for two
καὶ τριῶν ἡμερῶν, καὶ πάλιν τὰ ἑαυτῶν μονόξυλα εἰς
and three days and again the their-own dugouts with

ὅσας ἂν λείπωνται χρείας περιποιοῦνται, τά τε ἄρμενα
as-many-as — they-may-lack needs they-supply the both sails
καὶ τὰ κατάρτια καὶ τὰ αὐχένια ἅπερ ἐπιφέρονται. ἐπεὶ
and the masts and the rudders which they-bring since
δὲ τὸ στόμιον τοῦ τοιούτου ποταμοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ τοιαύτη
and the mouth of-the such river is the such
λίμνη, καθὼς εἴρηται, καὶ κρατεῖ μέχρι τῆς θαλάσσης,
lake as has-been-said and extends up-to the sea
καὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν κεῖται ἡ νῆσος τοῦ ἁγίου
and toward the sea lies the island of-the holy
Αἰθερίου, ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀπέρχονται πρὸς τὸν Δάναπριν
Aitherios from the there they-go-away to the Dnieper
ποταμόν, καὶ διασωθέντες ἐκεῖσε πάλιν ἀναπαύονται.
river and having-come-safely there again they-rest
ἡνίκα δὲ γένηται καιρὸς ἐπιτήδειος, ἀποσκαλώσαντες
when and comes (a)-season suitable having-put-off
ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ἄσπρον,
they-come to the river the(-one) called Aspros
καὶ ὁμοίως κἀκεῖσε ἀναπαυσάμενοι πάλιν ἀποκινοῦντες
and likewise there-too having-rested again setting-out
ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν Σελινάν, εἰς τὸ τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ
they-come to the Selinas to the of-the Danube river
λεγόμενον παρακλάδιον. καὶ ἕως οὗ διέλθωσι τὸν
called branch and until — they-have-passed-through the
Σελινὰν ποταμόν, παρατρέχουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Πατζινακῖται·
Selinas river run-alongside them the Pechenegs
καὶ ἐὰν πολλάκις ἡ θάλασσα μονόξυλα εἰς τὴν γῆν
and if perhaps the sea dugouts onto the land
ἀπορρίψῃ, σκαλώνουσιν ὅλα, ἵνα τοῖς Πατζινακίταις
casts-up they-put-in all so-that to-the Pechenegs
ἀντιπαραταχθῶσιν ὁμοῦ. ἀπὸ δὲ τὸν Σελινὰν οὐ φοβοῦνταί
they-may-be-drawn-up-against together from and the Selinas not they-fear

τινα, ἀλλὰ τὴν τῆς Βουλγαρίας γῆν ἐνδυσάμενοι εἰς τὸ
anyone but the — of-Bulgaria land having-entered to the
τοῦ Δανουβίου στόμιον ἔρχονται. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανουβίου
of-the Danube mouth they-come from and the Danube
καταλαμβάνουσιν εἰς τὸν Κωνοπάν, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ Κωνοπᾶ
they-reach to — Konopas and from — Konopas
εἰς Κωνσταντίαν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν Βάρνας, καὶ ἀπὸ Βάρνας
to Constantia to the river of-Varna and from Varna
ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὴν Διτζίναν, ἅπερ πάντα εἰσὶ
they-come to the river the Ditzina which all are
γῆς τῆς Βουλγαρίας. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Διτζίνας εἰς τὰ
of-(the)-land — of-Bulgaria from and the Ditzina to the
τῆς Μεσημβρίας μέρη καταλαμβάνουσι, καὶ οὕτω μέχρι
— of-Mesembria parts they-reach and thus up-to
τούτων ὁ πολυώδυνος αὐτῶν καὶ περίφοβος δυσδιέξοδός
these the much-painful their and terrifying hard-to-get-through
τε καὶ χαλεπὸς ἀποπεραίνεται πλοῦς.
both and hard is-completed voyage
Ἡ δὲ χειμέριος τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥῶς καὶ σκληρὰ διαγωγή
the and wintry of-the same Rus and harsh way-of-life
ἐστιν αὕτη. ἡνίκα ὁ Νοέμβριος μὴν εἰσέλθῃ, εὐθέως οἱ
is this when the November month has-come-in at-once the
αὐτῶν ἄρχοντες ἐξέρχονται μετὰ πάντων τῶν Ῥῶς ἀπὸ
their princes go-out with all the Rus from
τὸν Κίαβον, καὶ ἀπέρχονται εἰς τὰ πολύδια ἃ λέγεται
— Kiev and go-away to the circuits which is-called
Γύρα, ἤγουν εἰς τὰς Σκλαβινίας τῶν τε Βερβιάνων καὶ
Gyra that-is to the Slavinias of-the both Vervians and
τῶν Δρουγουβιτῶν καὶ Κριβιτζῶν καὶ τῶν Σερβίων καὶ
of-the Drougouvites and Krivitzians and of-the Serbs and
λοιπῶν Σκλάβων, οἵτινές εἰσι πακτιῶται τῶν Ῥῶς. δι᾽
other Slavs who are tributaries of-the Rus through

ὅλου δὲ τοῦ χειμῶνος ἐκεῖσε διατρεφόμενοι, πάλιν ἀπὸ
whole and the winter there being-maintained again from
μηνὸς Ἀπριλλίου διαλυομένου τοῦ πάγους τοῦ Δανάπρεως
(the)-month of-April melting the ice of-the Dnieper
ποταμοῦ κατέρχονται πρὸς τὸν Κίαβον. καὶ εἶθ' οὕτως
river they-come-down to — Kiev and then thus
ἀπολαμβάνονται τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα καθὼς προείρηται,
they-take-up the their dugouts as has-been-said-before
καὶ ἐξοπλίζονται, καὶ πρὸς Ῥωμανίαν κατέρχονται.
and they-equip and to Romania come-down
Ὅτι οἱ Οὖζοι δύνανται τοῖς Πατζινακίταις πολεμεῖν.
that the Uzes are-able the Pechenegs to-war-upon

X · HOW KHAZARIA IS TO BE FOUGHT

The Uzes can make war on the Khazars, and so can the ruler of Alania, whose land lies next to the nine regions of Khazaria on which the whole livelihood of Khazaria depends.

περὶ τῆς Χαζαρίας, πῶς δεῖ πολεμεῖσθαι καὶ παρά
concerning — Khazaria how (it)-must be-warred-upon and by
τινων.
whom
Ὅτι οἱ Οὖζοι δύνανται πολεμεῖν τοὺς Χαζάρους ὡς αὐτοῖς
that the Uzes are-able to-war-upon the Khazars as them
πλησιάζοντες. ὁμοίως καὶ ὁ ἐξουσιοκράτωρ Ἀλανίας, ὅτι
bordering likewise also the exousiocrator of-Alania because
τὰ ἐννέα κλίματα τῆς Χαζαρίας τῇ Ἀλανίᾳ παράκειναι,
the nine regions — of-Khazaria — to-Alania lie-near
καὶ δύναται ὁ Ἀλανός, εἰ ἄρα καὶ βούλεται, ταῦτα
and is-able the Alan if then indeed he-wishes these

πραιδεύειν καὶ μεγάλην βλάβην καὶ ἔνδειαν ἐντεῦθεν τοῖς
to-plunder and great harm and want from-this to-the
Χαζάροις ποιεῖν· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν ἐννέα κλιμάτων τούτων
Khazars to-cause from for the nine regions these
ἡ πᾶσα ζωὴ καὶ ἀφθονία τῆς Χαζαρίας καθέστηκεν.
the whole livelihood and abundance — of-Khazaria consists

XI · CHERSON AND BOSPORUS

If the ruler of Alania is not at peace with the Khazars and values the emperor's friendship more, he can do them great harm whenever they will not keep peace with the emperor, ambushing them on their roads to Sarkel, the Regions, and Cherson. If he sets himself to hinder them, Cherson and the Regions enjoy deep peace, for the Khazars, fearing the Alans and unable to fight two enemies at once, will be forced to keep it.

περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος, καὶ τοῦ κάστρου Βοσπόρου.
concerning the fortress of-Cherson and the fortress of-Bosporus
Ὅτι τοῦ ἐξουσιοκράτορος Ἀλανίας μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων
that the exousiocrator of-Alania with the Khazars
μὴ εἰρηνεύοντος, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον προτιμοτέραν τιθεμένου
not being-at-peace but rather more-to-be-valued holding
τὴν φιλίαν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων, ἐὰν οἱ Χάζαροι οὐ
the friendship of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans if the Khazars not
βούλωνται τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα φιλίαν καὶ εἰρήνην
wish the toward the emperor friendship and peace
τηρεῖν, δύναται μεγάλως αὐτοὺς κακοῦν, τάς τε ὁδοὺς
to-keep he-is-able greatly them to-harm the both roads
ἐνεδρεύων καὶ ἀφυλάκτως αὐτοῖς ἐπιτιθέμενος ἐν τῷ
lying-in-wait-on and unguardedly them attacking in the
διέρχεσθαι πρός τε τὸ Σάρκελ καὶ τὰ κλίματα καὶ
to-pass-through to both — Sarkel and the regions and

τὴν Χερσῶνα. καὶ εἰ ποιήσεται σπουδὴν ὁ τοιοῦτος
— *Cherson and if makes eagerness the such*
ἐξουσιοκράτωρ τοῦ κωλύειν αὐτούς, μεγάλης καὶ βαθείας
exousiocrator of-the to-hinder them great and deep
εἰρήνης μετέχουσιν ἥ τε Χερσὼν καὶ τὰ κλίματα·
peace share — both Cherson and the regions
φοβούμενοι γὰρ οἱ Χάζαροι τὴν τῶν Ἀλανῶν ἐπίθεσιν,
fearing for the Khazars the of-the Alans attack
καὶ μὴ εὑρίσκοντες ἄδειαν μετὰ φοσσάτου ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῇ
and not finding freedom with (an)-army to-attack —
Χερσῶνι καὶ τοῖς κλίμασιν ὡς μὴ πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ἐν
Cherson and the regions as not against both at
ταὐτῷ πολεμεῖν ἐξισχύοντες, εἰρηνεύειν ἀναγκασθήσονται.
the-same-time to-war being-strong-enough to-be-at-peace they-will-be-compelled

XII · BLACK BULGARIA AND KHAZARIA

Black Bulgaria can also make war on the Khazars.

περὶ τῆς μαύρης Βουλγαρίας καὶ Χαζαρίας.
concerning the black Bulgaria and Khazaria
Ὅτι καὶ ἡ μαύρη λεγομένη Βουλγαρία δύναται τοῖς
that also the black called Bulgaria is-able the
Χαζάροις πολεμεῖν.
Khazars to-war-upon

XIII · THE NATIONS NEAR THE TURKS; WHAT NOT TO GRANT

The Franks, the Pechenegs, great Moravia, and the Croats border on the Turks. Constantine teaches his son to refuse the northern nations' greedy requests. Imperial robes and crowns were sent by an angel to Constantine the Great and must stay in Hagia Sophia; Leo, who wore one unbidden, died of a carbuncle. Liquid fire, revealed by an angel, may never be given away. Nor may an emperor marry into a foreign nation except the Franks: Leo broke this rule with the chagan's daughter, and Romanos, an unlettered man, gave his granddaughter to the Bulgarian Peter.

περὶ τῶν πλησιαζόντων ἐθνῶν τοῖς Τούρκοις.
concerning the neighboring nations to-the Turks

Ὅτι τοῖς Τούρκοις τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔθνη παράκεινται,
that to-the Turks the such nations lie-near

πρὸς μὲν τὸ δυτικώτερον μέρος αὐτῶν ἡ Φραγγία,
toward indeed the more-western part their — Frankland

πρὸς δὲ τὸ βορειότερον οἱ Πατζινακῖται, καὶ πρὸς τὸ
toward and the more-northern the Pechenegs and toward the

μεσημβρινὸν μέρος ἡ μεγάλη Μοραβία ἤτοι ἡ χώρα
southern part the great Moravia that-is the land

τοῦ Σφενδοπλόκου, ἥτις καὶ παντελῶς ἠφανίσθη παρὰ
— of-Sphendoplokos which also utterly was-destroyed by

τῶν τοιούτων Τούρκων καὶ παρ' αὐτῶν κατεσχέθη. οἱ
the such Turks and by them was-occupied the

δὲ Χρωβάτοι πρὸς τὰ ὄρη τοῖς Τούρκοις παράκεινται.
and Croats toward the mountains to-the Turks lie-near

Ὅτι δύνανται καὶ οἱ Πατζινακῖται τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπιτίθεσθαι
that are-able also the Pechenegs the Turks to-attack

καὶ μεγάλως πραιδεύειν καὶ παραβλάπτειν αὐτούς, καθὼς
and greatly to-plunder and to-harm them as

καὶ ἐν τῷ περὶ Πατζινακιτῶν κεφαλαίῳ προείρηται.
also in the concerning (the)-Pechenegs chapter has-been-said-before

Ἐπίστησον, υἱέ, διανοίας ὄμμα τῆς σῆς λόγοις ἐμοῖς, καὶ
set son of-mind (the)-eye the your to-words my and
γνῶθι ἅ σοι ἐντέλλομαι, καὶ ἕξεις ἐν καιρῷ
know (the-things)-which to-you I-command and you-will-be-able in season
ὡς ἐκ πατρικῶν θησαυρῶν προφέρειν πλοῦτον φρονήσεως
as from paternal treasures to-bring-forth (a)-wealth of-prudence
καὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι χύμα συνέσεως. ἴσθι οὖν ὅτι τοῖς βορείοις
and to-display (a)-flood of-understanding know then that to-the northern
ἅπασι γένεσι φύσις ὥσπερ καθέστηκεν τὸ ἐν χρήμασι
all races (a)-nature as-it-were has-become the in monies
λίχνον καὶ ἄπληστον καὶ μηδέποτε κορεννύμενον, ὅθεν πάντα
greedy and insatiable and never satisfied whence all-things
ἐπιζητεῖ καὶ πάντων ἐφίεται καὶ οὐκ ἔχει τὰς ἐπιθυμίας
it-seeks and all-things desires and not has the desires
ὅρῳ περιγραφομένας, ἀλλ᾽ ἀεὶ τοῦ πλείονος ἐπιθυμεῖ,
by-(a)-limit bounded but always of-the more desires
καὶ ἀντὶ μικρᾶς ὠφελείας μεγάλα κέρδη προσπορίζεσθαι
and in-return-for small benefit great gains to-acquire
βούλεται. διὸ δεῖ τὰς τούτων ἀκαίρους αἰτήσεις καὶ
wishes therefore (one)-must the their untimely requests and
παρρησιαστικὰς ἀξιώσεις διὰ λόγων πιθανῶν καὶ φρονίμων
outspoken claims by words persuasive and prudent
καὶ συνετῶν ἀπολογιῶν ἀνατρέπειν καὶ ἀνακρούεσθαι,
and intelligent defenses to-overturn and to-repulse
αἵτινες, ὅσον ἀπὸ τῆς πείρας ἡμεῖς καταλαβεῖν ἠδυνήθημεν,
which as-far-as from the experience we to-grasp have-been-able
ὡς ἐν τύπῳ περιλαβεῖν, τοιαῦταί τινες ἔσονται.
as in outline to-comprise such some will-be
Εἰ ἀξιώσουσί ποτε καὶ αἰτήσονται εἴτε Χάζαροι εἴτε
if they-claim ever and ask either Khazars or
Τοῦρκοι εἴτε καὶ Ῥῶς ἢ ἕτερόν τι ἔθνος τῶν βορείων
Turks or also Rus or other some nation of-the northern

καὶ Σκυθικῶν, οἷα πολλὰ συμβαίνει, ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων
and Scythian such-as many happens of the imperial
ἐσθήτων ἢ στεμμάτων ἢ στολῶν ἕνεκά τινος δουλείας
vestments or diadems or robes for-the-sake of-some service
καὶ ὑπουργίας αὐτῶν ἀποσταλῆναι αὐτοῖς, οὕτω χρή
and assistance their to-be-sent to-them thus (it)-is-needful
σε ἀπολογίσασθαι, ὅτι αἱ τοιαῦται στολαὶ καὶ τὰ
you to-excuse(-yourself) that the such robes and the
στέμματα ἃ παρ' ἡμῶν καμελαύκια ὀνομάζεται οὔτε
diadems which by us kamelaukia are-named neither
παρὰ ἀνθρώπων κατεσκευάσθησαν οὔτε ἐξ ἀνθρωπίνων
by men were-made nor from human
τεχνῶν ἐπενοήθησαν ἢ ἐξειργάσθησαν· ἀλλ' ὡς ἀπὸ
arts were-devised or were-wrought but as from
παλαιᾶς ἱστορίας ἐν ἀπορρήτοις λόγοις γεγραμμένον
(an)-ancient history in secret writings written
εὑρίσκομεν, ἡνίκα ὁ θεὸς βασιλέα ἐποίησε Κωνσταντῖνον
we-find when — God emperor made Constantine
ἐκεῖνον τὸν μέγαν τὸν πρῶτον Χριστιανὸν βασιλεύσαντα,
that the great the first Christian having-reigned
δι' ἀγγέλου αὐτῷ τὰς τοιαύτας στολὰς ἐξαπέστειλεν
through (an)-angel to-him the such robes he-sent
καὶ τὰ στέμματα ἃ παρ' ἡμῶν καμελαύκια λέγεται, καὶ
and the diadems which by us kamelaukia are-called and
διωρίσατο αὐτῷ θεῖναι ταῦτα ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ τοῦ θεοῦ ἁγίᾳ
ordained him to-lay these in the great — of-God holy
ἐκκλησίᾳ ἥτις ἐπ' ὀνόματι αὐτῆς ἐνυποστάτου σοφίας
church which in name of-the-very hypostatic wisdom
θεοῦ ἁγία σοφία κατονομάζεται, καὶ μὴ καθ' ἑκάστην αὐτὰ
of-God holy wisdom is-named and not by each(-day) them
ἀμφιέννυσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅτε δημοτελὴς καὶ μεγάλη τυγχάνῃ
to-put-on but when public and great happens

δεσποτικὴ ἑορτή. διὸ δὴ θεοῦ προστάγματι ταῦτα
(a)-dominical feast therefore indeed of-God by-(the)-command these
ἀπέθετο, ἅτινα καὶ ἄνωθεν τῆς ἁγίας τραπέζης ἐν τῷ
he-laid-up which also above the holy table in the
θυσιαστηρίῳ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ναοῦ ἀποκρέμαται καὶ εἰς κόσμον
sanctuary of-the same temple hang and for adornment
τῆς ἐκκλησίας καθέστηκεν. τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ ἱμάτια καὶ σαγία
of-the church have-been-set the and other garments and mantles
βασιλικὰ τῆς ἱερᾶς ταύτης τραπέζης ἄνωθεν ἐπίκεινται
imperial of-the holy this table above lie
ἐφαπλούμενα. ἡνίκα δὲ καταλάβῃ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ
spread-out when and arrives of-the Lord our and
θεοῦ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ ἑορτή, ἀναλαμβάνεταί τε ἐκ τοιούτων
God Jesus Christ (a)-feast takes both from such
στολῶν καὶ στεμμάτων τὰ πρὸς τὸν καιρὸν ἐπιτήδεια
robes and diadems the(-ones) for the season suitable
καὶ ἁρμόζοντα ὁ πατριάρχης καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρὸς τὸν
and fitting the patriarch and sends to the
βασιλέα, καὶ ἀμφιέννυται αὐτὰ ἐκεῖνος ὡς ὑπηρέτης θεοῦ
emperor and puts-on them he as servant of-God
καὶ διάκονος ἐν τῇ προελεύσει καὶ μόνον, καὶ πάλιν
and deacon in the procession and only and again
μετὰ τὴν χρείαν ἀντιστρέφει αὐτὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν,
after the use he-returns them to the church
καὶ ἀπόκειται ἐν αὐτῇ. ἀλλὰ καὶ κατάρα τοῦ ἁγίου καὶ
and they-are-laid-up in it but also (a)-curse of-the holy and
μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου ἔστιν ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ ταύτῃ τραπέζῃ
great Constantine is on the holy this table
τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας ἐγγεγραμμένη, καθὼς αὐτῷ ὁ θεὸς
of-the — of-God church inscribed as him — God
διὰ τοῦ ἀγγέλου διωρίσατο, ἵνα ἐὰν βουληθῇ βασιλεὺς
through the angel ordained that if wishes (an)-emperor

διά τινα χρείαν ἢ περίστασιν ἢ ἐπιθυμίαν ἄκαιρον ἐξ
because-of some need or circumstance or desire untimely from
αὐτῶν ἐπᾶραι καὶ ἢ αὐτὸς καταχρήσασθαι ἢ ἑτέροις
them to-take-up and either himself to-make-use or to-others
χαρίσασθαι, ὡς πολέμιος καὶ τῶν τοῦ θεοῦ προσταγμάτων
to-give(-them) as (an)-enemy and of-the — of-God commands
ἐχθρὸς ἀναθεματίζηται καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀποκηρύττηται.
foe be-be-anathematized and from-the church be-proclaimed-outcast
εἰ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἕτερα ὅμοια καμεῖν βουληθῇ, ἵνα καὶ
if and also he other like-ones to-make wishes that also
αὐτὰ ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησία ἀναλαμβάνηται, τῶν ἀρχιερέων
them the — of-God church may-take-up of-the high-priests
πάντων εἰς ταῦτα παρρησιαζομένων καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου· καὶ
all to these being-outspoken and of-the senate and
μὴ ἔχειν ἐξουσίαν μήτε τὸν βασιλέα μήτε τὸν πατριάρχην
not to-have authority neither the emperor nor the patriarch
μήτε ἕτερόν τινα τὰς τοιαύτας ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι στολὰς
nor other anyone the such to-take-up robes
ἢ τὰ στέμματα ἀπὸ τῆς ἁγίας τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας.
or the diadems from the holy — of-God church
καὶ φόβος μέγας ἐπήρτηται τοῖς βουλομένοις ἀνατρέπειν
and fear great hangs-over those wishing to-overturn
τι τῶν τοιούτων θεϊκῶν διατάξεων· εἷς γάρ τις τῶν
any of-the such divine ordinances one for certain of-the
βασιλέων, Λέων ὀνόματι, ὃς καὶ ἀπὸ Χαζαρίας γυναῖκα
emperors Leo by-name who also from Khazaria (a)-wife
ἠγάγετο, ἀβούλῳ τόλμῃ χρησάμενος ἓν τῶν τοιούτων
took ill-advised daring having-used one of-the such
ἀνελάβετο στεμμάτων δεσποτικῆς μὴ παρούσης ἑορτῆς,
took diadems dominical not being-present (a)-feast
καὶ δίχα γνώμης τοῦ πατριάρχου τοῦτο περιεβάλετο, καὶ
and without (the)-consent of-the patriarch this put-on and

εὐθέως ἄνθρακα ἐπὶ τοῦ μετώπου ἐκβαλὼν καὶ ταῖς
at-once (a)-carbuncle on the forehead having-broken-out and by-the
ἐκ τούτου ὀδύναις κατατρυχόμενος κακινκάκως ἀπέρρηξε
from this pains being-worn-out wretchedly he-broke-off
τὸ ζῆν καὶ πρὸ καιροῦ τὸν θάνατον ἐπεσπάσατο. καὶ
the to-live and before (his)-time the death drew-on-himself and
τοῦ τοιούτου συντόμως ἐκδικηθέντος τολμήματος ἔκτοτε
the such swiftly having-been-avenged daring from-then
τύπος ἐγένετο ὥστε ἐν τῷ μέλλειν στέφεσθαι τὸν βασιλέα
(a)-rule came-about so-that in the to-be-about to-be-crowned the emperor
πρότερον ὀμνύειν καὶ ἀσφαλίζεσθαι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἐναντίον τῶν
first to-swear and to-give-assurance that nothing contrary-to the
προστεταγμένων καὶ ἐκ παλαιοῦ φυλαττομένων τολμήσῃ
commanded-things and from of-old kept he-will-dare
ποιήσειν ἢ ἐννοήσασθαι, καὶ οὕτως ὑπὸ τοῦ πατριάρχου
to-do or to-think and thus by the patriarch
στέφεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἁρμόζοντα τῇ καθεστώσῃ ἑορτῇ
to-be-crowned and the(-things) fitting to-the established feast
ἐπιτελεῖν τε καὶ διαπράττεσθαι.
to-perform both and to-carry-out
Ὡσαύτως χρή σε καὶ περὶ τοῦ ὑγροῦ πυρὸς τοῦ
likewise (it)-is-needful you also concerning the liquid fire the(-one)
διὰ τῶν σιφώνων ἐκφερομένου μεριμνᾶν τε καὶ μελετᾶν,
through the siphons discharged to-take-thought both and to-study
ὡς εἴπερ ποτὲ τολμήσωσί τινες καὶ αὐτὸ ἐπιζητῆσαι,
so-that if ever dare some also it to-ask-for
καθὼς καὶ παρ᾽ ἡμῶν πολλάκις ἐζήτησαν, τοιούτοις αὐτοὺς
as also from us often they-have-asked with-such them
ἔχοις ἀποκρούεσθαι καὶ ἀποπέμπεσθαι ῥήμασιν,
you-may-be-able to-repulse and to-send-away words
ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸ δι᾽ ἀγγέλου τῷ μεγάλῳ καὶ πρώτῳ
that also it through (an)-angel to-the great and first

βασιλεῖ Χριστιανῷ ἁγίῳ Κωνσταντίνῳ ἐφανερώθη καὶ
emperor Christian holy Constantine was-revealed and
ἐδιδάχθη, παραγγελίας δὲ μεγάλας καὶ περὶ τούτου
was-taught commands and great also concerning this
παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἀγγέλου ἐδέξατο, ὡς παρὰ πατέρων καὶ
from the same angel he-received as from fathers and
πάππων πιστωθέντες πληροφορούμεθα, ἵνα ἐν μόνοις
grandfathers having-been-assured we-are-informed that among only
τοῖς Χριστιανοῖς καὶ τῇ ὑπ' αὐτῶν βασιλευομένῃ πόλει
the Christians and in-the by them ruled city
κατασκευάζηται, ἀλλαχοῦ δὲ μηδαμῶς, μήτε εἰς ἕτερον
it-may-be-made elsewhere and in-no-way neither to other
ἔθνος τὸ οἷον δήποτε παραπέμπηται μήτε διδάσκηται.
nation the what-kind soever may-be-transmitted nor may-be-taught
ὅθεν καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτὸν ὁ μέγας οὗτος βασιλεὺς
whence also to-those after him the great this emperor
ἐξασφαλιζόμενος περὶ τούτου ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ τραπέζῃ τῆς
making-sure concerning this on the holy table of-the
τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας ἀρὰς ἐγγραφῆναι πεποίηκεν, ἵνα ὁ
— of-God church curses to-be-inscribed caused that the(-one)
ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου πυρὸς εἰς ἕτερον ἔθνος δοῦναι τολμήσας
of the such fire to other nation to-give having-dared
μήτε Χριστιανὸς ὀνομάζηται μήτε ἀξίας τινὸς ἢ ἀρχῆς
neither Christian be-named nor of-dignity any or of-office
ἀξιοῦται, ἀλλ' εἴ τινα καὶ ἔχων τύχῃ, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης
be-deemed-worthy but if any also having he-happens also from this
ἐκβάλληται καὶ εἰς αἰῶνα αἰώνων ἀναθεματίζηται καὶ
be-cast-out and to (the)-age of-ages be-anathematized and
παραδειγματίζηται, εἴτε βασιλεὺς εἴτε πατριάρχης εἴτε τις
be-made-an-example whether emperor or patriarch or some
ἄλλος οἷος οὖν ἄνθρωπος εἴτε ἄρχων εἴτε ἀρχόμενος
other whatever soever man whether ruler or ruled

τυγχάνοι ὁ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐντολὴν παραβαίνειν
may-happen-to-be the(-one) the such command to-transgress
πειρώμενος. καὶ προυτρέψατο πάντας τοὺς ζῆλον καὶ
attempting and he-exhorted all those zeal and
φόβον θεοῦ ἔχοντας ὡς κοινὸν ἐχθρὸν καὶ παραβάτην
fear of-God having as (a)-common enemy and transgressor
τῆς μεγάλης ταύτης ἐντολῆς τὸν τοιοῦτο ἐπιχειροῦντα
of-the great this command the(-one) such-a-thing attempting
ποιεῖν ἀναιρεῖν σπουδάζειν καὶ ἐκτίστῳ τῷ χαλεπῷ
to-do to-destroy to-be-eager and to-most-hateful the hard
παραπέμπεσθαι θανάτῳ. συνέβη δέ ποτε τῆς κακίας ἀεὶ
to-be-sent death it-happened and once the wickedness always
χώραν εὑρισκούσης τινὰ τῶν ἡμετέρων στρατηγῶν,
room finding (a)-certain(-one) of-the our generals
δῶρα παρά τινων ἐθνικῶν πάμπολλα εἰληφότα, μεταδοῦναι
gifts from certain heathens very-many having-received to-share
αὐτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου πυρός, καὶ μὴ ἀνεχομένου τοῦ
with-them from the such fire and not enduring —
θεοῦ ἀνεκδίκητον καταλιπεῖν τὴν παράβασιν, ἐν τῷ μέλλειν
God unavenged to-leave the transgression in the to-be-about
αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ τοῦ θεοῦ εἰσιέναι ἐκκλησίᾳ πῦρ ἐκ τοῦ
him into the holy — of-God to-go church fire from the
οὐρανοῦ κατελθὸν τοῦτον κατέφαγε καὶ ἀνήλωσεν. καὶ
heaven having-come-down him devoured and consumed and
ἀπὸ τότε φόβος μέγας καὶ τρόμος ἐν ταῖς ἁπάντων ἐνετέθη
from then fear great and trembling in the of-all was-put
ψυχαῖς, καὶ οὐκέτι οὐδεὶς τοῦ λοιποῦ, οὔτε βασιλεὺς
souls and no-longer anyone for-the rest(-of-time) neither emperor
οὔτε ἄρχων, οὔτε ἰδιώτης οὔτε στρατηγός, οὔτε οἷος
nor ruler nor private-man nor general nor whatever

οὖν ὅλως ἄνθρωπος κατετόλμησέ τι τοιοῦτον ἐνθυμηθῆναι,
then at-all man dared any such-thing to-consider
μήτι γε καὶ ἔργῳ ἐπιχειρῆσαι ποιῆσαι ἢ διαπράξασθαι.
much-less even also in-deed to-attempt to-do or to-accomplish
Ἀλλ' ἄγε δὴ μετάβηθι, καὶ πρὸς ἕτερον εἶδος αἰτήσεως
but come indeed pass-over also to another kind of-request
παραλόγου καὶ ἀπρεποῦς εὐπρεπεῖς καὶ ἁρμόζοντας λόγους
unreasonable and unseemly seemly and fitting words
ἀναζήτει καὶ ἀναμάνθανε. εἰ γάρ ποτε ἔθνος τι ἀπὸ τῶν
seek-out and learn if for ever nation some from the
ἀπίστων τούτων καὶ ἀτίμων βορείων γενῶν αἰτήσεται
faithless these and dishonorable northern races ask
συμπενθεριάσαι μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων καὶ ἢ
to-ally-by-marriage with the emperor of-(the)-Romans and either
θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ εἰς νύμφην λαβεῖν ἢ ἐπιδοῦναι οἰκείαν
(a)-daughter his for (a)-bride to-take or to-give own
θυγατέρα ἢ γυναῖκα χρηματίσαι βασιλέως ἢ βασιλέως
daughter or wife to-become of-(an)-emperor or of-(an)-emperor's
υἱοῦ, χρή σε τοιούτοις ῥήμασι καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην αὐτῶν
son (it)-is-needful you with-such words also the such their
παράλογον ἀποκρούσασθαι αἴτησιν, λέγοντα ὅτι καὶ περὶ
unreasonable to-repulse request saying that also concerning
ταύτης τῆς ὑποθέσεως παραγγελία καὶ διάταξις φοβερὰ
this the matter (a)-charge and ordinance fearful
καὶ ἀπαραποίητος τοῦ μεγάλου καὶ ἁγίου Κωνσταντίνου
and unalterable of-the great and holy Constantine
ἐναπογέγραπται ἐν τῇ ἱερᾷ τραπέζῃ τῆς καθολικῆς
is-inscribed on the holy table of-the catholic
τῶν Χριστιανῶν ἐκκλησίας τῆς ἁγίας σοφίας, τοῦ
of-the Christians church of-the holy wisdom of-the
μηδέποτε βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων συμπενθεριάσαι μετὰ ἔθνους
never (an)-emperor of-(the)-Romans to-ally-by-marriage with (a)-nation

παρηλλαγμένοις καὶ ξένοις ἔθεσι χρωμένου τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
altered and foreign customs using from-the Roman
καταστάσεως, μάλιστα δὲ ἀλλοπίστου καὶ ἀβαπτίστου,
order especially and of-other-faith and unbaptized
εἰ μὴ μετὰ μόνων τῶν Φράγγων· τούτους γὰρ μόνους
if not with only the Franks these for alone
ὑπεξείλετο ὁ μέγας ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ ἅγιος,
he-excepted the great that man Constantine the holy
ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν γένεσιν ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων ἔσχε μερῶν
because also he the origin from the such had parts
ὡς συγγενείας καὶ ἐπιμιξίας πολλῆς τυγχανούσης Φράγγοις
as kinship and intermixture much happening to-Franks
τε καὶ Ῥωμαίοις· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μετὰ τούτων μόνων
both and to-(the)-Romans and because-of this with these only
προυτρέψατο συνιστῶν γαμικὰ συναλλάγια τοὺς βασιλεῖς
he-exhorted establishing marriage contracts the emperors
Ῥωμαίων διὰ τὴν ἄνωθεν τῶν μερῶν ἐκείνων καὶ
of-(the)-Romans because-of the from-of-old of-the parts those and
γενῶν περιφάνειαν καὶ εὐγένειαν, μετ᾽ ἄλλου δὲ τοῦ οἵου
races renown and noble-birth with other and the what-kind
δήποτε ἔθνους μὴ δυναμένους τοῦτο ποιεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ ὁ
soever nation not being-able this to-do but the(-one)
τοῦτο ποιῆσαι τολμήσας ἵνα ὡς παραβάτης πατρικῶν
this to-do having-dared that as transgressor of-ancestral
εἰσηγήσεων καὶ βασιλείων θεσμῶν ἀλλότριος κρίνοιτο τῶν
injunctions and of-imperial laws alien he-be-judged from-the
Χριστιανῶν καταλόγων καὶ τῷ ἀναθέματι παραδίδοιτο.
Christian rolls and to-the anathema be-handed-over
ὁ δὲ προμνημονευθεὶς Λέων ἐκεῖνος ὁ βασιλεύς, ὁ
the and before-mentioned Leo that the emperor the(-one)
καὶ τὸ στέμμα, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω προείρηται, παρανόμως
also the diadem as above has-been-said-before unlawfully

καὶ τολμηρῶς ἀπὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας δίχα γνώμης τοῦ τότε
and daringly from the church without (the)-consent of-the then
πατριαρχεύοντος λαβὼν καὶ περιθέμενος καὶ τὴν δίκην
being-patriarch having-taken and having-put-on and the penalty
συντόμως δοὺς ἀξίαν τῆς αὐτοῦ πονηρᾶς ἐγχειρήσεως,
swiftly having-paid worthy of-the his wicked attempt
ἐτόλμησε καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐντολὴν τοῦ ἁγίου βασιλέως
dared also the such command of-the holy emperor
ἐκείνου, ἥτις, ὡς ἤδη δεδήλωται, ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ τραπέζῃ
that which as already has-been-shown on the holy table
ἀναγεγραμμένη καθέστηκεν, παρὰ φαῦλον θέσθαι καὶ ὡς
inscribed stands as worthless to-set and as
μηδὲν λογίσασθαι, καὶ ὡς ἅπαξ ἔξω τοῦ θείου φόβου καὶ
nothing to-reckon and as once outside of-the divine fear and
τῶν ἐντολῶν αὐτοῦ πεποίηκεν ἑαυτόν, συνεστήσατο καὶ
of-the commands his he-has-made himself contracted also
μετὰ τοῦ χαγάνου Χαζαρίας γαμικὸν συναλλάγιον, καὶ τὴν
with the chagan of-Khazaria (a)-marriage contract and the
θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ εἰς γυναῖκα ἐδέξατο, καὶ μέγα ἐκ τούτου
daughter his for wife received and great from this
ὄνειδος καὶ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ καὶ ἑαυτῷ προσετρίψατο
reproach both on-the of-(the)-Romans rule and on-himself he-brought
ὡς τὰ προγονικὰ παραγγέλματα ἀκυρώσας καὶ παρ᾽ οὐδὲν
as the ancestral precepts having-annulled and at nothing
λογισάμενος. πλὴν οὐδὲ ὀρθόδοξος Χριστιανὸς ἦν ἐκεῖνος,
having-reckoned however not-even orthodox Christian was that-man
ἀλλ᾽ αἱρετικὸς καὶ εἰκονομάχος. διὸ χάριν τῶν
but (a)-heretic and iconoclast therefore for-the-sake-of the
τοιούτων αὐτοῦ παρανόμων ἀσεβημάτων ἐν τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ
such his lawless impieties in the — of-God
ἐκκλησίᾳ διηνεκῶς ἀποκηρύττεται καὶ ἀναθεματίζεται ὡς
church continually he-is-proclaimed-outcast and is-anathematized as

καὶ τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τῆς τοῦ ἁγίου καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως
both of-the — of-God and of-the of-the holy and great emperor
Κωνσταντίνου διατάξεως παραβάτης καὶ ἀνατροπεύς. πῶς
Constantine ordinance transgressor and overturner how
γάρ ἐστι τῶν ἐνδεχομένων Χριστιανοὺς μετὰ ἀπίστων
for is-it of-the possible-things (for)-Christians with unbelievers
γαμικὰς κοινωνίας ποιεῖν καὶ συμπενθεριάζειν, τοῦ κανόνος
marriage partnerships to-make and to-ally-by-marriage the canon
τοῦτο κωλύοντος καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἁπάσης ἀλλότριον
this forbidding and the church whole alien
αὐτὸ λογιζομένης καὶ ἔξω τῆς Χριστιανικῆς καταστάσεως;
it reckoning and outside of-the Christian order
ἢ τίς τῶν ἐγκρίτων καὶ εὐγενῶν καὶ σοφῶν βασιλέων
or who of-the eminent and noble and wise emperors
Ῥωμαίων κατεδέξατο; εἰ δὲ ἀντείπωσιν, πῶς ὁ κύριος
of-(the)-Romans accepted(-it) if and they-object how the lord
Ῥωμανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ Βουλγάρων συνεπενθερίασεν
Romanos the emperor with Bulgarians allied-by-marriage
καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν ἐκγόνην δέδωκεν τῷ κυρίῳ Πέτρῳ τῷ
and the own granddaughter gave to-the lord Peter the
Βουλγάρῳ, δεῖ ἀπολογήσασθαι ὅτι ὁ κύριος Ῥωμανὸς
Bulgarian (one)-must reply that the lord Romanos
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἰδιώτης καὶ ἀγράμματος ἄνθρωπος ἦν,
the emperor (a)-private-man and unlettered man was
καὶ οὔτε τῶν ἄνωθεν ἐν βασιλείοις τεθραμμένων οὔτε
and neither of-those from-of-old in palaces brought-up nor
τῶν παρηκολουθηκότων ἐξ ἀρχῆς τοῖς Ῥωμαϊκοῖς
of-those having-followed from (the)-beginning the Roman
ἐθισμοῖς οὔτε ἀπὸ γένους βασιλείου καὶ εὐγενοῦς, καὶ
customs nor from race imperial and noble and
διὰ τοῦτο αὐθαδέστερον καὶ ἐξουσιαστικώτερον τὰ
because-of this more-willfully and more-high-handedly the

πολλὰ κατεπράττετο, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὔτε τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ
many-things he-did and in this neither the church
ἀπαγορευούσῃ ὑπήκουσεν οὔτε τῇ ἐντολῇ καὶ διαταγῇ τοῦ
forbidding he-obeyed nor the command and ordinance of-the
μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου κατηκολούθησεν, ἀλλ' ἐκ γνώμης
great Constantine he-followed but from (a)-mind
αὐθάδους καὶ αὐτοβούλου καὶ τῶν καλῶν ἀμαθοῦς καὶ
willful and self-willed and of-the good-things ignorant and
μὴ βουλομένης ἕπεσθαι τῷ πρέποντι καὶ καλῷ μηδὲ
not wishing to-follow the becoming and good nor
ταῖς πατροπαραδότοις στοιχεῖν διατάξεσι τοῦτο ποιῆσαι
the ancestral to-keep-to ordinances this to-do
τετόλμηκεν, ταύτην μόνην εὔλογον δηλονότι προβαλλόμενος
has-dared this alone reasonable evidently putting-forward
πρόφασιν, τοσοῦτον πλῆθος αἰχμαλώτων Χριστιανῶν διὰ
pretext so-great (a)-multitude of-captives Christian through
τῆς τοιαύτης πράξεως ἀναρρύεσθαι, καὶ τὸ Χριστιανοὺς
the such action to-ransom and the Christians
εἶναι καὶ τοὺς Βουλγάρους ὁμοπίστους ἡμῶν, ἄλλως τε
to-be also the Bulgarians of-one-faith with-us especially —
καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲ αὐτοκράτορος καὶ ἐνθέσμου βασιλέως
also because not-even of-(an)-autocrat and lawful emperor
θυγάτηρ ἡ ἐκδιδομένη ἐτύγχανεν, ἀλλὰ τρίτου καὶ
(a)-daughter the(-one) given-in-marriage happened-to-be but of-(a)-third and
ἐσχάτου καὶ ἔτι ὑποχειρίου καὶ μηδεμίαν ἐξουσίαν ἐν τοῖς
last and still subordinate and no authority in the
τῆς ἀρχῆς μετέχοντος πράγμασι· καὶ οὐδὲν διέφερεν τὸ
of-the rule sharing affairs and nothing differed the
τοιοῦτον τοῦ καὶ ἄλλην τινὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν συγγενίδων
such-thing from-the also other some of-the imperial kinswomen
τῶν πορρωτέρω τε καὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς βασιλείας εὐγενείας
of-the more-remote both and near the imperial nobility

τυγχανουσῶν, καὶ διά τινα κοινωφελῆ δουλείαν, καὶ
happening-to-be and because-of some common-good service and
τοῦ ἐσχάτου καὶ μηδὲν σχεδὸν ἐξουσιάζοντος. ἐπεὶ ἔξω
of-the last and nothing almost having-authority since outside
τοῦ κανόνος καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησιαστικῆς παραδόσεως καὶ τῆς
of-the canon and of-the ecclesiastical tradition and of-the
τοῦ μεγάλου ἁγίου βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου διαταγῆς τε
of-the great holy emperor Constantine ordinance both
καὶ ἐντολῆς τοῦτο πεποίηκεν, πολλὰ καὶ ζῶν ὠνειδίσθη
and command this he-did many-things also living was-reproached
ὁ προρρηθεὶς κῦρις Ῥωμανὸς καὶ διεβλήθη καὶ ἐμισήθη
the aforesaid lord Romanos and was-slandered and was-hated
παρά τε τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ τοῦ δήμου παντὸς
by both the senatorial council and the people all
καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας αὐτῆς, ὡς καὶ τὸ μῖσος ἐπὶ τοῦ
and the church itself so-that also the hatred at the
τέλους γενέσθαι καταφανές, καὶ μετὰ θάνατον ὁμοίως
end to-become evident and after death likewise
ἐξουθενεῖται καὶ διαβάλλεται καὶ ὑπὸ καταγνώμην τίθεται
he-is-despised and is-slandered and under condemnation is-placed
καὶ οὗτος, ἀνάξιον πρᾶγμα καὶ ἀπρεπὲς εἰς τὴν εὐγενῆ
and this unworthy thing and unseemly into the noble
πολιτείαν Ῥωμαίων καινοτομήσας. ἕκαστον γὰρ ἔθνος
polity of-(the)-Romans having-innovated each for nation
διάφορα ἔχον ἔθη καὶ διαλλάττοντας νόμους τε καὶ
different having customs and differing laws both and
θεσμοὺς ὀφείλει τὰ οἰκεῖα κρατεῖν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
ordinances ought the(-things) own to-hold and from the same
ἔθνους τὰς πρὸς ἀνάκρισιν βίου κοινωνίας ποιεῖσθαι καὶ
nation the for union of-life partnerships to-make and
ἐνεργεῖν. ὥσπερ γὰρ ἕκαστον ζῷον μετὰ τῶν ὁμογενῶν
to-effect as for each animal with the same-kind

τὰς μίξεις ἐργάζεται, οὕτω καὶ ἕκαστον ἔθνος οὐκ ἐξ
the matings performs so also each nation not from
ἀλλοφύλων καὶ ἀλλογλώσσων ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ τῶν ὁμογενῶν
other-tribes and other-tongues but from the same-kind
τε καὶ ὁμοφώνων τὰ συνοικέσια τῶν γάμων ποιεῖσθαι
both and same-speaking the cohabitations of-the marriages to-make
καθέστηκε δίκαιον. ἐντεῦθεν γὰρ καὶ ἡ πρὸς ἀλλήλους
has-become just from-this for both the toward each-other
ὁμοφροσύνη καὶ συνομιλία καὶ προσφιλὴς συνδιατριβὴ καὶ
concord and converse and friendly association and
συμβίωσις περιγίνεσθαι πέφυκε· τὰ δὲ ἀλλότρια ἔθη καὶ
living-together to-arise is-wont the and alien customs and
διαλλάττοντα νόμιμα ἀπεχθείας μᾶλλον καὶ προσκρούσεις
differing usages enmities rather and offenses
καὶ μίση καὶ στάσεις εἴωθεν ἀπογεννᾶν, ἅπερ οὐ
and hatreds and seditions are-accustomed to-beget which not
φιλίας καὶ κοινωνίας ἀλλ᾽ ἔχθρας καὶ διαστάσεις φιλεῖ
friendships and fellowships but enmities and divisions are-wont
ἀπεργάζεσθαι. καὶ ὅτι μὴ δεῖ τὰ κακῶς παρά
to-produce and that not (one)-must the(-things) badly by
τινων ἐξ ἀμαθείας ἢ αὐθαδείας καταπραχθέντα τοὺς
some from ignorance or willfulness done those
ἐννόμως ἄρχειν βουλομένους μιμεῖσθαί τε καὶ ζηλοῦν,
lawfully to-rule wishing to-imitate both and to-emulate
ἀλλὰ τῶν ἐννόμως καὶ δικαίως βεβασιλευκότων τὰς
but of-those lawfully and justly having-reigned the
ἀοιδίμους πράξεις ἔχειν ὡς εἰκόνας ἀγαθὰς εἰς παράδειγμα
famous deeds to-have as images good for (an)-example
προκειμένας μιμήσεως, καὶ κατ᾽ ἐκείνας πειρᾶσθαι καὶ
set-before of-imitation and according-to those to-try also
αὐτὸν ἀπευθύνειν πάντα τὰ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐνεργούμενα,
himself to-direct all the(-things) by him being-done

ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας αὐτοβούλους πράξεις αὐτοῦ
since also the because-of the such self-willed deeds his
ἐπελθὸν αὐτῷ τέλος, φημὶ δὲ τῷ κυρῷ Ῥωμανῷ,
having-come-upon him end I-mean and to-the lord Romanos
ἱκανόν ἐστι πρὸς σωφρονισμὸν παράδειγμα τῷ
sufficient is for correction (an)-example to-the(-one)
βουλομένῳ τὰ κακῶς παρ᾽ ἐκείνου πραχθέντα ζηλοῦν.
wishing the(-things) badly by that-man done to-emulate
Χρεὼν δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ταῦτά σε γινώσκειν,
(it)-is-needful and with the other-things also these(-things) you to-know
υἱὲ πολυέραστε, ἅτε τῆς τούτων γνώσεως μεγάλως σοι
son much-loved since the of-these knowledge greatly to-you
συμβαλέσθαι δυναμένης καὶ θαυμαστότερον ἀποδεῖξαι.
to-contribute being-able and more-admirable to-show(-you)
τὰ δέ ἐστι περὶ διαφορᾶς πάλιν ἑτέρων ἐθνῶν,
the(-things) and are concerning (the)-difference again of-other nations
γενεαλογίας τε αὐτῶν καὶ ἐθῶν καὶ βίου διαγωγῆς, καὶ
genealogy both their and customs and of-life conduct and
θέσεως καὶ κράσεως τῆς παρ᾽ αὐτῶν κατοικουμένης γῆς,
position and climate of-the by them inhabited land
καὶ περιηγήσεως αὐτῆς καὶ σταδιασμοῦ, καθὼς ἑξῆς
and description its and measurement as in-order
πλατύτερον διερμηνεύσεται.
more-broadly will-be-set-out

XIV · THE GENEALOGY OF MUHAMMAD

Muhammad descends from Ishmael. Poor and orphaned, he served the rich widow Khadija as a camel-driver and married her. He learned from Jews and Christians, and when his epilepsy grieved her he claimed to see the angel Gabriel; an Arian monk vouched for him. She proclaimed him a prophet, the deceit reached Abu Bakr, and she died leaving him rich. His heresy held Yathrib; he taught that whoever kills an enemy or is killed enters paradise, and his followers pray to Aphrodite's star, Koubar.

περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τοῦ Μουχούμετ.
concerning the genealogy — of-Muhammad

Γενεαλογῆται ὁ δυσσεβὴς καὶ ἀκάθαρτος Μουχούμετ, ὃν
is-traced the impious and unclean Muhammad whom
λέγουσιν οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ προφήτην αὐτῶν εἶναι, ἐκ φυλῆς
say the Saracens prophet their to-be from (a)-tribe
γενικωτάτης Ἰσμαὴλ υἱοῦ Ἀβραὰμ καταγόμενον. Ζηναρὸς
most-general of-Ishmael son of-Abraham descended Zenaros
γὰρ ὁ τοῦ Ἰσμαὴλ ἀπόγονος πατὴρ αὐτῶν ἀναγορεύεται
for the — of-Ishmael descendant father their is-proclaimed
πάντων. οὗτος οὖν γεννᾷ υἱοὺς δύο, Μούνδαρον καὶ Ῥαβείαν.
of-all this-man then begets sons two Moundaros and Rabeias
ὁ δὲ Μούνδαρος τίκτει Κούσαρον καὶ Κάϊσον καὶ Θυμίμην
— and Moundaros begets Kousaros and Kaïsos and Thymimes
καὶ Ἄσανδον καὶ ἄλλους τινὰς ἀνωνύμους, οἳ καὶ τὴν
and Asandos and others some unnamed who also the
Μαδιανῖτιν ἔρημον κληρωσάμενοι ἐκτηνοτρόφουν, ἐν σκηναῖς
Midianite desert having-been-allotted kept-flocks in tents
κατοικοῦντες. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνδότεροι τούτων, οὐκ ἐκ τῆς
dwelling there-are and also further-inland of-these not from the
φυλῆς αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ τοῦ Ἰεκτᾶν, οἱ λεγόμενοι Ὁμηρεῖται,
tribe their but — of-Joktan those called Homerites

τουτέστιν Ἀμανῖται. ἀναδείκνυται δὲ οὕτως. ἀπόρου
that-is Amanites he-is-shown-forth and thus without-means
ὄντος αὐτοῦ τοῦ Μουχούμετ καὶ ὀρφανοῦ, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ
being him — Muhammad and (an)-orphan it-seemed to-him
μισθοδοτήσεσθαι γυναικί τινι πλουσίᾳ καὶ συγγενεῖ αὐτοῦ,
to-hire-himself to-(a)-woman certain rich and kinswoman his
καλουμένῃ Χαδίγα, πρὸς τὸ καμηλεύειν καὶ πραγματεύεσθαι
called Khadija for the to-drive-camels and to-trade
ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ μετὰ τῶν ἀλλοφύλων καὶ ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ.
in Egypt among the foreigners and in Palestine
εἶτα κατὰ μικρὸν παρρησιασάμενος καὶ ὑπελθὼν τῇ
then by little becoming-bold and having-crept-in to-the
γυναικὶ χήρᾳ οὔσῃ λαμβάνει αὐτὴν εἰς γυναῖκα. καὶ
woman (a)-widow being he-takes her for wife and
δὴ ἐπιχωριάζων ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ, καὶ συναναστρεφόμενος
indeed staying in Palestine and associating
Ἰουδαίοις τε καὶ Χριστιανοῖς, ἐθηρᾶτο λόγους καὶ
with-Jews both and with-Christians he-hunted-after sayings and
γραφικὰς λύσεις τινάς. ἔχων δὲ τὸ πάθος τῆς ἐπιληψίας,
scriptural solutions some having and the affliction of-the epilepsy
ἐλυπεῖτο σφόδρα ἡ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ ὡς περιφανὴς καὶ πλουσία
was-grieved greatly the wife his as (a)-distinguished and rich(-woman)
καὶ τῷ τοιούτῳ ἀνδρὶ συναφθεῖσα, οὐ μόνον ἀπόρῳ
also to-the such man joined not only without-means
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπιληπτικῷ· ἦν καὶ τροπωσάμενος φάσκων
but also epileptic whom also having-won-over saying
ὅτι φοβερὰν ὀπτασίαν ἀγγέλου θεωρῶ Γαβριὴλ ὀνόματι,
that (a)-fearful vision of-(an)-angel I-behold Gabriel by-name
καὶ μὴ ὑποφέρων αὐτοῦ τὴν θέαν ὀλιγωρῶ καὶ πίπτω,
and not enduring his the sight I-grow-faint and I-fall
ἐπιστεύθη, συμψευδομαρτυροῦντος αὐτῷ Ἀρειανοῦ τινὸς
he-was-believed bearing-false-witness-with him (an)-Arian certain

μοναχοῦ ψευδωνύμου δι᾽ αἰσχροκέρδειαν. καὶ οὕτως ἡ γυνὴ
monk falsely-named for base-gain and thus the woman
πλανηθεῖσα καὶ ἄλλαις γυναιξὶν ὁμοφύλοις κηρύξασα
having-been-deceived and to-other women of-the-same-tribe having-proclaimed
προφήτην αὐτὸν εἶναι, προῆλθε τὸ ψεῦδος τῆς ἀπάτης καὶ
prophet him to-be advanced the lie of-the deceit also
εἰς ἄνδρα φύλαρχον τοὔνομα Βουβάχαρ. ἡ οὖν γυνὴ θανοῦσα
to (a)-man (a)-tribal-chief by-name Abu-Bakr the then woman having-died
καὶ τοῦτον διάδοχον καὶ κληρονόμον καταλείψασα τῶν
and this-man successor and heir having-left of-the(-things)
ἑαυτῆς, ἐγένετο περιφανὴς καὶ ἄγαν ὑπερούσιος, καὶ κατέσχεν
her-own became distinguished and very wealthy and possessed
ἡ πονηρὰ πλάνη τε καὶ αἵρεσις αὐτοῦ τὰ μέρη τῆς Αἰθρίβου,
the wicked error both and heresy his the parts — of-Yathrib
καὶ ἐδίδαξεν οὗτος ὁ παράφρων καὶ πεφενακισμένος τοὺς
and taught this the madman and deluded those
αὐτῷ πειθομένους ὅτι ὁ φονεύων ἐχθρὸν ἢ ὑπὸ ἐχθροῦ
him obeying that the(-one) killing (an)-enemy or by (an)-enemy
φονευόμενος εἰς τὸν παράδεισον εἰσέρχεται, καὶ ἄλλα
being-killed into the paradise enters and other(-things)
ὅσα φλυαρεῖ. προσεύχονται δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ τῆς Ἀφροδίτης
as-many-as he-babbles they-pray and also to the — of-Aphrodite
ἄστρον, ὃ καλοῦσι Κουβάρ, καὶ ἀναφωνοῦσιν ἐν τῇ
star which they-call Koubar and cry-out in the
προσευχῇ αὐτῶν οὕτως "ἀλλᾶ οὐὰ κουβάρ," ὅ ἐστιν ὁ
prayer their thus alla oua koubar which is —
θεὸς καὶ Ἀφροδίτη. τὸν γὰρ θεὸν ἀλλᾶ προσονομάζουσι, τὸ
God and Aphrodite — for God alla they-name the
δὲ οὐά ἀντὶ τοῦ καί συνδέσμου τιθέασι, καὶ τὸ κουβάρ
and oua instead-of the kai conjunction they-put and the koubar
καλοῦσι τὸ ἄστρον, καὶ λέγουσιν οὕτως "ἀλλᾶ οὐὰ κουβάρ."
they-call the star and say thus alla oua koubar

XV · THE FATIMIDS

The Fatimids descend from Muhammad's daughter Fatima and live north of Mecca. With them Muhammad subdued many cities; a thousand make an army unbeatable. They ride camels and fight unarmored, in rose-colored cloaks, with long spears and huge bows.

περὶ τοῦ γένους τῶν Φατεμιτῶν.
concerning the race of-the Fatimids
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Φατὲμ θυγάτηρ ἦν τοῦ Μουχούμετ καὶ
(one)-must-know that — Fatima daughter was — of-Muhammad and
ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνης γεννῶνται οἱ Φατεμῖται. οὐκ εἰσὶ δὲ οὗτοι
from her are-born the Fatimids not are and these
ἐκ τοῦ Φατέμη ἀπὸ τῆς Λιβύης χώρας, ἀλλὰ κατοικοῦσι
from — Fatima from the of-Libya land but they-dwell
πρὸς τὰ βορειότερα μέρη τοῦ Μέκε βαθύτερα τάφου
toward the more-northern parts — of-Mecca further-inland of-(the)-tomb
τοῦ Μουχούμετ. εἰσὶ δὲ ἔθνος Ἀραβικὸν πρὸς πολέμους
— of-Muhammad they-are and (a)-nation Arabian for wars
καὶ μάχας ἀκριβῶς ἐξησκημένον· μετὰ γὰρ τοῦ τοιούτου
and battles thoroughly trained with for the such
γένους ἐπολέμησεν ὁ Μουχούμετ, καὶ πολλὰς πόλεις καὶ
race warred — Muhammad and many cities and
χώρας ἐπόρθησεν καὶ καθυπέταξεν. εἰσὶ γὰρ ἠνδρειωμένοι
lands sacked and subjected they-are for brave
καὶ πολεμισταί, ὅτι εἰ εὑρεθῶσι μέχρι μιᾶς χιλιάδος εἰς
and warlike so-that if they-be-found up-to one thousand in
φοσάτον, τὸ τοιοῦτον φοσάτον ἀήττητον καὶ ἀκαταμάχητον
(an)-army the such army unbeaten and unconquerable
γίνεται. οὐ καβαλλικεύουσι δὲ ἵππους ἀλλὰ καμήλους. ἐν
becomes not they-ride and horses but camels in

δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τοῦ πολέμου οὐκ ἐνδύονται θώρακας οὔτε
and the time of-the war not they-put-on breastplates nor
κλιβάνια ἀλλὰ περιβόλαια ῥοδωτά, καὶ ἔχουσι δόρατα
corselets but cloaks rose-colored and they-have spears
μακρὰ καὶ ἀσπίδας ἀνδρομήκεις καὶ τόξα ξύλινα παμμεγέθη,
long and shields man-high and bows wooden huge
σχεδὸν μὴ δυνάμενα τείνεσθαι παρ᾽ ὀλίγων ἀνδρῶν.
almost not able to-be-drawn by few men

XVI · THE SARACENS' GOING FORTH

From Stephen the mathematician's canon: the Saracens went forth in the twelfth year of Heraclius, in the year of the world 6130, and Muhammad ruled them for nine years.

ἐκ τοῦ κανόνος ὃν ἐθεμάτισεν Στέφανος ὁ μαθηματικὸς
from the canon which drew-up Stephen the mathematician
περὶ τῆς τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐξόδου, ἐν ποίῳ χρόνῳ
concerning the of-the Saracens going-forth in what time
τῆς τοῦ κόσμου συστάσεως ἐγένετο, καὶ τίς ἦν τότε ὁ
of-the of-the world founding it-happened and who was then the
βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων.
emperor of-(the)-Romans
Ἐξῆλθον οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ μηνὶ Σεπτεμβρίῳ τρίτῃ,
went-forth the Saracens in-(the)-month September (the)-third
ἰνδικτιῶνος δεκάτης, εἰς τὸ δωδέκατον ἔτος Ἡρακλείου.
of-(the)-indiction tenth in the twelfth year of-Heraclius
ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ͵ϛρλ΄. τὸ δὲ θεμάτιν
(the)-year from (the)-creation of-(the)-world 6130 the and establishment
τῶν αὐτῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐγένετο εἰς μῆνα Σεπτέμβριον
of-the same Saracens happened in (the)-month September

τρίτην, ἡμέρᾳ πέμπτῃ. εἰς τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους πρῶτος
(the)-third on-day fifth in the same times (the)-first
ἀρχηγὸς τῶν Ἀράβων Μουάμεθ, ὃν οἱ Ἄραβες καλοῦσι
chief of-the Arabs Muhammad whom the Arabs call
Μουχούμετ, ὁ καὶ προφήτης αὐτῶν χρηματίσας,
Muhammad the(-one) also prophet their having-been-styled
ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἔτη ἐννέα.
held the rule of-the Arabs years nine

XVII · FROM THEOPHANES: MUHAMMAD

Muhammad died in 6139, leaving his kinsman Abu Bakr to succeed him. Some Hebrews took him for the Messiah until they saw him eat camel, yet taught him circumcision. His heresy held Yathrib ten years secretly, ten by war, and nine openly. He taught that the slayer or the slain enters a paradise of food, drink, and women, with a river of wine, honey, and milk.

ἐκ τοῦ χρονικοῦ τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους.
from the chronicle of-the blessed Theophanes
Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει, ἤγουν ,ϛρλθ′, ἀπεβίω Μουάμεθ ὁ τῶν
in-this the year that-is 6139 died Muhammad the of-the
Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγὸς καὶ ψευδοπροφήτης, προχειρισάμενος
Saracens chief and false-prophet having-appointed
ἀντ᾽ αὐτοῦ Ἀβουβάχαρον τὸν καὶ Βουτάκτωρα,
in-place-of him Abu-Bakr the(-one) also Boutaktor
συγγενῆ αὐτοῦ. οἱ δὲ πεπλανημένοι Ἑβραῖοι ἐν ἀρχῇ
kinsman his the and deceived Hebrews at (the)-beginning
τῆς παρουσίας αὐτοῦ ἐνόμισαν εἶναι τοῦτον τὸν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς
of-the coming his supposed to-be this-man the by them
προσδοκώμενον Χριστόν, ὡς καί τινας τῶν προυχόντων
expected Christ so-that also some of-the leading-men

αὐτῶν προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ δέξασθαι τὴν αὐτοῦ θρησκείαν
their to-come-to him and to-receive the his religion
καὶ καταλιπεῖν τὴν τοῦ θεόπτου Μωσέως. θεωρήσαντες
and to-abandon the(-religion) of-the God-seeing Moses having-seen
δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ καμήλου ἐσθίοντα ἔγνωσαν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν
but him from (a)-camel eating they-knew that not he-is
ὃν ἐνόμισαν. ἐδίδασκον δὲ αὐτὸν ἀθέμιτα κατὰ
(the-one)-whom they-supposed they-taught and him unlawful-things against
τῶν Χριστιανῶν, καὶ διῆγον σὺν αὐτῷ. οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ
the Christians and lived with him these are those
διδάσκοντες αὐτὸν παραδέχεσθαι μέρη τινὰ τοῦ νόμου, τήν
teaching him to-accept parts some of-the law the
τε περιτομὴν καὶ ἄλλα τινά, ἅπερ παραφυλάττονται οἱ
both circumcision and other(-things) some which observe the
Σαρακηνοί. πρῶτος οὖν Ἀβουβάχαρ ἠκολούθησεν αὐτὸν καὶ
Saracens first then Abu-Bakr followed him and
προφήτην ἐκήρυξεν, διὸ καὶ διάδοχον αὐτὸν κατέλιπεν.
(a)-prophet proclaimed(-him) therefore also successor him he-left
ἐκράτησεν δὲ ἡ αἵρεσις αὐτοῦ τὰ μέρη τῆς Αἰθρίβου,
held and the heresy his the parts — of-Yathrib
πρώην μὲν ἐν κρυπτῷ ἔτη δέκα, τὸ δὲ ἔσχατον διὰ
formerly indeed in secret years ten the and last through
πολέμου ὁμοίως ἔτη δέκα, καὶ φανερῶς ἔτη ἐννέα. ἐδίδαξε
war likewise years ten and openly years nine he-taught
δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ὑπηκόους ὅτι ὁ ἀποκτείνας ἐχθρὸν ἢ
and the of-himself subjects that the(-one) having-killed (an)-enemy or
ὑπὸ ἐχθροῦ ἀποκτεινόμενος ἀκωλύτως εἰς τὸν παράδεισον
by (an)-enemy being-killed unhindered into the paradise
εἰσέρχεται. τὸν δὲ παράδεισον σαρκικῆς βρώσεως καὶ
enters the and paradise of-fleshly eating and
πόσεως καὶ μίξεως γυναικῶν ἔλεγεν, ποταμὸν δὲ οἴνου
drinking and intercourse with-women he-said (a)-river and of-wine

καὶ μέλιτος καὶ γάλακτος καταρρεῖν, καὶ γυναικῶν τὴν
and of-boney and of-milk to-flow-down and of-women the
ὅρασιν ἀσύγκριτον, οὐ τῶν παρόντων ἀλλ᾽ ἄλλων. καὶ
sight incomparable not of-those present but of-others and
τὴν μῖξιν πολυχρόνιον ἔφασκεν καὶ διαρκῆ τὴν ἡδονήν,
the intercourse long-lasting he-declared and enduring the pleasure
καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ ἀσωτίας καὶ μωρίας ἔμπλεα. συμπαθεῖν
and other-things some of-profligacy and of-folly full to-sympathize
τε ἀλλήλοις καὶ βοηθεῖν ἀδικουμένοις.
both with-each-other and to-help those-wronged

XVIII · ABU BAKR

Abu Bakr took Gaza and ruled for three years, and Umar succeeded him.

δεύτερος ἀρχηγὸς τῶν Ἀράβων Ἀβουβάχαρ ἔτη γ΄.
second chief of-the Arabs Abu-Bakr years 3
Οὗτος ὁ Ἀβουβάχαρ πρῶτος λαμβάνει τὴν πόλιν Γάζαν
this — Abu-Bakr first takes the city Gaza
καὶ πᾶσαν αὐτῆς τὴν περίχωρον. τελευτᾷ δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς
and all its the surrounding-country dies and the same
Ἀβουβάχαρ ἀμηρεύσας ἔτη τρία, καὶ παραλαμβάνει τὴν
Abu-Bakr having-been-emir years three and takes-over the
ἀρχὴν Οὔμαρ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῶν Ἀράβων ἔτη δώδεκα.
rule Umar and holds-power over-the Arabs years twelve

Umar besieged Jerusalem for two years and took it by guile, promising Sophronios to spare the churches. Seeing him, Sophronios called him the abomination of desolation. Umar sought out Solomon's temple as a place of prayer for his blasphemy.

τρίτος ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων Οὔμαρ.
third chief of-Arabs Umar
Ὁ αὐτὸς οὖν Οὔμαρ ἀπεστράτευσε κατὰ τῆς Παλαιστίνης,
the same then Umar marched against — Palestine
καὶ παρακαθίσας ἐν αὐτῇ ἐπολιόρκησε τὴν Ἱερουσαλὴμ
and having-sat-down in it besieged — Jerusalem
διετῆ χρόνον, καὶ παρέλαβεν αὐτὴν δόλῳ. Σωφρόνιος
(a)-two-year time and took it by-guile Sophronios
γὰρ ὁ Ἱεροσολύμων ἐπίσκοπος θείῳ κινούμενος ζήλῳ
for the of-Jerusalem bishop by-divine moved zeal
καὶ ἀγχινοίᾳ διαπρέπων λόγον ἔλαβε παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὑπὲρ
and in-shrewdness excelling (a)-word received from him for
τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν τῆς πάσης Παλαιστίνης ἀσφαλέστατον,
the churches of-the whole Palestine most-secure
ὥστε ἀκαθαιρέτους μεῖναι τὰς ἐκκλησίας καὶ ἀπορθήτους.
so-that undestroyed to-remain the churches and unsacked
τοῦτον ἰδὼν ὁ Σωφρόνιος ἔφη "ἐπ᾽ ἀληθείας τοῦτό ἐστι
him having-seen — Sophronios said in truth this is
τὸ βδέλυγμα τῆς ἐρημώσεως τὸ ῥηθὲν διὰ Δανιὴλ
the abomination of-the desolation the(-one) spoken through Daniel
τοῦ προφήτου, ἑστὸς ἐν τόπῳ ἁγίῳ." οὗτος τὸν ναὸν
the prophet standing in (a)-place holy this-man the temple
ἐζήτησε τῶν Ἰουδαίων, ὃν ᾠκοδόμησε Σολομών, πρὸς

τὸ ποιῆσαι αὐτὸν προσκυνητήριον τῆς αὐτοῦ βλασφημίας.
the to-make it (a)-place-of-worship of-the his blasphemy
καὶ ἔστιν ἕως τῆς σήμερον.
and it-is until the today

XX · UTHMAN

Uthman took Africa by war and returned after agreeing a tribute with the Africans. His general Muawiya loosed the Colossus of Rhodes and sacked Cyprus, took the island of Arados, burned its city, and left it uninhabited; he pulled down the Colossus, and a Jewish merchant of Edessa bought its bronze and loaded it on nine hundred camels. Muawiya also marched against Constantinople and ravaged Ephesus, Halicarnassus, Smyrna, and the other cities of Ionia, and after Uthman's death he was chief of the Arabs, the fifth, for twenty-four years.

τέταρτος ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων Οὐθμάν.
fourth chief of-Arabs Uthman
Οὗτος λαμβάνει τὴν Ἀφρικὴν πολέμῳ, καὶ στοιχήσας φόρους
this-man takes — Africa by-war and having-agreed tributes
μετὰ τῶν Ἄφρων ὑπέστρεψεν. τούτου στρατηγὸς χρηματίζει
with the Africans returned his general is-styled
Μαβίας ὁ παραλύσας τὸν κολοσσὸν Ῥόδου καὶ
Muawiya the(-one) having-loosed the colossus of-Rhodes and
πορθήσας Κύπρον τὴν νῆσον καὶ πάσας τὰς πόλεις αὐτῆς.
having-sacked Cyprus the island and all the cities its
οὗτος παραλαμβάνει καὶ νῆσον τὴν Ἄραδον, καὶ τὴν πόλιν
this-man takes also (the)-island — Arados and the city
αὐτῆς ἐνέπρησεν, καὶ τὴν νῆσον ἀοίκητον κατέστησεν ἕως
its burned and the island uninhabited made until
τοῦ νῦν. οὗτος τὴν νῆσον Ῥόδον καταλαβὼν καθεῖλε τὸν
the now this-man the island Rhodes having-seized pulled-down the

αὐτῆς κολοσσὸν μετὰ χίλια τξ΄ ἔτη τῆς αὐτοῦ ἱδρύσεως, ὃν
its colossus after thousand 360 years of-the its erection which
Ἰουδαῖός τις ἔμπορος ὠνησάμενος Ἐδεσηνὸς ἐννακοσίας
(a)-Jew certain merchant having-bought of-Edessa nine-hundred
καμήλους ἐφόρτωσεν αὐτοῦ τὸν χαλκόν. οὗτος ὁ Μαβίας
camels loaded(-with) its the bronze this — Muawiya
ἐπεστράτευσε καὶ κατὰ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, καὶ ἐλυμήνατο
marched also against Constantinople and ravaged
τήν τε Ἔφεσον καὶ Ἁλικαρνασσὸν καὶ Σμύρναν καὶ τὰς
— both Ephesus and Halicarnassus and Smyrna and the
λοιπὰς πόλεις Ἰωνίας· ὃς καὶ γέγονεν τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς
other cities of-Ionia who also became of-the Arabs chief
πέμπτος μετὰ τὴν Οὐθμὰν τελευτὴν ἔτη εἴκοσι τέσσαρα.
fifth after the of-Uthman death years twenty four

XXI · FROM THEOPHANES: MUAWIYA AND HIS LINE

The Mardaites seized the Lebanon, and Muawiya sought peace, paying tribute to Constantine. The Arab rule split between Ali and Muawiya, and Muawiya won. After his line was destroyed by the Black-wearers, a descendant fled to Spain. Yazid, Marwan, and Abd al-Malik followed Muawiya, and Justinian succeeded Constantine. Constantine tells how Muawiya rose from admiral to ruler, besieged Constantinople for seven years in vain and pulled down the Colossus of Rhodes, and how two arbiters settled the quarrel with Ali by a trick with their rings. Maslama and Suleiman later attacked Constantinople and were driven off by God's providence, and even Suleiman revered the icon of the Mother of God.

ἐκ τοῦ χρονικοῦ Θεοφάνους· ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου
from the chronicle of-Theophanes (the)-year from (the)-creation of-(the)-world
,ϛροα΄.
6171

Ἰστέον ὅτι πρὸς τῇ τελευτῇ Μαβίου τῶν Ἀράβων
(one)-must-know that toward the end of-Muawiya of-the Arabs
πέμπτου ἀρχηγοῦ εἰσῆλθον οἱ Μαρδαΐται εἰς τὸν Λίβανον,
fifth chief entered the Mardaites into the Lebanon
καὶ ἐκράτησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Μαύρου ὄρους ἕως τῆς ἁγίας
and held(-it) from the Black Mountain as-far-as the holy
πόλεως, καὶ ἐχειρώσαντο τὰς τοῦ Λιβάνου περιωπάς· καὶ
city and subdued the of-the Lebanon heights and
πολλοὶ δοῦλοι καὶ αὐτόχθονες πρὸς αὐτοὺς κατέφυγον,
many slaves and natives to them fled
ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου χρόνου εἰς πολλὰς χιλιάδας γενέσθαι.
so-that in (a)-short time to many thousands to-come
καὶ τοῦτο μαθὼν Μαβίας καὶ οἱ σύμβουλοι αὐτοῦ
and this having-learned Muawiya and the counselors his
ἐφοβήθησαν σφόδρα. καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν
feared greatly and sends envoys to the
αὐτοκράτορα Κωνσταντῖνον ζητῶν εἰρήνην. ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τῇ
autocrat Constantine seeking peace on this the
προφάσει πέμπεται παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου
pretext is-sent by the emperor Constantine
τοῦ ὀρθοδόξου, τοῦ Πωγωνάτου, Ἰωάννης ὁ ἐπίκλην
the orthodox the Pogonatos John the(-one) surnamed
Πιτζηκαύδης. τούτου δὲ καταλαβόντος ἐν Συρίᾳ, Μαβίας
Pitzikaudes him and having-arrived in Syria Muawiya
ἐδέξατο αὐτὸν μετὰ μεγάλης τιμῆς, καὶ συνεφωνήθη πρὸς
received him with great honor and it-was-agreed by
ἀμφοτέρους ἔγγραφον γενέσθαι εἰρήνης μεθ' ὅρκου λόγον
both written to-be-made of-peace with oath (a)-statement
ἐπὶ συμφώνου ἐτησίου πάκτου, παρέχεσθαι τῷ τῶν
on (an)-agreed annual tribute to-be-furnished to-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ παρὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν χρυσίου χιλιάδας
Romans emperor by the Hagarenes of-gold thousands

τρεῖς καὶ ἄνδρας αἰχμαλώτους ω΄ καὶ ἵππους εὐγενεῖς ν΄.
three and men captives 800 and horses noble 50
ἐπὶ τούτου διῃρέθη ἡ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχὴ εἰς μέρη δύο,
upon this was-divided the of-the Arabs rule into parts two
καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν Ἀΐθριβον ἐκράτησε τὴν ἀρχὴν ὁ Ἀλή,
and in indeed — Yathrib held the rule — Ali
τὴν δὲ Αἴγυπτον καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν ἐκράτει
— and Egypt and Palestine and Damascus held
ὁ Μαβίας. καὶ οἱ μὲν τὴν Ἀΐθριβον οἰκοῦντες μετὰ
— Muawiya and those indeed — Yathrib inhabiting with
τῶν υἱῶν τοῦ Ἀλὴ ἐστράτευσαν κατὰ τοῦ Μαβίου, ὁ δὲ
the sons — of-Ali marched against — Muawiya — and
Μαβίας ἀνθωπλίσατο κατ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ συνῆψεν πόλεμον
Muawiya armed-himself-in-turn against them and joined war
παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην, καὶ ἡττήθη τὸ μέρος Ἀλή,
beside the river Euphrates and was-defeated the party of-Ali
καὶ παρέλαβεν ὁ Μαβίας τὴν Ἀΐθριβον καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν
and took-over — Muawiya — Yathrib and all the
γῆν Συρίας. ἐκράτησε δὲ ἡ αὐτοῦ γενεὰ ἔτη ο΄.
land of-Syria held-power and the his family years 70
Καὶ μετ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐξῆλθον οἱ λεγόμενοι Μαυροφόροι ἀπὸ
and after him went-forth those called Black-wearers from
Περσίδος, οἱ κρατοῦντες ἕως τῆς σήμερον, καὶ ἐπολέμησαν
Persia those holding-power until the today and warred-upon
τὴν γενεὰν τοῦ Μαβίου καὶ ἠφάνισαν αὐτήν, ἔσφαξαν δὲ
the family — of-Muawiya and destroyed it they-slaughtered and
καὶ Μαρουὰμ τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτῶν. ὑπελείφθησαν δὲ ὀλίγοι
also Marwan the head their were-left and few
τοῦ Μαβίου, καὶ ἐδιώχθησαν παρὰ τῶν Μαυροφόρων ἕως
— of-Muawiya and were-pursued by the Black-wearers as-far-as
τῆς Ἀφρικῆς μετὰ καὶ ἑνὸς ἐκγόνου τοῦ Μαβίου. ὁ δὲ
— Africa with also one descendant — of-Muawiya the and

αὐτὸς ἔκγονος τοῦ Μαβίου μετ᾽ ὀλίγων τινῶν διεπέρασεν εἰς
same descendant — of-Muawiya with few some crossed to
τὴν Ἱσπανίαν ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις Ἰουστινιανοῦ τοῦ ῥινοτμήτου,
— Spain in the days of-Justinian the nose-cut
οὐχὶ δὲ τοῦ Πωγωνάτου. τοῦτο δὲ παρὰ τοῖς ἡμετέροις
not and of-the Pogonatos this and by the our
ἱστορικοῖς οὐ γέγραπται· ἀφ᾽ οὗ γὰρ παρελήφθη ἡ
historians not has-been-written from (the-time)-when for was-taken the
μεγάλη Ῥώμη παρὰ τῶν Γότθων, ἤρξατο ἀκρωτηριάζεσθαι
great Rome by the Goths began to-be-mutilated
τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ πράγματα, καὶ οὐδεὶς τῶν ἱστορικῶν τῶν
the Roman affairs and no-one of-the historians of-the
τῆς Ἱσπανίας μερῶν ἐποιήσατο μνείαν οὔτε τῆς γενεᾶς
— of-Spain parts made mention nor of-the family
τοῦ Μαβίου. ἔχει δὲ τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους ἡ ἱστορία
— of-Muawiya has and of-the blessed Theophanes the history
οὕτως. ἀπεβίω οὖν ὁ Μαβίας ὁ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγός,
thus died then — Muawiya the of-the Saracens chief
γεγονὼς στρατηγὸς ἔτη κς΄, ἀμηρεύσας δὲ ἔτη κδ΄. καὶ
having-been general years 26 having-been-emir and years 24 and
ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων Ἰζὶδ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ἔτη
held the rule of-the Arabs Yazid the son his years
ς΄. τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐταράχθησαν οἱ Ἄραβες τῆς
6 him having-died were-troubled the Arabs —
Αἰθρίβου, καὶ διεγερθέντες κατέστησαν ἑαυτοῖς ἀρχηγὸν
of-Yathrib and having-been-roused set-up for-themselves (as)-chief
Ἀβδελὰν τὸν υἱὸν Ζουβέρ. τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες οἱ τὴν
Abdallah the son of-Zubayr this having-heard those —
Φοινίκην καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν κατοικοῦντες
Phoenicia and Palestine and Damascus inhabiting
Ἀγαρηνοὶ ἔρχονται πρὸς Οὐσὰν ἀμηρᾶν Παλαιστίνης, καὶ
Hagarenes come to Hassan emir of-Palestine and

προβάλλονται Μαρουάμ, καὶ ἱστῶσιν αὐτὸν ἀρχηγόν, καὶ
put-forward Marwan and set him-up (as)-chief and
κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς μῆνας θ′. τούτου δὲ τελευτήσαντος
he-holds the rule months 9 him and having-died
Ἀβιμέλεχ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ διαδέχεται τὴν ἀρχήν, καὶ κρατεῖ
Abd-al-Malik the son his succeeds-to the rule and holds(-it)
ἔτη κβ′ καὶ μῆνας ς′, καὶ χειροῦται τοὺς τυράννους, καὶ
years 22 and months 6 and subdues the usurpers and
ἀποκτείνει τὸν Ἀβδελὰν υἱὸν Ζουβὲρ καὶ διάδοχον. ἐν
kills — Abdallah son of-Zubayr and successor in
τούτοις τελευτᾷ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ βασιλεὺς ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ
these(-days) dies Constantine the emperor the son of-the
Πωγωνάτου, κρατήσας τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν ἔτη ιζ′, καὶ
Pogonatos having-held the of-(the)-Romans rule years 17 and
ἐβασίλευσεν ἀντ᾽ αὐτοῦ Ἰουστινιανὸς ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ.
reigned in-place-of him Justinian the son his
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς Μαβίας, πέμπτος
(one)-must-know that the of-the Arabs chief Muawiya fifth
ἀπὸ τοῦ Μουάμεθ ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων,
from — Muhammad held the rule of-the Arabs
οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ γένους ἦν τοῦ Μουάμεθ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐξ ἑτέρας
not from the family was — of-Muhammad but from another
φυλῆς. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐχειροτονήθη στρατηγὸς καὶ
tribe and first indeed he-was-appointed general and
ναύαρχος παρὰ Οὐθμὰν ἀρχηγοῦ τῶν Ἀράβων, καὶ
admiral by Uthman chief of-the Arabs and
ἀπεστάλη κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων πολιτείας μετὰ χειρὸς
was-sent against the of-(the)-Romans state with (a)-hand
ἰσχυρᾶς καὶ καταφράκτων νηῶν ,ασ′, καὶ εἰσῆλθεν ἕως
strong and of-armored ships 1200 and he-came as-far-as
τῆς Ῥόδου, κἀκεῖθεν ἐξοπλισάμενος ἀνῆλθεν ἕως
— Rhodes and-from-there having-equipped-himself went-up as-far-as

Κωνσταντινούπολιν, καὶ διατρίψας χρόνον ἱκανόν, ἤτοι
Constantinople and having-spent time considerable that-is
ἔτη ζ΄, λεηλατήσας τε τὰ ἔξω τοῦ Βυζαντίου
years 7 having-plundered and the(-parts) outside — of-Byzantium
ὑπέστρεψεν ἄπρακτος. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐν τῇ Ῥόδῳ καθεῖλε
he-returned unsuccessful having-come and to — Rhodes he-pulled-down
τὸν κολοσσὸν τὸν ἐν αὐτῇ ἱστάμενον. ἄγαλμα δὲ
the colossus the(-one) in it standing (a)-statue and
ἦν τοῦ ἡλίου χαλκοῦν κεχρυσωμένον ἀπὸ κεφαλῆς ἕως
it-was of-the sun bronze gilded from head to
ποδῶν, ἔχον ὕψος πήχεις π΄ καὶ πλάτος ἀναλόγως τοῦ
feet having (a)-height cubits 80 and breadth in-proportion-to the
ὕψους, καθὼς μαρτυρεῖ τὸ ἐπίγραμμα τὸ πρὸς τὴν
height as testifies the inscription the(-one) at the
βάσιν τῶν ποδῶν αὐτοῦ γεγραμμένον, ἔχον οὕτως· τὸν
base of-the feet its written having thus the
ἐν Ῥόδῳ κολοσσὸν ὀκτάκις δέκα Λάχης ἐποίει πηχέων
in Rhodes colossus eight-times ten Laches made of-cubits
ὁ Λίνδιος. ἔλαβε δὲ τὸν χαλκὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ διεπέρασεν
the Lindian he-took and the bronze its and took-across
ἐν τῇ Συρίᾳ, καὶ ἔστησεν αὐτὸν εἰς ἀγορὰν παντὶ τῷ
to — Syria and set it in (the)-market for-every the(-one)
βουλομένῳ· ὠνήσατο δὲ αὐτὸν Ἑβραῖος ὁ Ἐμεσηνός,
wishing bought and it (a)-Hebrew the Emesene
ἐπιφορτώσας αὐτὸν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης καμήλους ἐννακοσίας
having-loaded it from (the)-sea camels nine-hundred
καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα. τελευτήσαντος οὖν τοῦ Οὐθμὰν διεδέξατο
and eighty having-died then — Uthman succeeded-to
τὴν τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχὴν ὁ Μαβίας, ἐκράτησε δὲ τῆς
the of-the Arabs rule — Muawiya held-power and over-the
ἁγίας πόλεως καὶ τῶν τῆς Παλαιστίνης μερῶν, τήν τε
holy city and of-the — of-Palestine parts — both

Δαμασκὸν καὶ Ἀντιόχειαν καὶ πάσας τὰς τῆς Αἰγύπτου
Damascus and Antioch and all the — of-Egypt
πόλεις. ὁ δὲ Ἀλήμ, ὃς ἦν γαμβρὸς τοῦ Μουάμεθ ἐπὶ
cities — and Ali who was son-in-law — of-Muhammad by
θυγατρὶ τῇ καλουμένῃ Φατιμέ, ἐκράτησε τῆς Αἰθρίβου
(a)-daughter the(-one) called Fatima held-power — over-Yathrib
καὶ πάσης τῆς τραχείας Ἀραβίας. ἐν ταύταις οὖν ταῖς
and all the rough Arabia in these then the
ἡμέραις διηγέρθησαν πρὸς πόλεμον κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων ὅ τε
days were-roused to war against each-other — both
Ἀλὴμ καὶ ὁ Μαβίας, ἐρίζοντες περὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς, τίς
Ali and — Muawiya contending concerning the rule which
αὐτῶν κυριεύσει πάσης Συρίας. συνήχθησαν δὲ παρὰ τὸν
of-them will-be-lord of-all Syria they-were-gathered and beside the
Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ συνάπτουσι πόλεμον ἰσχυρὸν μετ᾽
Euphrates river and join war strong with
ἀλλήλων. τοῦ δὲ πολέμου κρατοῦντος καὶ πολλῶν ἐξ
each-other the and war prevailing and many from
ἀμφοτέρων πιπτόντων, ἔκραξαν τὰ πλήθη τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
both falling cried-out the multitudes of-the Hagarenes
τῶν δύο μερῶν "τίνι τρόπῳ σφάζομεν καὶ σφαζόμεθα
the two parts in-what way do-we-slaughter and are-slaughtered
καὶ ἀφανίζεται τὸ γένος ἡμῶν ἐκ τῆς τῶν ἀνθρώπων
and is-destroyed the race our from the of-the men
βιοτῆς; ἀλλὰ χωρισθήτωσαν δύο γέροντες ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων
life but let-be-set-apart two old-men from both
τῶν μερῶν, καὶ ὃν ἂν προκρίνωσιν ἐχέτω τὴν
the parts and whom-ever — they-prefer let-him-have the
ἀρχήν." ὁ δὲ Ἀλὴμ καὶ ὁ Μαβίας ἠρέσκησαν ἐπὶ τῷ
rule — and Ali and — Muawiya were-pleased at the
λόγῳ αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκβάλλοντες ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν τοὺς
word their and taking-off from the hands the

ἑαυτῶν δακτυλίους δεδώκασι τοῖς δυσὶ γέρουσιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ
their-own rings gave(-them) to-the two old-men which is
σημεῖον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, καὶ παρέσχον τὴν
(a)-sign of-the rule of-the Hagarenes and handed-over the
ἐξουσίαν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν θέλησιν τῶν δύο γερόντων, τὸ
authority their to the will of-the two old-men the
πρᾶγμα ἔνορκον ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοῦτο στοιχήσαντες ἵνα
matter sworn having-made and this having-agreed that
ὃν ἂν προκρίνωσιν οἱ γέροντες, ἐκεῖνος ἔσται κύριος
whom-ever — prefer the old-men that-one will-be lord
καὶ ἀρχηγὸς πάντων τῶν Σαρακηνῶν. καὶ εἰσελθόντων
and chief of-all the Saracens and having-entered
τῶν δύο γερόντων ἀνὰ μέσον τῆς παρεμβολῆς τοῦ
the two old-men into (the)-middle of-the camp of-the
πολέμου τῶν δύο μερῶν, καὶ σταθέντων ἐν τῷ μεταιχμίῳ
war of-the two parts and having-stood in the space-between
τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἀντιπροσώπου, τοῦ μὲν Ἀλὴμ ὁ γέρων
of-the army facing-each-other — indeed of-Ali the old-man
ὑπῆρχε κατὰ τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἔθνος εὐλαβής, οἵους
was according-to the of-the Saracens nation devout such-as
ἐκεῖνοι λέγουσι καδῆς, τουτέστι πιστοὺς καὶ ἡγιασμένους,
those-men call kadis that-is faithful and sanctified
ὁ δὲ τοῦ Μαβίου γέρων ἐν σχήματι μόνῳ ἦν
the and — of-Muawiya old-man in (the)-outward-form only was
εὐλαβής, τὰ δ' ἄλλα δολερὸς καὶ αὐθάδης καὶ πονηρίᾳ
devout in-the and other-things crafty and willful and in-wickedness
πάντας ὑπερβάλλων ἀνθρώπους. εἶπε δὲ ὁ τοῦ Μαβίου
all surpassing men said and the — of-Muawiya
γέρων πρὸς τὸν γέροντα τοῦ Ἀλὴμ ὅτι σὺ πρῶτος εἰπὲ
old-man to the old-man — of-Ali that you first say
ὅπερ βούλῃ ὥστε φρόνιμος καὶ εὐλαβὴς καὶ μακρὰ τοῖς
what you-wish as prudent and devout and far by-the

ἐμοῖς χρόνοις ὑπερβαλλόμενος. καὶ ἀπεκρίθη ὁ γέρων
my years surpassing and answered the old-man
τοῦ Ἀλὴμ τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐξέβαλον τὸν Ἀλὴμ ἐκ τῆς ἀρχῆς,
— of-Ali this that I-have-cast-out — Ali from the rule
ὡς ἐξήγαγον τὸν δακτύλιον αὐτοῦ ἐκ τῆς χειρὸς αὐτοῦ
as I-have-drawn-off the ring his from the hand his
καὶ εἰσήγαγον εἰς τὸν ἐμὸν δάκτυλον. ἐκβάλλω καὶ τὸν
and have-put(-it) onto the my finger I-cast-off also the
δακτύλιον τοῦ Ἀλὴμ ἐκ τοῦ δακτύλου μου, συνεκβαλὼν
ring — of-Ali from the finger my casting-out-together
αὐτὸν καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτοῦ. καὶ ἀνταπεκρίθη ὁ τοῦ
him also from-the rule his and answered-in-turn the —
Μαβίου γέρων ὡς ὅτι εἰσήγαγον τὸν Μαβίαν εἰς τὴν
of-Muawiya old-man as that I-have-put — Muawiya into the
ἀρχήν, ὥσπερ εἰσήγαγον τὸν δακτύλιον αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν
rule as I-have-put the ring his onto the
δάκτυλόν μου. εἰσαγάγω καὶ τὸν δακτύλιον τοῦ Μαβίου
finger my so-I-put also the ring — of-Muawiya
εἰς τὸν δάκτυλον αὐτοῦ. καὶ τότε διεχωρίσθησαν ἀπ᾽
onto the finger his and then they-were-parted from
ἀλλήλων. παραλαμβάνει οὖν ὁ Μαβίας τὴν ἐξουσίαν
each-other takes-over then — Muawiya the authority
Συρίας, ἐπειδὴ ὀμωμόκεσαν ἀλλήλοις οἱ ἀμηραῖοι πάντες
of-Syria since had-sworn to-each-other the emirs all
ὡς ὅ τι ἂν εἴπωσιν οἱ γέροντες, ἵνα ἑπώμεθα
that what-thing ever — say the old-men that we-shall-follow
εἰς τοὺς λόγους αὐτῶν. ὁ γοῦν Ἀλὴμ παραλαβὼν
at the words their — at-any-rate Ali having-taken
τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς τὰ μέρη Αἰθρίβου μετὰ
the people his went-away to the parts of-Yathrib with
πάσης τῆς συγγενείας αὐτοῦ, κἀκεῖσε τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον.
all the kin his and-there ends the life

μετὰ δὲ τὸν θάνατον τοῦ Ἀλήμ, λῆρον ἡγησάμενοι οἱ
after and the death — of-Ali nonsense having-considered the
τούτου υἱοὶ τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτῶν βουλήν, ἐπανέστησαν
his sons the of-the father their counsel rose-up
κατὰ τοῦ Μαβίου καὶ συνῆψαν πόλεμον ἰσχυρὸν μετὰ
against — Muawiya and joined war strong with
τοῦ Μαβίου, καὶ ἡττηθέντες ἔφυγον ἀπὸ τοῦ προσώπου
— Muawiya and having-been-defeated fled from the face
αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀποστείλας Μαβίας ἀπέκτεινεν ἅπαντας. καὶ
his and having-sent Muawiya killed all and
ἔκτοτε ἦλθε πᾶσα ἡ ἀρχὴ τῶν Ἀράβων εἰς τὸν Μαβίαν.
from-then came all the rule of-the Arabs to — Muawiya
ἱστέον δὲ ὅτι οὗτος ὁ Μαβίας ἔκγονος ἦν τοῦ
(one)-must-know and that this — Muawiya (a)-descendant was —
Σοφιὰμ ἔκγονος δὲ τοῦ Μαβίου ὑπῆρχεν ὁ Μάσαλμας
of-Sufyan descendant and — of-Muawiya was — Maslama
ὁ κατὰ Κωνσταντινούπολιν ἐκστρατεύσας, οὗ τινὸς
the(-one) against Constantinople having-marched of whom
καὶ δι᾽ αἰτήσεως ἐκτίσθη τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν μαγίσδιον
also through (a)-request was-built the of-the Saracens mosque
ἐν τῷ βασιλικῷ πραιτωρίῳ. οὐκ ἦν δὲ οὗτος ἀρχηγὸς
in the imperial praetorium not was and this-man chief
τῶν Ἀράβων, ἀλλὰ Σουλεμὰν ὑπῆρχεν ὁ ἀρχηγὸς
of-the Arabs but Suleiman was the chief
τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, ὁ δὲ Μάσαλμας ἐν τάξει στρατηγοῦ
of-the Saracens — and Maslama in (the)-rank of-general
ἐχρημάτιζεν. ἦλθε δὲ Σουλεμὰν μετὰ τοῦ στόλου αὐτοῦ
was-styled came and Suleiman with the fleet his
κατὰ Κωνσταντινούπολιν, ὁ δὲ Μάσαλμας διὰ ξηρᾶς, καὶ
against Constantinople — and Maslama by land and
διεπέρασεν ἐν Λαμψάκῳ ἐπὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Θρᾴκης, ἄγων
crossed at Lampsakos to the parts — of-Thrace leading

μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας χιλιάδας π΄. καὶ διὰ τῆς τοῦ
with himself soldiers thousands 80 and through the —
θεοῦ προνοίας ὅ τε στόλος Σουλεημὰν τοῦ ἀρχηγοῦ τοῦ
of-God providence the both fleet of-Suleiman the chief of-the
Ἀράβων καὶ ὁ πεζὸς στρατὸς τοῦ Μασάλμα ὑπέστρεψαν
Arabs and the foot army — of-Maslama returned
ἅπαντες μετ' αἰσχύνης, ἡττηθέντες καὶ καταπολεμηθέντες
all with shame having-been-defeated and warred-down
παρά τε τοῦ στόλου καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν τῶν βασιλέως.
by both the fleet and the soldiers of-the emperor
καὶ εἰρήνευσεν ἡ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτεία ἐπὶ μήκιστον χρόνον,
and was-at-peace the among us polity for (a)-very-long time
στρατηγούσης καὶ περιεπούσης τῆς δεσποίνης ἡμῶν καὶ
commanding and protecting the lady our and
ἀειπαρθένου Μαρίας τῆς θεοτόκου τήνδε τὴν πόλιν· ἧς καὶ
ever-virgin Mary the God-bearer this the city whose also
τὴν ἄχραντον καὶ ἁγίαν εἰκόνα καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Σουλεημὰν
the undefiled and holy icon also himself — Suleiman
ἠδέσθη καὶ ἐνετράπη καὶ τοῦ ἵππου κατέπεσεν.
revered and was-abashed and from-the horse fell-down

Justinian II made peace with Abd al-Malik and removed the Mardaites from the Lebanon, weakening the empire, and broke the peace with the Bulgarians. Africa fell to the Arabs. Muawiya's grandson took Spain, and from his line came the Arabs who later seized Crete. The list of caliphs runs to Harun, after whose death civil war wasted Syria, Egypt, and Libya and laid waste the churches of Jerusalem and the great lauras of Chariton, Sabas, and the rest. Here Theophanes' chronology ends.

ἐκ τοῦ χρονογράφου τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους περὶ τῶν
from the chronographer the blessed Theophanes concerning the
αὐτῶν καὶ περὶ Μαβίου καὶ τῆς γενεᾶς αὐτοῦ, ὅπως
same and concerning Muawiya and the family his how
διεπέρασεν ἐν Ἱσπανίᾳ. Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς Ἰουστῖνος ὁ
it-crossed to Spain of-(the)-Romans emperor Justin the
ῥινότμητος.
nose-cut

Αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀρχὴ τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
this is (the)-beginning of-the reign his and after these(-things)
ἐξεβλήθη ὑπὸ Λεοντίου, καὶ πάλιν ἀντεισῆλθεν ἐκβαλὼν
he-was-cast-out by Leontios and again re-entered having-cast-out
τὸν Λεόντιον καὶ Ἀψίμαρον, καὶ ἀμφοτέρους αὐτοὺς ἐν τῇ
— Leontios and Apsimaros and both them in the
ἱπποδρομίᾳ θριαμβεύσας καὶ ἀποκτείνας. τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει
hippodrome having-led-in-triumph and having-killed in-this the year
ἀποστέλλει Ἀβιμέλεχ πρὸς Ἰουστινιανὸν βεβαιῶσαι τὴν
sends Abd-al-Malik to Justinian to-confirm the
εἰρήνην οὕτως ἵνα ὁ βασιλεὺς παύσῃ τὸ τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν
peace thus that the emperor stop the of-the Mardaites
τάγμα ἐκ τοῦ Λιβάνου καὶ διακωλύσῃ τὰς ἐπιδρομὰς
corps from the Lebanon and prevent the raids
αὐτῶν, καὶ Ἀβιμέλεχ δώσῃ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις καθ' ἑκάστην
their and Abd-al-Malik give to-the Romans by each(-day)

νομίσματα χίλια καὶ ἵππον εὐγενῆ ἕνα καὶ Αἰθίοπα δοῦλον
nomismata thousand and horse noble one and Ethiopian slave
ἕνα, καὶ ἵνα ἔχωσι κοινὰ κατὰ τὸ ἴσον τοὺς φόρους τῆς
one and that they-have in-common according-to the equal the tributes —
Κύπρου καὶ Ἀρμενίας καὶ Ἰβηρίας. καὶ ἔπεμψεν ὁ βασιλεὺς
of-Cyprus and Armenia and Iberia and sent the emperor
Παῦλον τὸν μαγιστριανὸν πρὸς Ἀβιμέλεχ ἀσφαλίσασθαι
Paul the magistrianus to Abd-al-Malik to-secure
τὰ στοιχηθέντα, καὶ γέγονεν ἔγγραφος ἀσφάλεια μετὰ
the(-things) agreed and came-about (a)-written security with
μαρτύρων, καὶ φιλοτιμηθεὶς ὁ μαγιστριανὸς ὑπέστρεψεν. καὶ
witnesses and having-been-honored the magistrianus returned and
πέμψας ὁ βασιλεὺς προσελάβετο τοὺς Μαρδαΐτας χιλιάδας
having-sent the emperor took-in the Mardaites thousands
ιβ′, τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν δυναστείαν ἀκρωτηριάσας· πᾶσαι γὰρ νῦν
12 the Roman dominion having-mutilated all for now
αἱ οἰκούμεναι παρὰ τῶν Ἀράβων εἰς τὰς ἀκροπόλεις
the(-places) inhabited by the Arabs in the frontier-towns
ἀπὸ Μοψουεστίας καὶ ἕως τετάρτης Ἀρμενίας ἀνίσχυροι
from Mopsuestia and as-far-as fourth Armenia weak
καὶ ἀοίκητοι ἐτύγχανον διὰ τὴν ἔφοδον τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν,
and uninhabited happened-to-be because-of the attack of-the Mardaites
ὧν παρασταλέντων πάνδεινα κακὰ πέπονθεν ἡ Ῥωμανία
whom having-been-removed all-terrible evils has-suffered — Romania
ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀράβων μέχρι τοῦ νῦν. τῷ δ' αὐτῷ ἔτει εἰσελθὼν
by the Arabs until the now in-the and same year having-entered
ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἐκεῖ ἐδέξατο τοὺς ἐν τῷ Λιβάνῳ
the emperor into Armenia there received the in the Lebanon
Μαρδαΐτας, χάλκεον τεῖχος διαλύσας. παρέλυσε δὲ καὶ τὴν
Mardaites (a)-bronze wall having-dissolved he-broke and also the
μετὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων παγιωθεῖσαν εἰρήνην, διαταράξας
with the Bulgarians made-firm peace having-confounded

τοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ οἰκείου πατρὸς ἐνορδίνως γεγονότας
the by the own father duly-ordered having-been-made
τύπους. ἔτι κρατοῦντος τοῦ Ἀβιμέλεχ ἐπεστράτευσαν οἱ
arrangements still holding-power — Abd-al-Malik marched the
Ἄραβες τῇ Ἀφρικῇ, καὶ ταύτην παρέλαβον, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ
Arabs — against-Africa and it took and from the
οἰκείου στρατοῦ ταξατίωνα ἐν αὐτῇ κατέστησαν. Λεόντιος
own army (a)-garrison in it established Leontios
δὲ ἦν τῷ τότε χρόνῳ ἐκβαλὼν τὸν Ἰουστινιανὸν τῆς
and was at-the then time having-cast-out — Justinian from-the
Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, καὶ ἐξορίσας αὐτὸν ἐν Χερσῶνι τῆς
of-(the)-Romans rule and having-exiled him to Cherson the
βασιλείας ἐκράτησεν. Ἀψιμάρου δὲ τοῦ Τιβερίου τὸν
empire held Apsimaros and — Tiberius —
Λεόντιον διαδεξαμένου τῆς βασιλείας καὶ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
Leontios having-succeeded-to the empire and the of-the Romans
σκῆπτρα κρατήσαντος τέθνηκεν Ἀβιμέλεχ ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων
scepters having-held died Abd-al-Malik the of-the Arabs
ἀρχηγός, καὶ ἐκράτησεν Οὐαλὶδ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ἔτη ἐννέα.
chief and held-power Walid the son his years nine
Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ ἔτει πάλιν ὑπέστρεψεν Ἰουστινιανὸς εἰς τὴν
in-the and same year again returned Justinian to the
βασιλείαν, καὶ ῥαθύμως καὶ ἀμελῶς ταύτην διακυβερνῶν,
empire and lazily and carelessly it governing
τῆς Ἀφρικῆς ἐπεκράτησαν ὁλοσχερῶς οἱ Ἀγαρηνοί. τότε ὁ
— of-Africa took-control wholly the Hagarenes then the
τοῦ Μαβίου ἔγγονος μετὰ ὀλιγοστοῦ τινὸς λαοῦ διεπέρασεν
— of-Muawiya grandson with very-small some people crossed
ἐν Ἱσπανίᾳ, καὶ ἐπισυνάξας πάντας τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ γένους
to Spain and having-gathered all those from the family
αὐτοῦ ἐκράτησε τῆς Ἱσπανίας μέχρι τῆς σήμερον. ὅθεν
his held-power — over-Spain until the today whence

οἱ τὴν Ἱσπανίαν κατοικοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοὶ Μαβιᾶται
those — Spain inhabiting Hagarenes Muawiyads
κατονομάζονται. τούτων ἀπόγονοι τυγχάνουσιν οἱ τὴν
are-named of-these descendants are those —
Κρήτην οἰκοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοί· ὅτε γὰρ Μιχαὴλ ὁ τραυλὸς
Crete inhabiting Hagarenes when for Michael the stammerer
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς ἐπεκράτησεν καὶ ἡ τοῦ Θωμᾶ
of-the of-the Romans rule took-control and the — of-Thomas
ἀνταρσία ἐγένετο μέχρι τριετοῦς χρόνου ἐπικρατήσασα,
rebellion happened for (a)-three-year time having-prevailed
τότε τοῦ βασιλέως ἀσχολουμένου ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβεβηκόσι
then the emperor being-occupied with the having-happened
πράγμασιν εὑρόντες διορίαν οἱ τὴν Ἱσπανίαν οἰκοῦντες
affairs having-found respite those — Spain inhabiting
Ἀγαρηνοὶ στόλον ἱκανὸν ἐξαρτύσαντες καὶ ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ
Hagarenes (a)-fleet considerable having-fitted-out and having-begun from
τῶν τῆς Σικελίας μερῶν πάσας τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους
the — of-Sicily parts all the Cyclades islands
ἠρήμωσαν, καὶ ἐλθόντες ἐν Κρήτῃ, καὶ ταύτην εὔκαιρον
laid-waste and having-come to Crete and it opportune
καὶ ἀνειμένην εὑρόντες, μηδενὸς ἀνταιρομένου ἢ μαχομένου
and unguarded having-found no-one rising-up or fighting
ταύτην παρέλαβον, καὶ διακρατοῦσιν ἕως τῆς σήμερον.
it took and keep-hold-off(-it) until the today
Τὸν δὲ Οὐαλὶδ διαδέχεται ὁ Σολεημάν, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη
— and Walid succeeds — Suleiman and holds-power years
τρία. ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἐπεστράτευσε Μάσαλμας ὁ στρατηγὸς
three under this marched Maslama the general
Σουλεημὰν μετὰ στρατοῦ διὰ ξηρᾶς, Οὔμαρος δὲ διὰ
of-Suleiman with (an)-army by land Umar and by
θαλάττης, καὶ τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ συνεργείᾳ ἄπρακτοι μετ'
sea and by-the — of-God assistance unsuccessful with

αἰσχύνης ὑπέστρεψαν. τὸν δὲ Σουλεημὰν διαδέχεται Οὔμαρ,
shame they-returned — and Suleiman succeeds Umar
καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς ἔτη δύο. τὸν δὲ Οὔμαρ
and holds the of-the Arabs rule years two — and Umar
διαδέχεται Ἀζήδ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ ἐνιαυτοὺς
succeeds Yazid and holds the rule for years
τέσσαρας. τοῦτον δὲ διαδέχεται Ἰσάμ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς
four this-man and succeeds Hisham and holds the
ἀρχῆς ἔτη ιθ΄. τούτου τελευτήσαντος κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς
rule years 19 him having-died holds the rule
Μαρούαμ ἔτη ἕξ. Μαρούαμ δὲ τελευτήσαντος Ἀβδελὰς τῆς
Marwan years six Marwan and having-died Abdallah of-the
τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς κύριος γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη κα΄.
of-the Arabs rule lord becomes and holds-power years 21
τούτου τελευτήσαντος Μαδὶς ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων γίνεται,
him having-died Mahdi chief of-Arabs becomes
καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἔτη ἐννέα. τούτου παρελθόντος,
and holds the rule years nine him having-passed-away
Ἀαρὼν τῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς κύριος γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ
Harun of-the of-the Arabs rule lord becomes and holds
τῆς ἀρχῆς ἔτη κγ΄. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἤγουν τῆς
the rule years 23 in this the time that-is of-the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς Εἰρήνης καὶ Κώνσταντος, ἔτος
of-the Romans rule of-Irene and of-Constans (the)-year
ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ,ϛσπη΄. τῷ δ᾽ αὐτῷ ἔτει Ἀαρὼν
from (the)-creation of-(the)-world 6288 in-the and same year Harun
ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς τέθνηκεν εἰς τὴν ἐνδοτέραν
the of-the Arabs chief died in the inner
Περσίδα τὴν καλουμένην Χωρασάν, καὶ διεδέξατο τὴν
Persia the(-land) called Khorasan and succeeded-to the
ἀρχὴν Μοάμεθ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ἀφυὴς κατὰ πάντα καὶ
rule Muhammad the son his untalented in all-things and

ἀσυνάρτητος ὑπάρχων· πρὸς ὃν Ἀβδελὰς ὁ ἀδελφὸς
incoherent being against whom Abdallah the brother
αὐτοῦ στασιάσας ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς χώρας τοῦ Χωρασὰν
his having-rebelled from the same land — of-Khorasan
ἅμα ταῖς πατρικαῖς δυνάμεσιν ἐμφυλίου πολέμου
together-with the paternal forces of-civil war
γέγονεν αἴτιος. κἀντεῦθεν οἱ κατὰ τὴν Συρίαν καὶ
became (the)-cause and-from-this those in — Syria and
Αἴγυπτον καὶ Λιβύην εἰς διαφόρους κατατμηθέντες ἀρχὰς
Egypt and Libya into various having-been-cut-up rules
τά τε δημόσια πράγματα καὶ ἀλλήλους κατέστρεψαν,
the both public affairs and each-other overthrew
σφαγαῖς καὶ ἁρπαγαῖς καὶ παντοίαις ἀτοπίαις πρός τε
with-slaughters and plunderings and all-kinds-of outrages against both
ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτοὺς Χριστιανοὺς συγκεχυμένοι.
themselves and the under them Christians confounded
ἔνθεν δὴ καὶ αἱ τῆς ἁγίας Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν
whence indeed also the of-the holy of-Christ — God our
πόλεως ἐκκλησίαι ἠρήμωνται, τά τε μοναστήρια τῶν δύο
city churches have-been-laid-waste the both monasteries of-the two
μεγάλων λαυρῶν τοῦ ἐν ἁγίοις Χαρίτωνος καὶ Κυριακοῦ
great lauras of-the among (the)-saints Chariton and Kyriakos
καὶ τοῦ ἁγίου Σάβα, καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κοινόβια τῶν ἁγίων
and of-the holy Sabas and the other communities of-the holy
Εὐθυμίου καὶ Θεοδοσίου. ἐπεκράτησε δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης
Euthymios and Theodosios prevailed and of-the such
ἀναρχίας ἡ κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων καὶ ἡμῶν μιαιφονία ἔτη πέντε.
anarchy the against each-other and us bloodshed years five
Ἕως ὧδε ἐκανόνισε τοὺς χρόνους τῶν Ἀράβων ὁ
up-to here set-in-order the times of-the Arabs the
ἐν ἁγίοις Θεοφάνης, ὁ τὴν μονὴν συστήσας τοῦ
among (the)-saints Theophanes the(-one) the monastery having-founded of-the

καλουμένου μεγάλου Ἀγροῦ, μητρόθειος τυγχάνων τοῦ
called Great Field maternal-uncle being of-the
μεγάλου καὶ εὐσεβοῦς καὶ χριστιανικωτάτου βασιλέως
great and pious and most-Christian emperor
Κωνσταντίνου, υἱοῦ Λέοντος τοῦ σοφωτάτου καὶ ἀγαθοῦ
Constantine son of-Leo the most-wise and good
βασιλέως, ἐγγόνου δὲ Βασιλείου τοῦ ἐκ Μακεδονίας,
emperor grandson and of-Basil the(-one) from Macedonia
τοῦ ἐν μακαρίᾳ τῇ μνήμῃ τὰ σκῆπτρα τῆς τῶν
the(-one) in blessed the memory the scepters of-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας κρατήσαντος.
Romans empire having-held

XXIII · IBERIA AND SPAIN

There are two Iberias: one by the Pillars of Heracles, named for the river Iber, and one near the Persians. Quotations from Apollodoros, Herodoros, Artemidoros, Markianos, and others describe the western one's peoples, its Roman provinces, and the forms of its name; Phylarchos says the Iberians, though very rich, drink only water.

περὶ Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἱσπανίας.
concerning Iberia and Spain
Ἰβηρίαι δύο, ἡ μὲν πρὸς ταῖς Ἡρακλείαις στήλαις,
Iberias two the(-one) indeed by the Herculean pillars
ἀπὸ Ἴβηρος ποταμοῦ, οὗ μέμνηται Ἀπολλόδωρος ἐν
from (the)-Iber river of-which mentions Apollodoros in
τῇ περὶ γῆς β΄· "ἐντὸς δὲ Πυρήνης Ἴβηρ τ' ἐστὶ
the on (the)-earth 2 within and (the)-Pyrene (the)-Iber and is
μέγας ποταμὸς φερόμενος ἐνδοτέρω." ταύτης δὲ πολλά
(a)-great river borne further-inland this and many

φασιν ἔθνη διαιρεῖσθαι, καθάπερ Ἡρόδωρος ἐν τῇ δεκάτῃ
they-say nations to-be-divided as Herodoros in the tenth
τῶν καθ' Ἡρακλέα γέγραφεν ἱστορίᾳ, οὕτως. "τὸ δὲ
of-the about Heracles has-written history thus the and
Ἰβηρικὸν γένος τοῦτο, ὅπερ φημὶ οἰκεῖν τὰ παράλια τοῦ
Iberian race this which I-say to-inhabit the coasts of-the
διάπλου, διώρισται ὀνόμασιν ἓν γένος ἐὸν κατὰ φῦλα.
passage is-distinguished by-names one race being by tribes
πρῶτον μὲν οἱ ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐσχάτοις οἰκοῦντες τὰ
first indeed those at the farthest dwelling the(-parts)
πρὸς δυσμέων Κύνητες ὀνομάζονται, ἀπ' ἐκείνων δὲ ἤδη
toward (the)-west Kynetes are-named from those and now
πρὸς βορέαν ἰόντι Γλῆτες, μετὰ δὲ Ταρτήσιοι, μετὰ
toward (the)-north to-one-going Gletes after and Tartesians after
δὲ Ἐλβυσίνιοι, μετὰ δὲ Μαστιηνοί, μετὰ δὲ Καλπιανοί,
and Elbysinians after and Mastienes after and Kalpians
ἔπειτα δὲ ἤδη ὁ Ῥοδανός." Ἀρτεμίδωρος δὲ ἐν τῇ β′
then and now the Rhodanus Artemidoros and in the 2
τῶν γεωγραφουμένων οὕτω διαιρεῖσθαι φησίν. "ἀπὸ δὲ
of-the geographical-books thus to-be-divided says(-it) from and
τῶν Πυρηναίων ὀρῶν ἕως τῶν κατὰ Γάδειρα τόπων
the Pyrenean mountains up-to the at Gadeira places
ἐνδοτέρω καὶ συνωνύμως Ἰβηρία τε καὶ Σπανία καλεῖται.
further-inland and synonymously Iberia both and Spania is-called
διῄρηται δὲ ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων εἰς δύο ἐπαρχίας ***
it-has-been-divided and by (the)-Romans into two provinces (lacuna)
διατείνουσα ἀπὸ τῶν Πυρηναίων ὀρῶν ἅπασα μέχρι
extending from the Pyrenean mountains all up-to
τῆς καινῆς Καρχηδόνος καὶ τῶν τοῦ Βαίτιος πηγῶν·
the new Carthage and the of-the Baetis springs
τῆς δὲ δευτέρας ἐπαρχίας τὰ μέχρι Γαδείρων καὶ
of-the and second province the(-parts) up-to Gadeira and

Λουσιτανίας.” λέγεται δὲ καὶ Ἰβηρίτης. Παρθένιος ἐν
Lusitania is-called and also Iberite Parthenios in
Λευκαδίαις “Ἰβηρίτῃ πλεύσειεν αἰγιαλῷ.” ἡ δὲ ἑτέρα
(the)-Leucadiae Iberite may-he-sail shore the and other
Ἰβηρία πρὸς Πέρσας ἐστί. τὸ ἔθνος Ἴβηρες, ὡς Πίερες
Iberia toward (the)-Persians is the nation Iberians as Pieres
Βύζηρες. Διονύσιος “ἀγχοῦ στηλάων μεγαθύμων ἔθνος
Byzeres Dionysios near (the)-pillars of-the-great-hearted (a)-nation
Ἰβήρων,” καὶ Ἀριστοφάνης Τριφάληται “μανθάνοντες τοὺς
of-Iberians and Aristophanes in-(the)-Triphales learning the
Ἴβηρας τοὺς Ἀριστάρχου πάλαι” καὶ “τοὺς Ἴβηρας
Iberians the(-ones) of-Aristarchos of-old and the Iberians
οὓς χορηγεῖς μοι βοηθῆσαι δρόμῳ.” καὶ Ἀρτεμίδωρος ἐν
whom you-supply me to-help at-a-run and Artemidoros in
δευτέρῳ τῶν γεωγραφουμένων· “γραμματικῇ δὲ χρῶνται
(the)-second of-the geographical-books letters and they-use
τῇ τῶν Ἰταλῶν οἱ παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες τῶν
the of-the Italians those by (the)-sea dwelling of-the
Ἰβήρων.” καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἴβηρος γενικῆς Ἰβηρὶς τὸ θηλυκόν·
Iberians and from the Iberos genitive Iberis the feminine
“Ἑλληνίς, οὐκ Ἰβηρίς” Μένανδρος Ἀσπίδι. λέγεται καὶ
Hellenis not Iberis Menander in-the-Shield is-said also
Ἰβηρικός· Διονύσιος “πόντος μὲν πρώτιστος Ἰβηρικὸς
Iberikos Dionysios sea indeed first-of-all Iberian
ἀρχομένοισι.” διῃρεῖτο δὲ Ἰβηρία εἰς δύο, νῦν δὲ εἰς
to-those-beginning was-divided and Iberia into two now and into
τρία, ὡς Μαρκιανὸς ἐν περίπλῳ αὐτῆς· “πρότερον μὲν
three as Markianos in (the)-periplus its formerly indeed
οὖν ἡ Ἰβηρία εἰς δύο διῃρεῖτο ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων, νυνὶ δὲ
then — Iberia into two was-divided by (the)-Romans now and
εἰς τρία, Βαιτικὴν Λουσιτανίαν καὶ Ταρρακωνησίαν.”
into three Baetica Lusitania and Tarraconensis

ἀπὸ τῆς γενικῆς Ἴβηρος εὐθεῖαν Ἀπολλώνιος, ὡς τοῦ
from the genitive Iberos (a)-nominative Apollonios as of-the
φύλακος – ὁ φύλακος. ἐν τοῖς παρωνύμοις, φησίν, ἀπὸ
phylakos the phylakos in the paronyms says from
γενικῶν εὐθεῖαι παράγονται. τὸ μὲν ὕδωρ δύο συλλαβάς,
genitives nominatives are-derived the indeed hydor two syllables
ὁμοίως τῇ εὐθείᾳ, κατὰ τὸν τόνον παροξυνόμενον, καὶ
likewise to-the nominative in the accent paroxytone and
ἢ ἐν ἁπλῷ σχήματι ἢ ἐν συνθέτῳ. ἁπλὸν μὲν οὖν
either in simple form or in compound simple indeed then
μάρτυρ μάρτυρος – ὁ μάρτυρος, χάροψ χάροπος – ὁ
martyr martyros the martyros charops charopos the
Χάροπος "Χαρόποιό τ' ἄνακτος," Τροίζην Τροιζῆνος – ὁ
Charopos of-Charops and lord Troizen Troizenos the
Τροίζηνος "υἱὸς Τροιζήνοιο," Ἴβηρ Ἴβηρος – ὁ Ἴβηρος,
Troizenos son of-Troizen Iber Iberos the Iberos
ἀφ' οὗ παρὰ Κουαδράτῳ ἐν Ῥωμαϊκῆς χιλιάδος ε΄ ἔστιν
from which in Quadratus in of-(the)-Roman thousand-years 5 is
Ἰβήροισιν, οὕτως "καίτοι Λίγυσί θ' ἅμα καὶ Ἰβήροισι
Iberoisin thus although with-Ligurians and together and with-Iberians
πολεμέοντες." τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ Ἄβρων ἐν παρωνύμοις φησί.
warring the same also Habron in paronyms says
καὶ αὐτὸς Ἴβηρος τραγοπώγων ἐν Μαλθακοῖς εἴρηται
and himself Iberos goat-bearded in (the)-Malthakoi is-said
Κρατίνου. λέγονται οἱ Ἴβηρες ὑδροποτεῖν, ὡς Ἀθήναιος ἐν
of-Kratinos are-said the Iberians to-drink-water as Athenaios in
Δειπνοσοφιστῶν β΄ οὕτω. "Φύλαρχος μὲν ἐν τῇ ζ΄ καὶ τοὺς
of-(the)-Deipnosophists 2 thus Phylarchos indeed in the 7 also the
Ἴβηράς φησιν ὑδροποτεῖν πάντας, καίτοι πλουσιωτάτους
Iberians says to-drink-water all although richest
πάντων ἀνθρώπων τυγχάνοντας· κέκτηνται γὰρ ἄργυρον
of-all men being they-possess for silver

καὶ χρυσὸν πλεῖστον. μονοσιτεῖν τε αὐτοὺς ἀεὶ λέγει
and gold very-much to-eat-once-a-day and them always he-says
διὰ μικρολογίαν, ἐσθῆτάς τε φορεῖν πολυτελεστάτας."
because-of meanness clothes and to-wear most-costly

XXIV · SPAIN

Spain is named for the giant Hispanus. There are two Spains, the greater and the lesser; Quintus, sent against rebel Lusitanians in the lesser, was beaten in both by Viriathus and made a truce. The Greeks first called it all Iberia after the river, and later Pania.

περὶ Ἱσπανίας.
concerning Spain
Πόθεν εἴρηται Ἱσπανία; ἀπὸ Ἱσπάνου γίγαντος οὕτω
whence is-called Spain from Hispanus (a)-giant so
καλουμένου. Ἱσπανίαι δύο τῆς Ἰταλίας ἐπαρχίαι, ἡ
called Spains two — of-Italy provinces the(-one)
μὲν μεγάλη ἡ δὲ μικρά. ταύτης ἐμνήσθη Χάραξ ἐν
indeed great the and small this mentioned Charax in
ι΄ χρονικῶν. "ἐν Ἱσπανίᾳ τῇ μικρᾷ τῇ ἔξω Λουσιτανῶν
10 of-chronicles in Spain the small the outer (the)-Lusitanians
πάλιν ἀποστάντων ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων στρατηγὸς
again having-revolted was-sent by (the)-Romans (a)-general
ἐπ' αὐτοὺς Κυΐντος." ὁ αὐτὸς ὁμοῦ περὶ τῶν δύο
against them Quintus the same together concerning the two
"Κυΐντος ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων πολέμαρχος ἐν ἀμφοτέραις
Quintus the of-the Romans war-leader in both
ταῖς Ἱσπανίαις ἡσσώμενος δὲ ὑπὸ Οὐριάθου σπονδὰς πρὸς
the Spains being-defeated and by Viriathus (a)-truce with
αὐτὸν ἐποιήσατο." ταύτην κεκλῆσθαί φησιν Ἰβηρίαν ἐν
him made this to-have-been-called says(-he) Iberia in

Ἑλληνικῶν γ΄. “τὴν δὲ Ἱσπανίαν Ἕλληνες τὰ πρῶτα
of-Hellenica 3 — and Spain (the)-Greeks the first
Ἰβηρίαν ἐκάλουν, οὔπω ξύμπαντος τοῦ ἔθνους τὴν
Iberia called not-yet of-the-whole of-the nation the
προσηγορίαν μεμαθηκότες, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπὸ μέρους τῆς γῆς ὅ
name having-learned but from (a)-part of-the land which
ἐστι πρὸς ποταμὸν Ἰβηρίαν καὶ ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνου ὀνομάζονται,
is toward (the)-river Iberia and from that they-name
τὴν πᾶσαν οὕτω καλοῦντες. ὕστερον δέ φασιν αὐτὴν
the whole thus calling(-it) later and they-say it
μετακεκλῆσθαι Πανίαν.”
to-have-been-renamed Pania

XXV · FROM THEOPHANES: THE VANDALS IN AFRICA

Aetius slandered Boniface to Placidia, and Boniface, fearing the emperors, invited the Vandals into Africa. Their origins and the settlements of the Goths, Gepids, and Visigoths are traced. The truth came out, but Africa was lost to Gaiseric. Of the three commanders of the faithful now, one sits in Baghdad, one in Africa, and one in Spain. The thirteen emirates once ruled from Baghdad are listed, and how Africa broke away and the emirs of Persia and of Arabia each made himself independent and took the title of commander of the faithful.

ἐκ τῆς ἱστορίας τοῦ ὁσίου Θεοφάνους τῆς Σιγγριανῆς.
from the history of-the holy Theophanes — of-Sigriane
Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει Οὐαλεντινιανὸς οὐ μόνον Βρετανίαν καὶ
in-this the year Valentinian not only Britain and
Γαλλίαν καὶ Ἱσπανίαν ἀνασώσασθαι οὐκ ἴσχυεν, ἀλλὰ
Gaul and Spain to-recover not was-able but
καὶ τὴν ἑσπέριον Λιβύην τὴν τῶν Ἄφρων καλουμένην
also the western Libya the of-the Africans called

χώραν προσαπώλεσε τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. δύο στρατηγοὶ ἦσαν,
land lost-besides in-(a)-way such two generals were
Ἀέτιος καὶ Βονιφάτιος, οὓς Θεοδόσιος κατὰ αἴτησιν
Aetius and Boniface whom Theodosius at (the)-request
Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ εἰς Ῥώμην ἀπέστειλεν. Βονιφατίου δὲ τὴν
of-Valentinian to Rome sent Boniface and the
ἀρχὴν τῆς ἑσπερίου Λιβύης λαβόντος, φθονήσας ὁ Ἀέτιος
command of-the western Libya having-received having-envied — Aetius
διαβολὴν ποιεῖται κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὡς ἀνταρσίαν μελετῶντος καὶ
slander makes against him as rebellion planning and
τῆς Λιβύης κρατῆσαι σπεύδοντος. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν πρὸς
— Libya to-hold-power-over hastening and these(-things) indeed to
Πλακιδίαν ἔλεγε τὴν τοῦ Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ μητέρα, γράφει
Placidia he-said the — of-Valentinian mother he-writes
δὲ καὶ Βονιφατίῳ ὅτι ἐὰν μεταπεμφθῇς παραγενέσθαι μὴ
and also to-Boniface that if you-are-sent-for to-come do-not
θελήσῃς· διεβλήθης γάρ, καὶ δόλῳ σε οἱ βασιλεῖς
wish you-have-been-slandered for and by-guile you the emperors
βούλονται χειρώσασθαι. ταῦτα δεξάμενος Βονιφάτιος,
wish to-seize these(-things) having-received Boniface
καὶ ὡς γνησίῳ φίλῳ Ἀετίῳ πιστεύσας, μεταπεμφθεὶς οὐ
and as (a)-genuine friend Aetius having-trusted having-been-sent-for not
παρεγένετο. τότε οἱ βασιλεῖς ὡς εὐνούστατον τὸν Ἀέτιον
came then the emperors as most-well-disposed — Aetius
ἀπεδέξαντο. ἦσαν δὲ τῷ τότε Γότθοι καὶ ἔθνη πολλά
accepted there-were and at-the then(-time) Goths and nations many
τε καὶ μέγιστα μέχρι τοῦ Δανουβίου ἐν τοῖς ὑπερβορείοις
both and very-great as-far-as the Danube in the hyperborean
τόποις κατῳκισμένα. τούτων δὲ ἀξιολογώτερά εἰσι Γότθοι
places settled of-these and more-notable are Goths
Γήπεδες καὶ Οὐανδῆλοι, ἐν ὀνόμασι μόνον καὶ οὐδενὶ ἑτέρῳ
Gepids and Vandals in names only and in-no other

διαλλάττοντες, μιᾷ διαλέκτῳ κεχρημένοι· πάντες δὲ τῆς
differing one dialect having-used all and —
Ἀρείου ὑπάρχουσι κακοπιστίας. οὗτοι ἐπ᾽ Ἀρκαδίου καὶ
of-Arius are bad-faith these under Arcadius and
Ὀνωρίου τὸν Δανούβιον διαβάντες ἐν τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
Honorius the Danube having-crossed in the of-the Romans
γῇ κατῳκίσθησαν. καὶ οἱ μὲν Γήπεδες, ἐξ ὧν ὕστερον
land were-settled and the indeed Gepids from whom later
διῃρέθησαν Λογγίβαρδοι καὶ Ἀβάρεις, τὰ περὶ Σιγγιδῶνα
were-divided Lombards and Avars the about Singidunum
καὶ Σερμεῖον χωρία ᾤκησαν, οἱ δὲ Ἰσίγοτθοι μετὰ
and Sirmium districts inhabited the and Visigoths with
Ἀλαρίχου τὴν Ῥώμην πορθήσαντες εἰς Γαλλίας ἐχώρησαν
Alaric — Rome having-sacked to Gaul went
καὶ τῶν ἐκεῖ ἐκράτησαν. Γότθοι δὲ Πανωνίαν ἔχοντες
and of-the(-places) there took-control Goths and Pannonia holding
πρῶτον, ἔπειτα ιθ΄ ἔτει τῆς βασιλείας Θεοδοσίου τοῦ
first then in-(the)-19th year of-the reign of-Theodosius the
νέου ἐπιτρέψαντος τὰ τῆς Θρᾴκης χωρία ᾤκησαν. καὶ
young having-permitted(-it) the — of-Thrace districts inhabited and
ἐπὶ νη΄ χρόνους ἐν τῇ Θρᾴκῃ διατρίψαντες, Θευδερίχου
for 58 years in — Thrace having-spent Theoderic
ἡγεμονεύοντος αὐτῶν πατρικίου καὶ ὑπάτου, Ζήνωνος
leading them (a)-patrician and consul Zeno
αὐτοῖς ἐπιτρέψαντος, τῆς ἑσπερίου Λιβύης βασιλείας
to-them having-permitted(-it) of-the western Libya kingdom
ἐκράτησαν. οἱ δὲ Οὐανδῆλοι Ἀλανοὺς ἑταιρισάμενοι καὶ
took-control the and Vandals Alans having-taken-as-companions and
Γερμανοὺς τοὺς νῦν καλουμένους Φράγγους, διαβάντες τὸν
Germans those now called Franks having-crossed the
Ῥῆνον ποταμὸν ἡγούμενον ἔχοντες Γογίδισκλον, κατῴκησαν
Rhine river (as)-leader having Godigisel settled

ἐν Ἱσπανίᾳ πρώτῃ οὔσῃ χώρᾳ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἀπὸ τοῦ
in Spain first being land — of-Europe from the
ἑσπερίου Ὠκεανοῦ. Βονιφάτιος δὲ φοβηθεὶς τοὺς τῶν
western Ocean Boniface and having-feared the of-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖς περάσας ἀπὸ Λιβύης εἰς Ἱσπανίαν πρὸς
Romans emperors having-crossed from Libya to Spain to
τοὺς Οὐανδήλους ἦλθεν· καὶ εὑρὼν τὸν μὲν Γογίδισκλον
the Vandals came and having-found — indeed Godigisel
τελευτήσαντα, τοὺς δὲ ἐκείνου παῖδας Γότθαρόν τε καὶ
having-died the and his sons Gotharos both and
Γηζέριχον τὴν ἀρχὴν διέποντας, τούτους προτρεψάμενος
Gaiseric the rule administering these having-urged
τὴν ἑσπέριον Λιβύην εἰς τρία μέρη διελεῖν ὑπέσχετο, ἐφ᾽
the western Libya into three parts to-divide promised on
ᾧ ἕκαστον τοῦ τρίτου μέρους ἄρχειν σὺν αὐτῷ,
(condition)-that each of-the third part to-rule with him
κοινῇ δὲ ἀμύνεσθαι τὸν οἷον δήποτε πολέμιον. ἐπὶ
in-common and to-repel the what-kind soever enemy on
ταύταις ταῖς ὁμολογίαις Οὐανδῆλοι τὸν πορθμὸν διαβάντες
these the agreements (the)-Vandals the strait having-crossed
τὴν Λιβύην κατῴκησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ὠκεανοῦ μέχρι Τριπόλεως
— Libya settled from the Ocean as-far-as Tripolis
τῆς κατὰ Κυρήνην. οἱ δὲ Ἰσίγοτθοι ἀναστάντες
the(-one) by Cyrene the and Visigoths having-risen-up
ἀπὸ Γαλλίας ἐκράτησαν καὶ τὴν Ἱσπανίαν. τινὲς δὲ
from Gaul took-control also-of — Spain some and
τῆς συγκλήτου Ῥωμαίων φίλοι Βονιφατίου τὴν τοῦ
of-the senate of-(the)-Romans friends of-Boniface the —
Ἀετίου ψευδοκατηγορίαν ἀνήγγειλαν τῇ Πλακιδίᾳ, ἐμφανῆ
of-Aetius false-accusation reported — to-Placidia evident
ποιήσαντες καὶ τὴν πρὸς Βονιφάτιον Ἀετίου ἐπιστολήν, τοῦ
having-made also the to Boniface of-Aetius letter —

Βονιφατίου ταύτην αὐτοῖς ἀποστείλαντος. ἡ δὲ Πλακιδία
Boniface it to-them having-sent — and Placidia
ἐκπλαγεῖσα τὸν μὲν Ἀέτιον οὐδὲν ἠδίκησεν, Βονιφατίῳ
having-been-astounded — indeed Aetius in-nothing wronged to-Boniface
δὲ λόγον προτρεπτικὸν μεθ' ὅρκων ἀπέστειλεν. τοῦ δὲ
and (a)-word exhorting with oaths sent — and
Γοτθαρίου τελευτήσαντος Γηζέριχος τῶν Οὐανδήλων γέγονεν
Gotharos having-died Gaiseric of-the Vandals became
αὐτοκράτωρ. Βονιφάτιος δὲ τὸν λόγον δεξάμενος τῶν
autocrat Boniface and the word having-received against-the
Οὐανδήλων κατεστράτευσεν, στρατοῦ μεγάλου ἐλθόντος αὐτῷ
Vandals marched (an)-army great having-come to-him
ἀπό τε Ῥώμης καὶ τοῦ Βυζαντίου, στρατηγοῦντος Ἄσπαρος.
from both Rome and — Byzantium commanding Aspar
πολέμου δὲ κροτηθέντος πρὸς Γηζέριχον ἡττήθη ὁ τῶν
war and having-been-struck-up against Gaiseric was-defeated the of-the
Ῥωμαίων στρατός. καὶ οὕτω Βονιφάτιος μετὰ Ἄσπαρος
Romans army and thus Boniface with Aspar
εἰς Ῥώμην ἐλθὼν τὴν ὑποψίαν διέλυσεν, ἀποδείξας τὴν
to Rome having-come the suspicion dissolved having-shown the
ἀλήθειαν. ἡ δὲ Ἀφρικὴ ὑπ' Οὐανδήλοις γέγονε. τότε καὶ
truth — and Africa under (the)-Vandals came-to-be then also
Μαρκιανὸς στρατιώτης ὢν καὶ δουλεύων τῷ Ἄσπαρι ζῶν
Marcian (a)-soldier being and serving — Aspar alive
συνελήφθη ὑπὸ Γηζερίχου, ὁ μετὰ ταῦτα βασιλεύσας.
was-captured by Gaiseric the(-one) after these(-things) having-reigned
Ἰστέον ὅτι τρεῖς ἀμερουμνεῖς εἰσὶν ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ
(one)-must-know that three commanders-of-the-faithful there-are in whole —
Συρίᾳ ἤγουν ἐν τῇ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῇ, ὧν ὁ μὲν
Syria that-is in the of-the Arabs rule of-whom the indeed
πρῶτος καθέζεται ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ, ἔστι δὲ ἐκ τῆς τοῦ
first sits in — Baghdad he-is and from the —

Μουάμεθ γενεᾶς ἤτοι τοῦ Μουχούμετ, ὁ δὲ β΄ καθέζεται
of-Muhammad family that-is — of-Muhammad the and 2 sits
ἐν Ἀφρικῇ καὶ ἔστιν ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀλὴμ γενεᾶς καὶ
in Africa and is from the — of-Ali family and
Φατιμὲ τῆς θυγατρὸς Μουάμεθ ἤτοι τοῦ Μουχούμετ, ἐξ
of-Fatima the daughter of-Muhammad that-is — of-Muhammad from
οὗ καὶ Φατιμῖται ὀνομάζονται. ὁ δὲ τρίτος καθέζεται
whom also Fatimids are-named the and third sits
ἐν Ἱσπανίᾳ, ἔστι δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Μαβίου.
in Spain be-is and from the family — of-Muawiya
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τῷ κατ᾽ ἀρχάς, ἐν τῷ κυριεῦσαι τοὺς
(one)-must-know that in the at (the)-beginnings in the to-become-lords the
Σαρακηνοὺς πάσης τῆς Συρίας, ἐκαθέσθη ἀμερουμνῆς
Saracens of-all — Syria was-seated (a)-commander-of-the-faithful
ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ, ἐδέσποζε δὲ πάσης τῆς Περσίας καὶ τῆς
in — Baghdad was-master and of-all — Persia and —
Ἀφρικῆς καὶ τῆς Αἰγύπτου καὶ τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας, καὶ
of-Africa and — of-Egypt and of-the blessed Arabia and
εἶχεν ἀμηραδίας μεγάλας ἤτοι στρατηγίδας ταύτας, πρώτην
had emirates great that-is commands these first
ἀμηραδίαν τὴν Περσίαν ἤγουν τὸ Χωροσάν, δευτέραν
emirate — Persia that-is — Khorasan second
ἀμηραδίαν τὴν Ἀφρικήν, τρίτην ἀμηραδίαν τὴν Αἴγυπτον,
emirate — Africa third emirate — Egypt
τετάρτην ἀμηραδίαν τὴν Φιλιστιὴμ ἤτοι τὸ Ῥάμβλε,
fourth emirate — Philistim that-is — Ramla
πέμπτην ἀμηραδίαν τὴν Δάμασκον, ἕκτην ἀμηραδίαν τὸ
fifth emirate — Damascus sixth emirate —
Χὲμψ ἤτοι τὸ Ἔμεσσα, ἑβδόμην ἀμηραδίαν τὸ Χάλεπ,
Chemps that-is — Emessa seventh emirate — Aleppo
ὀγδόην ἀμηραδίαν τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν, ἐνάτην ἀμηραδίαν τὸ
eighth emirate — Antioch ninth emirate —

Χαράν, δεκάτην ἀμηραδίαν τὸ Ἔμετ, ἑνδεκάτην ἀμηραδίαν
Charan tenth emirate — Emet eleventh emirate
τὴν Ἐσιβή, δωδεκάτην ἀμηραδίαν τὸ Μουσελ, τρισδεκάτην
— Esibe twelfth emirate — Mosul thirteenth
ἀμηραδίαν τὸ Τικρίτ. τῆς δὲ Ἀφρικῆς ἀποσπασθείσης
emirate — Tikrit — and Africa having-been-torn-away
ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ ἐν τῷ Βαγδὰδ ἐξουσίας καὶ
from the of-the commander-of-the-faithful in — Baghdad authority and
ἰδιοκρατησάσης καὶ ἀμηρᾶν ἴδιον ἀναγορευσάσης γέγονε,
having-ruled-itself and (an)-emir own having-proclaimed became
καθὼς καὶ προϋπῆρχεν, πρώτη ἀμηραδία ἡ Περσία, δευτέρα
as also it-was-before first emirate — Persia second
ἡ Αἴγυπτος, καὶ καθεξῆς αἱ λοιπαὶ καθὼς προείρηται.
— Egypt and in-order the others as has-been-said-before
ἀρτίως δὲ πάλιν τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Βαγδὰδ
recently and again the commander-of-the-faithful the(-one) in — Baghdad
ἀδυνατήσαντος γέγονεν ἰδιόρυθμος ὁ τῆς Περσίας ἀμηρᾶς
having-become-powerless became independent the — of-Persia emir
ἤγουν τοῦ Χορασάν, καὶ ἀπεκάλεσεν ἑαυτὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν,
that-is — of-Khorasan and called himself commander-of-the-faithful
φορῶν καὶ τὸ κουρὰν διὰ πινακιδίων εἰς τὸν τράχηλον
wearing also the Koran by tablets around the neck
αὐτοῦ δίκην μανιακίου. λέγει δὲ αὐτὸν εἶναι ἀπὸ
his in-the-manner-of (a)-collar he-says and him to-be from
τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Ἀλήμ. ὁ δὲ ἀμηρᾶς τῆς εὐδαίμονος
the family — of-Ali the and emir of-the blessed
Ἀραβίας ὑπῆρχεν ἀεὶ καὶ πάντοτε ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
Arabia was always and at-all-times under the authority
τοῦ ἀμηρᾶ Αἰγύπτου, γέγονε δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἰδιόρυθμος,
of-the emir of-Egypt became and also he independent

καὶ ἀπεκάλεσεν καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν. λέγει
and called also he himself commander-of-the-faithful he-says
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν εἶναι ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀλὴμ γενεᾶς.
and also he himself to-be from the — of-Ali family

XXVI · THE GENEALOGY OF KING HUGH

King Hugh of Italy descends from Lothar and from Charles the Great. The chapter traces the struggles for Pavia among Louis, Berengar, and Rudolf. Berengar once escaped by lying unmoving among the dead, though pierced in the foot, and later starved out three Burgundian marquises, Hugh among them, sparing them on oath. After Berengar was murdered and Rudolf sent away, the people made Hugh king; he married Rudolf's widow Bertha, and his daughter Bertha married Romanos and was renamed Eudocia.

ἡ γενεαλογία τοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς Οὔγωνος.
the genealogy of-the illustrious king Hugh
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ ῥὴξ Ἰταλίας ὁ μέγας Λωθάριος,
(one)-must-know that the king of-Italy the great Lothar
ὁ πάππος τοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς Οὔγωνος, ἀπὸ
the grandfather of-the illustrious king Hugh from
τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ μεγάλου Καρούλου κατήγετο, περὶ
the family of-the great Charles was-descended about
οὗ πολὺς ἔπαινος ἐγκώμιά τε καὶ διηγήματα καὶ
whom much praise encomia both and tales and
περὶ πολέμους ἀνδραγαθήματα. οὗτος οὖν Κάρουλος ἦν
in wars brave-deeds this then Charles was
μονοκράτωρ πάντων τῶν ῥηγάτων, ἐβασίλευσε δὲ εἰς
sole-ruler of-all the kingdoms he-reigned and in
τὴν μεγάλην Φραγγίαν. ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς
the great Frankland in and the days his no-one

τῶν ὑπολοίπων ῥηγῶν ἐτόλμησε ῥῆγα ἑαυτὸν καλέσαι,
of-the remaining kings dared king himself to-call
ἀλλὰ πάντες ὑπῆρχον ὑπόσπονδοι αὐτοῦ· ὅστις χρήματα
but all were tributaries his who monies
ἱκανὰ καὶ πλοῦτον ἄφθονον ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ ἀποστείλας
sufficient and wealth abundant into Palestine having-sent
ἐδείματο μοναστήρια πάμπολλα. ὁ τοίνυν Λωθάριος οὗτος
built monasteries very-many — then Lothar this
ἀναλαβόμενος τὰ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύματα, κατὰ Ῥώμης
having-taken-up the his-own armies against Rome
ἐκστρατεύσας ἀπὸ πολέμου ταύτην ἐκράτησε, καὶ ἐστέφθη
having-marched by war it took and was-crowned
παρὰ τοῦ τότε πάπα· καὶ ἡνίκα ὑπέστρεφεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
by the then pope and when he-was-returning to the his-own
ἐξουσίαν ἤγουν εἰς Παπίαν, κατήντησεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον
domain that-is to Pavia he-arrived at the fortress
Πλαζέντα τὸ ὂν ἀπὸ τριάκοντα μιλίων τῆς Παπίας.
Piacenza the(-one) being from thirty miles — of-Pavia
κἀκεῖσε μὲν οὗτος τελευτᾷ, ἔτεκεν δὲ υἱὸν ὀνόματι
and-there indeed this-man dies he-begot and (a)-son by-name
Ἀδέλβερτον, ὃς ἔγημε γυναῖκα τὴν μεγάλην Βέρταν, καὶ
Adalbert who married (as)-wife the great Bertha and
ἐξ αὐτῆς τὴν προρρηθέντα ῥῆγα τὸν Οὔγωνα ἔτεκεν.
from her the aforesaid king — Hugh begot
μετὰ δὲ τὸ τελευτῆσαι τὸν μέγαν Λωθάριον, Λοδοΐκος
after and the to-die the great Lothar Louis
ὁ ἴδιος τοῦ Λοδοΐκου ἀπὸ τοῦ μεγάλης Φραγγίας
the own(-son) — of-Louis from the great Frankland
ἐλθὼν ἐκράτησε τὴν Παπίαν. καὶ ἦν μὲν ἄστεπτος,
having-come took-control — Pavia and was indeed uncrowned
ὕστερον δὲ ἦλθεν εἰς Βερῶναν, εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ
later and he-came to Verona to the fortress the(-one)

ὂν ἀπὸ ρκ΄ μιλίων τῆς Παπίας, καὶ ἐλθόντος αὐτοῦ
being from 120 miles — of-Pavia and having-come him
ἐκεῖσε ἐπανέστησαν αὐτῷ οἱ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου, καὶ
there rose-up against-him those of-the same fortress and
κρατήσαντες ἐτύφλωσαν. καὶ τότε ἐκράτησε Βεριγγέριος
having-seized(-him) blinded(-him) and then took-control Berengar
ὁ πάππος τοῦ νυνὶ Βεριγγέρι, καὶ εἰσελθὼν ἐν Ῥώμῃ
the grandfather of-the now Berengar and having-entered into Rome
ἐστέφθη. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐδηλοποίησε λαὸς πολὺς τῷ
was-crowned and after this made-known (a)-people much —
Ῥοδούλφῳ εἰς Βεργώνιαν ὄντι, λέγοντες ὅτι ἐλθὲ ἐνταῦθα,
to-Rudolf in Burgundy being saying that come here
καὶ παραδίδομέν σοι τὸ ῥηγάτον, καὶ ἀποκτενοῦμεν τὸν
and we-hand-over to-you the kingdom and we-will-kill —
Βεριγγέριον. ὁ δὲ ἦλθε ἀπὸ Βεργώνιαν πρὸς τὰ μέρη τῆς
Berengar he and came from Burgundy to the parts —
Παπίας, καὶ ὁ μὲν ἥμισυς λαὸς ἦν μετὰ τοῦ Βεριγγέρι,
of-Pavia and the indeed half people was with — Berengar
ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς μετὰ τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου. καὶ πολεμήσαντες,
the and rest with — Rudolf and having-warred
ἐνίκησεν ὁ Βεριγγέρις τὸν πρῶτον πόλεμον, καὶ πάλιν
won — Berengar the first war and again
πολεμήσαντες, ἐνίκησεν ὁ Ῥοδοῦλφος, καὶ ἔφυγεν ὁ
having-warred won — Rudolf and fled the
λαὸς τοῦ Βεριγγέρι. καὶ μόνος καταλειφθεὶς ὁ Βεριγγέρις
people — of-Berengar and alone having-been-left — Berengar
ἐποίησεν ἑαυτὸν ὡς τεθνεῶτα, καὶ ἔπεσεν μέσον τῶν
made himself as dead and fell among the
τεθνεώτων, σκεπάσας αὐτὸν μετὰ τῆς δορκᾶς αὐτοῦ,
dead having-covered himself with the shield his
τὸν δὲ πόδα αὐτοῦ εἶχεν ἔξω. ἐλθὼν δὲ εἷς ἐκ τῶν
the but foot his he-had outside having-come and one of the

στρατιωτῶν τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου δέδωκεν αὐτῷ μετὰ μεναύλου
soldiers — of-Rudolf gave him with (a)-pike
εἰς τὸν πόδα, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ σύνολον οὐκ ἐσαλεύθη· τοῦ
in the foot he and the altogether not was-moved the(-one)
δὲ μὴ σαλευθέντος, ἀφίησιν αὐτὸν ὡς δῆθεν νεκρὸν ὄντα.
and not having-moved he-leaves him as forsooth dead being
ἠγνόει δὲ ὁ τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου λαὸς ὅτι ὁ Βερινγέρις
did-not-know and the — of-Rudolf people that — Berengar
ἐστί. καὶ παύσαντος τοῦ πολέμου ἠγέρθη ὁ Βερινγέρις, καὶ
it-is and having-stopped the war rose-up — Berengar and
ἦλθεν εἰς τὸ παλάτιον αὐτοῦ μόνος, καὶ πάλιν ἐκράτησε
came to the palace his alone and again took-control
τῆς βασιλείας, καὶ ἐπολέμησε τὸν Ῥοδοῦλφον, καὶ ἐνίκησεν
of-the kingdom and warred-upon — Rudolf and conquered
αὐτόν. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο συνεβιβάσθησαν εἰς ἀλλήλους καὶ
him after and this they-were-reconciled to each-other and
ἐμερίσθησαν τὴν χώραν εἰς δύο, καὶ ὁ μὲν εἷς ἀνελάβετο
divided the land into two and the indeed one took
τὸ ἓν μέρος τῆς χώρας, ὁ δὲ ἕτερος τὸ ἕτερον. ἦν δὲ
the one part of-the land the and other the other was and
ὁ Ῥοδοῦλφος ὑπὸ τὴν βουλὴν καὶ ἐξουσίαν τοῦ Βερινγέρι.
— Rudolf under the counsel and authority — of-Berengar
καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἦλθον ἀπὸ Βεργώνια τρεῖς μαρκήσιοι
and after this came from Burgundy three marquises
πρὸς Παπίαν τοῦ ἐκδιῶξαι τοὺς κρατοῦντας καὶ κρατῆσαι
to Pavia of-the to-drive-out those holding-power and to-hold-power
αὐτοί· ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι Οὔγων ὁ Ταλιαφέρνου καὶ
themselves were and these Hugh the(-son) of-Taliaferno and
Βόζων καὶ Οὔγων ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Βόζου, ὁ προρρηθεὶς
Boso and Hugh the brother — of-Boso the aforesaid
εὐγενέστατος ῥήξ. ἦλθε δὲ μετὰ λαοῦ ἱκανοῦ. καὶ μαθὼν
most-noble king came and with people considerable and having-learned

ὁ Βεριγγέρις ἡτοιμάσθη, καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς συνάντησιν
— *Berengar made-ready and went-away to meeting*
αὐτοῦ πρὸς πόλεμον, καὶ παρακαθίσας ἐστενοχώρησεν
him for war and having-sat-down he-straitened
αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ λιμοῦ, καὶ ὥρισε τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ μὴ φονεύειν
them by hunger and ordered the people his not to-kill
τινά, ἀλλ᾽ ὅπου ἂν κρατήσωσί τινα ἐξ αὐτῶν κόπτωσι
anyone but wherever — they-seize anyone of them they-should-cut-off
τὴν ῥῖνα αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ δύο ὠτία καὶ ἀπολύωσιν· ὃ
the nose his and the two ears and let(-him)-go which
δὴ καὶ ἐποίουν. θεασάμενοι οὖν τοῦτο αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι
indeed also they-did having-seen then this the aforesaid
τρεῖς κεφαλαί, ἄραντες ἀνυπόδετοι τὰ θεῖα εὐαγγέλια εἰς
three heads having-lifted barefoot the divine gospels into
τὰς χεῖρας αὐτῶν ἦλθον πρὸς τὸν Βεριγγέριν, αἰτούμενοι
the hands their came to — Berengar asking
συγχώρησιν καὶ ὀμνύοντες τοῦ μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν ἐνθάδε μέχρι
pardon and swearing of-the no-longer to-come here until
τέλους ζωῆς αὐτοῦ· καὶ τότε εἴασεν αὐτοὺς ἀπελθεῖν εἰς
(the)-end of-life his and then he-let them to-go-away to
τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν. ὕστερον δὲ τοῦ Βεριγγέρι ἀπελθόντος
the own land later and — Berengar having-gone-away
εἰς Βερῶναν, ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτὸν Φαλάμβερτος ὁ σύντεκνος
to Verona killed him Falambert the fellow-sponsor
αὐτοῦ, καὶ τότε ἐκράτησεν ὅλον τὸ ῥηγάτον Ῥοδοῦλφος.
his and then took-control-of whole the kingdom Rudolf
καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐμήνυσεν ὁ λαὸς τῆς χώρας ὅλης εἰς
and after this sent-word the people of-the land whole to
Βεργωνίαν τῷ Οὔγωνι τῷ προρρηθέντι ῥηγί, λέγοντες ὅτι
Burgundy — to-Hugh the aforesaid king saying that
ἔλθε καὶ παραδίδομέν σοι τὴν χώραν. καὶ ἐλθόντος αὐτοῦ,
come and we-hand-over to-you the land and having-come him

ἐπῆρον αὐτὸν ὁ λαὸς καὶ ἀπήγαγον εἰς τὸ παλάτιον
lifted him the people and led(-him)-away to the palace
καὶ ἀπεκατέστησαν αὐτὸν ῥῆγα. τὸν δὲ Ῥοδοῦλφον εἶπον
and restored him (as)-king — and Rudolf they-told
ὅτι ἄπελθε μετὰ τοῦ πλούτου σου, θέλῃς εἰς τὴν
that go-away with the wealth your whether-you-wish to the
χώραν σου, θέλῃς ἀλλαχοῦ. ὁ δὲ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Βεργωνίαν
land your or-you-wish elsewhere he and went-away to Burgundy
εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατεῖχεν ἐκεῖσε λαὸν ἱκανόν.
to the land his and kept there people considerable
καὶ τελευτήσαντος αὐτοῦ ἀπῆλθεν Οὔγων ὁ προρρηθεὶς
and having-died him went-away Hugh the aforesaid
ῥὴξ εἰς Βεργωνίαν, καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου,
king to Burgundy and the wife — of-Rudolf
ἥτις καὶ Βέρτα ὠνομάζετο, ἔλαβεν εἰς γυναῖκα, τὴν
who also Bertha was-named took for wife the
δὲ θυγατέρα αὐτῆς ὀνόματι Ἀδέλεσαν δέδωκεν Λωθαρίῳ
and daughter her by-name Adelaide he-gave to-Lothar
τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ, τῷ νυνὶ ὄντι Ἰταλίας ῥηγί. ἡ δὲ
the son his the now being of-Italy king she and
ἀνελθοῦσα ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει καὶ συναφθεῖσα Ῥωμανῷ
having-gone-up to Constantinople and having-been-joined to-Romanos
τῷ πορφυρογεννήτῳ υἱῷ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
the porphyrogennetos son of-Constantine the Christ-loving
δεσπότου, ἤτοι ἡ θυγάτηρ τοῦ αὐτοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς
lord that-is the daughter of-the same illustrious king
Οὔγωνος, ἣ ὠνομάζετο Βέρτα κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τῆς
Hugh who was-named Bertha according-to the name of-the
μάμμης αὐτῆς τῆς μεγάλης Βέρτας, ἥτις μετὰ θάνατον
grandmother her the great Bertha who after (the)-death
τοῦ Ἀδελβέρτου ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς ἐβασίλευσεν ἔτη ***.
— of-Adalbert husband her reigned years (lacuna)

μετωνομάσθη δὲ Εὐδοκία κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τῆς τε μάμμης
was-renamed and Eudocia according-to the name of-the both grandmother
καὶ ἀδελφῆς Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου.
and sister of-Constantine the Christ-loving lord

XXVII · THE THEME OF LOMBARDY

All Italy was once ruled by two Roman patricians. When Irene mocked Narses with a spindle, he invited the Lombards from Pannonia. They took Benevento by guile and conquered most of the land, except the coastal cities. The princes of Benevento, Salerno, and Capua are traced. Then come the origin of the Venetians and lists of their island and mainland fortresses.

περὶ τοῦ θέματος Λογουβαρδίας, καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
concerning the theme of-Lombardy and the in it
πριγκιπάτων καὶ ἀρχοντιῶν.
principalities and governments
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τοῖς παλαιοῖς χρόνοις κατεκρατεῖτο
(one)-must-know that in the ancient times was-held
ἡ πᾶσα ἐξουσία τῆς Ἰταλίας, ἥ τε Νεάπολις καὶ
the whole dominion — of-Italy — both Naples and
Καπύη καὶ ἡ Βενεβενδὸς τό τε Σαλερινὸν καὶ ἡ
Capua and — Benevento — both Salerno and —
Ἀμάλφη καὶ Γαϊτὴ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Λογουβαρδία, παρὰ τῶν
Amalfi and Gaeta and all — Lombardy by the
Ῥωμαίων, δηλονότι βασιλευομένης τῆς Ῥώμης. μετὰ δὲ τὸ
Romans evidently being-ruled — Rome after and the
ἀνελθεῖν τὸ βασίλειον ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει διεμερίσθησαν
to-go-up the imperial-seat to Constantinople were-divided
ταῦτα πάντα εἰς ἀρχὰς δύο, ἐξ οὗ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ
these all into governments two from which also by the(-one)

βασιλεύοντος ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει ἀπεστέλλοντο πατρίκιοι
reigning in Constantinople were-sent patricians
δύο, καὶ ὁ μὲν εἷς πατρίκιος ἐκράτει τὴν Σικελίαν καὶ
two and the indeed one patrician held — Sicily and
τὴν Καλαβρίαν καὶ τὴν Νεάπολιν καὶ Ἀμάλφην, ὁ δὲ
— Calabria and — Naples and Amalfi the and
ἕτερος πατρίκιος ἐκαθέζετο εἰς Βενεβενδὸν καὶ ἐκράτει τὴν
other patrician sat at Benevento and held —
Παπίαν καὶ τὴν Κάπυαν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα, καὶ ἐτέλουν
Pavia and — Capua and the other all and they-paid
κατ᾽ ἔτος τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ νενομισμένα τῷ δημοσίῳ.
by year to-the emperor the(-things) customary to-the treasury
αὗται δὲ πᾶσαι αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι χῶραι κατῳκοῦντο παρὰ
these and all the aforesaid lands were-inhabited by
τῶν Ῥωμαίων. ἐν δὲ τοῖς καιροῖς Εἰρήνης τῆς βασιλίδος
the Romans in and the times of-Irene the empress
ἀποσταλεὶς ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς ἐκράτει τὴν Βενεβενδὸν
having-been-sent the patrician Narses held — Benevento
καὶ τὴν Παπίαν, καὶ Ζαχαρίας ὁ πάπας Ἀθηναῖος ἐκράτει
and — Pavia and Zacharias the pope (an)-Athenian held
τὴν Ῥώμην. συνέβη δὲ πολέμους γενέσθαι εἰς τὰ τῆς
— Rome it-happened and wars to-occur in the —
Παπίας μέρη, καὶ ἐξωδίασεν ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς εἰς
of-Pavia parts and spent the patrician Narses on
τὸν στρατὸν τὰ εἰσκομιζόμενα πάκτα τῷ δημοσίῳ, καὶ
the army the being-brought-in tributes to-the treasury and
οὐκ ἀπεστάλη ἡ κατὰ τύπον εἰσκομιδὴ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ· ὁ
not was-sent the according-to rule revenue by him —
δὲ Ναρσῆς ἀντεμήνυσεν ὅτι ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτόθι μᾶλλον
and Narses sent-word-back that from the(-people) there rather
ἐλπίζω μοι ἀποσταλῆναι χρήματα, ἐπειδὴ πᾶσαν τὴν
I-expect to-me to-be-sent monies since all the

ἀπὸ τῶν ὧδε εἰσκομιζομένην εἰσκομιδὴν εἰς τοὺς
from the(-people) here being-brought-in revenue on the
ἀνακύψαντας πολέμους κατηνάλωσα, καὶ μᾶλλον ὑμεῖς
having-arisen wars I-have-spent and rather you
ἀπὸ τῶν ὧδε ζητεῖτε εἰσκομιδάς. ταῦτα ἀκούσασα
from the(-people) here seek revenues these(-things) having-heard
ἡ βασίλισσα Εἰρήνη καὶ ὀργισθεῖσα ἀπέστειλεν αὐτῷ
the empress Irene and having-been-angered sent to-him
ἄτρακτον καὶ ἠλακάτην, γράψασα πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι λάβε
(a)-spindle and (a)-distaff having-written to him that take
ταῦτα, ἃ καὶ ἁρμόζει σοι· νήθειν σε γὰρ μᾶλλον
these(-things) which also befit you to-spin you for rather
ἐκρίναμεν δίκαιον ἢ μετὰ ὅπλων ὡς ἄνδρα διεκδικεῖν καὶ
we-have-judged just than with arms as (a)-man to-defend and
διευθύνειν καὶ ὑπερπολεμεῖν Ῥωμαίων. ταῦτα ἀκούσας
to-govern and to-fight-for (the)-Romans these(-things) having-heard
ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς ἀντέγραψε πρὸς τὴν βασιλίδα ὅτι
the patrician Narses wrote-back to the empress that
ἐπεὶ οὕτω παρ᾽ ὑμῖν ἐνομίσθην νήθειν καὶ κλώθειν
since thus by you I-was-deemed to-spin and to-twist-thread
καθάπερ γυνή, κλῶσαι ἔχω νήματα μετὰ τῆς ἀτράκτου
like (a)-woman to-twist I-have threads with the spindle
καὶ ἠλακάτης, ἵνα μέχρις ἂν ζῶσιν οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι μὴ
and distaff so-that as-long-as — live the Romans not
δυνηθῶσιν ἐξυφᾶναι ταῦτα. οἱ δὲ Λογουβάρδοι τῷ τότε
they-may-be-able to-unweave them the and Lombards at-the then
καιρῷ κατῴκουν εἰς Πανωνίαν, ἔνθα ἀρτίως οἰκοῦσιν οἱ
time dwelt in Pannonia where now dwell the
Τοῦρκοι. καὶ ἀποστείλας ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς πρὸς αὐτοὺς
Turks and having-sent the patrician Narses to them
ὀπώρας παντοίας. ἐδηλοποίησεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι δεῦτε ἐνταῦθα,
fruits of-every-kind made-known to-them that come here

καὶ θεάσασθε γῆν ῥέουσαν κατὰ τὸ εἰρημένον μέλι
and behold (a)-land flowing according-to the said(-word) honey
καὶ γάλα, ἧς, ὡς οἶμαι, ὁ θεὸς κρείττονα οὐκ ἔχει·
and milk than-which as I-think — God better not has
καὶ εἰ ἔστιν ὑμῖν ἀρεστόν, κατοικήσατε ἐν αὐτῇ, ὅπως εἰς
and if it-is to-you pleasing settle in it so-that to
αἰῶνα αἰῶνος μακαρίζετέ με. ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσαντες
(the)-age of-age you-may-call-blessed me these(-things) and having-heard
οἱ Λογούβαρδοι καὶ πεισθέντες, ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰς
the Lombards and having-been-persuaded having-taken-up the
φαμιλίας αὐτῶν, ἦλθον εἰς Βενεβενδόν. οἱ δὲ τοῦ
households their came to Benevento those and of-the
κάστρου Βενεβενδοῦ οὐκ εἴασαν αὐτοὺς ἔνδον τοῦ κάστρου
fortress of-Benevento not let them inside the fortress
εἰσελθεῖν, ᾤκησαν δὲ ἔξωθεν τοῦ κάστρου πλησίον τοῦ
to-enter they-dwelt and outside of-the fortress near the
τείχους εἰς τὸν ποταμόν, οἰκοδομήσαντες ἐκεῖσε κάστρον
wall by the river having-built there (a)-fortress
μικρόν, ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὀνομάζεται Τζιβιτανόβα, τουτέστι
small from which also it-is-named Civita-Nova that-is
νεόκαστρον· ὃ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον συνίσταται.
new-fortress which also until the today stands
εἰσήρχοντο δὲ καὶ ἔνδοθεν τοῦ κάστρου καὶ ἐν τῇ
they-went-in and also inside the fortress and into the
ἐκκλησίᾳ, καὶ διὰ μηχανῆς κυριεύσαντες τοὺς οἰκήτορας
church and by (a)-stratagem having-mastered the inhabitants
τοῦ κάστρου Βενεβενδοῦ ἀνεῖλον πάντας καὶ κατέσχον
of-the fortress of-Benevento they-destroyed all and occupied
τὸ κάστρον· ἔσωθεν γὰρ διὰ τῶν ῥάβδων αὐτῶν σπαθία
the fortress inside for through the staves their swords
βαστάζοντες, καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ὑποτρόπον ποιήσαντες
carrying and in the church (a)-turning-round having-made

ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτὸ μάχην, πάντας, ὡς εἴρηται, ἀπέκτειναν. καὶ
on the same fight all as has-been-said they-killed and
ἔκτοτε ἐκστρατεύσαντες πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην ὑπέταξαν
from-then having-marched-out all the land that they-subjected
τοῦ τε θέματος Λογουβαρδίας καὶ Καλαβρίας καὶ ἕως
of-the both theme of-Lombardy and Calabria and as-far-as
Παπίας, ἄνευ τῆς Ὑδροντοῦ καὶ Καλλιπόλεως καὶ τοῦ
Pavia except — Otranto and Gallipoli and —
Ῥουσιάνου καὶ τῆς Νεαπόλεως καὶ τῆς Γαϊτῆς καὶ
Rossano and — Naples and — Gaeta and
Συρεντοῦ καὶ Ἀμάλφης. πρῶτον δὲ κάστρον ὑπῆρχεν
Sorrento and Amalfi first and fortress was
ἀρχαῖον καὶ μέγα ἡ Κάπυα, δευτέρα ἡ Νεάπολις, τρίτη
ancient and great — Capua second — Naples third
ἡ Βενεβενδός, τετάρτη ἡ Γαϊτή, πέμπτη ἡ Ἀμάλφη. τὸ
— Benevento fourth — Gaeta fifth — Amalfi —
δὲ Σαλερινὸν ᾠκίσθη ἐπὶ τοῦ Σικάρδου, ὅτε διεμέρισαν
and Salerno was-settled under — Sicard when divided
οἱ Λογούβαρδοι τὰ πριγκιπάτα. εἰσὶ δὲ μέχρις τῆς
the Lombards the principalities there-are and until the
σήμερον, ἥτις ἐστὶν ἰνδικτιὼν ἑβδόμη, ἔτη ἀπὸ κτίσεως
today which is (the)-indiction seventh years from (the)-creation
κόσμου ,ϛυνζ΄, ἀφ' οὗ ἐμερίσθη ἡ Λογουβαρδία ἔτη σ΄.
of-(the)-world 6457 since — was-divided — Lombardy years 200
ὑπῆρχον δὲ ἀδελφοὶ δύο, ὁ Σίκων καὶ ὁ Σίκαρδος· καὶ
there-were and brothers two — Sico and — Sicard and
ὁ μὲν Σίκων ἐκράτησε τὴν Βενεβενδὸν καὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς
— indeed Sico held — Benevento and the parts —
Βάρεως καὶ τῆς Σιπενδοῦ, ὁ δὲ Σίκαρδος τὸ Σαλερινὸν
of-Bari and — of-Siponto — and Sicard — Salerno
καὶ τὴν Κάπυαν καὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Καλαβρίας. ἡ δὲ
and — Capua and the parts — of-Calabria — and

Νεάπολις ἦν ἀρχαῖον πραιτώριον τῶν κατερχομένων
Naples was (the)-ancient praetorium of-the coming-down
πατρικίων, καὶ ὁ κρατῶν τὴν Νεάπολιν κατεῖχε
patricians and the(-one) holding — Naples possessed
καὶ τὴν Σικελίαν, καὶ ἡνίκα κατέλαβεν ὁ πατρίκιος ἐν
also — Sicily and when arrived the patrician at
Νεαπόλει, ἀπήρχετο ὁ δοὺξ Νεαπόλεως ἐν Σικελίᾳ. ἡ
Naples went-away the duke of-Naples to Sicily —
δὲ Κάπυα ἦν πόλις ὑπερμεγέθης, καὶ ἑάλω ὑπὸ τῶν
and Capua was (a)-city very-large and was-taken by the
Οὐανδήλων ἤτοι τῶν Ἀφρικῶν, καὶ κατέλυσαν αὐτήν.
Vandals that-is the Africans and they-destroyed it
ἐρημοκάστρου δὲ οὔσης ᾤκουν ἐν αὐτῇ Λογούβαρδοι. καὶ
(a)-deserted-fortress and being dwelt in it Lombards and
πάλιν τῶν Ἀφρικῶν ἐπερχομένων κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ᾠκοδόμησεν
again the Africans coming-upon against them built
ὁ ἐπίσκοπος Λανδοῦλφος κάστρον εἰς τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ
the bishop Landulf (a)-fortress at the bridge of-the
ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐπωνόμασεν αὐτὸ Κάπυαν νέαν, τὴν καὶ
river and named it Capua new the(-one) also
νῦν οὖσαν. ἀφ᾽ οὗ δὲ ἐκτίσθη ἡ αὐτὴ Κάπυα εἰσὶν
now being since — and was-built the same Capua there-are
ἔτη ογ΄. ἡ δὲ Νεάπολις καὶ ἡ Ἀμάλφη καὶ ἡ Συρεντὸς
years 73 — and Naples and — Amalfi and — Sorrento
ὑπῆρχον ἀεὶ ὑπὸ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων.
were always under the emperor of-(the)-Romans
Ἰστέον ὅτι μαστρομήλης ἑρμηνεύεται τῇ Ῥωμαίων
(one)-must-know that mastromiles is-interpreted in-the of-(the)-Romans
διαλέκτῳ κατεπάνω τοῦ στρατοῦ.
dialect katepano of-the army

Ἰστέον ὅτι πρὸ τοῦ περᾶσαι τοὺς Βενετίκους καὶ
(one)-must-know that before the to-cross the Venetians and
οἰκῆσαι εἰς τὰ νησία εἰς ἃ νῦν οἰκοῦσιν, ἐκαλοῦντο
to-settle on the islets on which now they-dwell they-were-called
Ἐνετικοί, καὶ κατῴκουν εἰς τὴν ξηρὰν εἰς αὐτὰ τὰ
Enetikoi and dwelt on the dry-land in those the
κάστρα, κάστρον Κόγκορδα, κάστρον Ἰουστινιάνα, κάστρον
fortresses fortress Concordia fortress Iustiniana fortress
τοῦ Νούνου, καὶ ἕτερα πλεῖστα κάστρα.
— of-Nounos and other very-many fortresses

Ἰστέον ὅτι περασάντων τῶν νῦν καλουμένων Βενετίκων,
(one)-must-know that having-crossed those now called Venetians
πρῶτον δὲ Ἐνετικῶν, ἔκτισαν ἐν πρώτοις κάστρον
first and Enetikoi they-built among (the)-first (a)-fortress
ὀχυρόν, ἐν ᾧ καὶ σήμερον καθέζεται ὁ δοὺξ Βενετίας,
strong in which also today sits the duke of-Venice
ἔχον κύκλωθεν θάλασσαν ὡσεὶ μιλίων ἕξ, εἰς ἣν καὶ
having around sea about of-miles six into which also
εἰσέρχονται ποταμοὶ κζ΄. ὑπάρχουσι δὲ καὶ νῆσοι κατ᾽
flow rivers 27 there-are and also islands toward
ἀνατολὰς τοῦ αὐτοῦ. ἔκτισαν δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς νήσοις
(the)-east of-the same they-built and also on the same islands
οἱ νῦν Βενέτικοι καλούμενοι κάστρα, κάστρον Κογράδον,
those now Venetians called fortresses fortress Grado
ἐν ᾧ καὶ μητρόπολις ἔστι μεγάλη, καὶ πολλὰ λείψανα
in which also (a)-metropolis is great and many relics
ἁγίων ἐν ταύτῃ ἀπόκεινται, κάστρον Ῥιβαλενσής, κάστρον
of-saints in it are-laid-up fortress Rivalensis fortress
Λουλιανόν, κάστρον Ἄψανον, κάστρον Ῥωματινά, κάστρον
Loulianon fortress Apsanon fortress Romatina fortress
Λικεντζία, κάστρον Πίνεται, ὅπερ λέγεται Στρόβιλος,
Likentzia fortress Pinetai which is-called Strovilos

κάστρον Βινίολα, κάστρον Βόες, ἐν ᾧ ὑπάρχει ναὸς τοῦ
fortress Viniola fortress Voes in which is (a)-temple of-the
ἁγίου ἀποστόλου Πέτρου, κάστρον Ἠλιτουάλβα, κάστρον
holy apostle Peter fortress Elitoualva fortress
Λιτουμανκέρσες, κάστρον Βρόνιον, κάστρον Μαδαῦκον,
Litoumankerses fortress Vronion fortress Malamocco
κάστρον Ἠβόλα, κάστρον Πριστῆνα, κάστρον Κλουγία,
fortress Evola fortress Pristena fortress Chioggia
κάστρον Βροῦνδον, κάστρον Φοσαῶν, κάστρον Λαυριτῶν.
fortress Vroundon fortress of-Fosaoi fortress of-Lauritai
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ εἰσὶν ἕτεραι νῆσοι ἐν τῇ αὐτῶν χώρᾳ
(one)-must-know that also there-are other islands in the their land
Βενετίας.
of-Venice
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ ἐν τῇ στερεᾷ εἰς τὸ μέρος τῆς
(one)-must-know that also on the mainland in the part —
Ἰταλίας ὑπάρχουσι κάστρα τῶν Βενετίκων, ἅτινά εἰσι
of-Italy there-are fortresses of-the Venetians which are
ταῦτα, κάστρον Κάπρε, κάστρον Νεόκαστρον, κάστρον
these fortress Kapre fortress Neokastron fortress
Φινές, κάστρον Αἴκυλον, κάστρον Ἀειμάνας, ἐμπόριον
Fines fortress Aikylon fortress Aeimanas (a)-market
μέγα Τορτζελῶν, κάστρον Μουράν, κάστρον Ῥίβαντον,
great of-Torcello fortress Murano fortress Rialto
ὃ ἑρμηνεύεται τόπος ὑψηλότατος, ἐν ᾧ καθέζεται ὁ
which is-interpreted place highest in which sits the
δοὺξ Βενετίας, κάστρον Καβερτζέντζης.
duke of-Venice fortress Kavertzentzes
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ ἐμπόρια εἰσὶ καὶ καστέλλια.
(one)-must-know that also markets there-are and castles

Franks fleeing Attila settled the empty islands of Venice. When Pippin later attacked, the Venetians blocked the channel with stakes and held out for six months, saying they would serve the emperor of the Romans. In the end they agreed to a tribute. Their first duke was chosen before Pippin came; his seat later moved to a farther island.

διήγησις πῶς κατῳκίσθη ἡ νῦν καλουμένη Βενετία.
(an)-account how was-settled the now called Venice
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Βενετία τὸ μὲν παλαιὸν ἦν τόπος
(one)-must-know that — Venice in-the indeed old(-days) was (a)-place
ἔρημός τις ἀοίκητος καὶ βαλτώδης, οἱ δὲ νῦν καλούμενοι
deserted some uninhabited and marshy those and now called
Βενέτικοι ὑπῆρχον Φράγγοι ἀπὸ Ἀκουηλεγίας καὶ ἀπὸ
Venetians were Franks from Aquileia and from
τῶν ἑτέρων τόπων τῆς Φραγγίας, καὶ κατῴκουν εἰς
the other places — of-Frankland and dwelt on
τὴν ξηρὰν ἀντικρὺ τῆς Βενετίας. τοῦ δὲ Ἀτίλα τοῦ
the dry-land opposite — Venice — and Attila the
βασιλέως τῶν Ἀβάρων ἐλθόντος καὶ πάσας τὰς Φραγγίας
king of-the Avars having-come and all the Franklands
καταληϊσαμένου καὶ ἀφανίσαντος, ἤρξαντο φεύγειν μὲν
having-plundered and having-destroyed began to-flee indeed
πάντες οἱ Φράγγοι ἀπὸ Ἀκουηλεγίας καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἑτέρων
all the Franks from Aquileia and from the other
τῆς Φραγγίας κάστρων, ἔρχεσθαι δὲ πρὸς τὰς ἀοικήτους
— of-Frankland fortresses to-come and to the uninhabited
νήσους τῆς Βενετίας καὶ ποιεῖν ἐκεῖσε καλύβια διὰ
islands — of-Venice and to-make there huts because-of
τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀτίλα φόβον. αὐτοῦ οὖν τοῦ βασιλέως
the of-the king Attila fear him then the king

Ἀτίλα λῃϊσαμένου πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν τῆς ξηρᾶς καὶ μέχρι
Attila having-plundered all the land of-the dry-land and as-far-as
Ῥώμης καὶ Καλαβρίας ἐλθόντος καὶ τὴν Βενετίαν μακρόθεν
Rome and Calabria having-come and — Venice far-off
καταλιπόντος, ἄδειαν εὑρόντες οἱ προσπεφευγότες ἐν ταῖς
having-left freedom having-found those having-fled to the
νήσοις τῆς Βενετίας, καὶ οἷον τὴν δειλίαν ἀποσεισάμενοι,
islands — of-Venice and as-it-were the cowardice having-shaken-off
ἅπαντες ἐβουλεύσαντο τοῦ κατοικῆσαι ἐκεῖσε· ὅπερ καὶ
all resolved of-the to-settle there which also
ἐποίησαν, κατοικήσαντες ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς σήμερον. μετὰ δὲ
they-did having-settled there until the today after and
τὸ ἀναχωρῆσαι τὸν Ἀτίλαν μετὰ χρόνους πολλοὺς πάλιν
the to-withdraw — Attila after years many again
παρεγένετο Πιπῖνος ὁ ῥήξ, ὃς ἦρχε τότε τῆς τε Παπίας
came Pippin the king who ruled then — both of-Pavia
καὶ ἑτέρων ῥηγάτων· εἶχεν γὰρ οὗτος ὁ Πιπῖνος ἀδελφοὺς
and of-other kingdoms he-had for this — Pippin brothers
τρεῖς, οἵτινες ἦρχον πασῶν τῶν Φραγγιῶν καὶ Σκλαβινιῶν.
three who ruled all the Franklands and Slavinias
τοῦ δὲ ῥηγὸς Πιπίνου ἐλθόντος κατὰ τῶν Βενετίκων
the and king Pippin having-come against the Venetians
μετὰ δυνάμεως καὶ λαοῦ πολλοῦ, παρεκάθισεν διὰ τῆς
with (a)-force and people much he-sat-down by the
ξηρᾶς ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ περάματος τῶν νήσων τῆς Βενετίας,
dry-land on-that-side of-the crossing of-the islands — of-Venice
εἰς τόπον λεγόμενον Ἀειβόλας. οἱ οὖν Βενέτικοι ἰδόντες
at (a)-place called Aeivolas the then Venetians having-seen
τὸν ῥῆγα Πιπῖνον μετὰ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμεως κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
the king Pippin with the his-own force against them
ἐπερχόμενον καὶ μέλλοντα μετὰ τῶν ἵππων ἀποπλεῦσαι
coming and about with the horses to-sail-off

πρὸς τὴν νῆσον τοῦ Μαδαμαύκου (ἔστι γὰρ αὕτη ἡ
to the island — of-Malamocco is for this the
νῆσος πλησίον τῆς ξηρᾶς), βαλόντες κερατάρια ἅπαν τὸ
island near the dry-land having-thrown stakes all the
πέραμα ἐναπέφραξαν. εἰς ἀμηχανίαν οὖν ἐλθὼν ὁ τοῦ
crossing blocked into helplessness then having-come the of-the
ῥηγὸς Πιπίνου λαὸς (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν αὐτοὺς ἀλλαχοῦ
king Pippin people not for was (it)-possible them elsewhere
περᾶσαι) παρεκάθισαν αὐτοῖς διὰ τῆς ξηρᾶς μῆνας ἕξ,
to-cross sat-down against-them by the dry-land months six
πολεμοῦντες καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν μετ' αὐτῶν. καὶ οἱ μὲν
warring by each day with them and the indeed
Βενέτικοι εἰσήρχοντο εἰς τὰ πλοῖα αὐτῶν καὶ ἵσταντο
Venetians went-in into the ships their and stood
ὄπισθεν τῶν παρ' αὐτῶν ῥιφέντων κεραταρίων, ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ
behind the by them thrown stakes the and king
Πιπῖνος ἵστατο μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ. καὶ
Pippin stood with the people his on the shore and
οἱ μὲν Βενέτικοι μετὰ τοξείας καὶ ῥιπταρίων ἐπολέμουν,
the indeed Venetians with archery and javelins warred
μὴ ἐῶντες αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὴν νῆσον διαπερᾶσαι. ἀπορήσας
not allowing them to the island to-cross-over being-at-a-loss
οὖν ὁ ῥὴξ Πιπῖνος εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς Βενετίκους ὅτι ὑπὸ
then the king Pippin said to the Venetians that under
τὴν ἐμὴν χεῖρα καὶ πρόνοιαν γίνεσθε, ἐπειδὴ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμῆς
the my hand and providence come since from the my
χώρας καὶ ἐξουσίας ἐστέ. οἱ δὲ Βενέτικοι ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ
land and authority you-are the and Venetians answered him
ὅτι ἡμεῖς δοῦλοι θέλομεν εἶναι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων
that we servants wish to-be of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans
καὶ οὐχὶ σοῦ. ἐπὶ πολὺ δὲ βιασθέντες οἱ Βενέτικοι
and not of-you for long and having-been-oppressed the Venetians

ἀπὸ τῆς γεγονυίας ὀχλήσεως πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐποιήσαντο
by the having-occurred harassment toward them made
εἰρηνικὰς σπονδὰς πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Πιπῖνον τοῦ παρέχειν
peaceful treaties with the king Pippin of-the to-furnish
αὐτῷ πλεῖστα πάκτα. ἔκτοτε δὲ καθ' ἕκαστον χρόνον
to-him very-many tributes from-then and by each year
ἠλάττωτο τὸ πάκτον, ὅπερ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον
was-diminished the tribute which also until the today
διασώζεται· τελοῦσι γὰρ οἱ Βενέτικοι τῷ κατέχοντι τὸ
is-preserved pay for the Venetians to-the(-one) holding the
ῥηγάτον Ἰταλίας ἤτοι Παπίας διβάρια ἀσίμιν λίτρας λς΄
kingdom of-Italy that-is of-Pavia measures of-silver pounds 36
καθ' ἕκαστον χρόνον. καὶ τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἔπαυσεν ὁ
by each year and in-this the way ceased the
μεταξὺ Φράγγων καὶ Βενετίκων πόλεμος. ὅτε δὲ ἤρξατο
between Franks and Venetians war when and began
ἀποφεύγειν ὁ λαὸς πρὸς Βενετίαν καὶ ὑποσυνάγεσθαι
to-flee the people to Venice and to-gather
ὥστε πολλοὺς γίνεσθαι, ἀνηγόρευσαν ἑαυτοῖς δοῦκα τὸν
so-that many to-become they-proclaimed for-themselves (as)-duke the(-one)
εὐγενείᾳ τῶν ἄλλων διαφέροντα. ἐγεγόνει δὲ ὁ πρῶτος
in-nobility the others surpassing had-become and the first
δοὺξ ἐν αὐτοῖς πρὶν ἢ ἐλθεῖν κατ' αὐτῶν ὁ ῥὴξ Πιπῖνος.
duke among them before — to-come against them the king Pippin
ἦν δὲ τῷ τότε καιρῷ τὸ δουκάτον εἰς τόπον λεγόμενον
was and at-the then time the ducal-seat at (a)-place called
Τζιβιτὰ νόβα, ὅπερ ἑρμηνεύεται νεόκαστρον. διὰ δὲ τὸ
Civita Nova which is-interpreted new-fortress because-of and the
εἶναι τὸ προειρημένον νησίον πλησίον τῆς ξηρᾶς, κοινῇ
to-be the aforesaid islet near the dry-land by-common
βουλῇ μετέθηκαν τὸ δουκάτον εἰς ἕτερον νησίον, ἐν ᾧ
counsel they-moved the ducal-seat to another islet in which

καὶ νῦν ἔστι σήμερον, διὰ τὸ εἶναι μηκόθεν τῆς
also now it-is today because-of the to-be far-off from-the
ξηρᾶς, ὅσον βλέπει τις ἄνδρα ἵππῳ ἐφεζόμενον.
dry-land as-far-as sees one (a)-man on-(a)-horse seated

XXIX · DALMATIA AND ITS NATIONS

Diocletian settled Romani from Rome in Dalmatia and built Aspalathos. Avars from over the Danube took Salona by a ruse, and the Romani fled to the coastal towns. Under Basil the Croats, Serbs, and others were baptized. Basil's fleet saved Ragusa from the Saracens, and he took Bari with Louis. Soldanos, a captive in Capua, turned its princes against Louis; freed, he besieged them, and their envoy died urging them to await imperial help. Soldanos withdrew, and Capua and Benevento became Roman. Dalmatia's towns and islands end the chapter.

περὶ τῆς Δελματίας καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ παρακειμένων ἐθνῶν.
concerning — Dalmatia and the in it neighboring nations
Ὅτι Διοκλητιανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς πάνυ τῆς χώρας Δελματίας
that Diocletian the emperor greatly the land Dalmatia
ἠράσθη, διὸ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ῥώμης λαὸν ἀγαγὼν μετὰ
loved therefore also from — Rome people having-brought with
τὰς φαμιλίας αὐτῶν ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τῆς Δελματίας χώρᾳ
the households their in the same — of-Dalmatia land
τούτους κατεσκήνωσεν· οἳ καὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι προσηγορεύθησαν
them he-settled who also Romani were-called
διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετοικισθῆναι, καὶ ταύτην μέχρι
because-of the from Rome to-have-been-transplanted and this until
τῆς σήμερον τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἐναποφέρονται. οὗτος οὖν ὁ
the today the name they-bear this then the
βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ἀσπαλάθου κάστρον
emperor Diocletian also the — of-Aspalathos fortress

ᾠκοδόμησε, καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ παλάτια ἐδείματο λόγου καὶ
built and in it palaces built word and
γραφῆς ἁπάσης ἐπέκεινα, ὧν καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον
writing all beyond of-which also until the today
τῆς παλαιᾶς εὐδαιμονίας λείψανα φέρονται, κἂν ὁ
of-the ancient prosperity remains survive even-if the
πολὺς χρόνος αὐτὰ κατηνάλωσεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κάστρον
long time them has-consumed but also the fortress
Διόκλεια τὸ νῦν παρὰ τῶν Διοκλητιανῶν κατεχόμενον
Diokleia the(-one) now by the Diocletians held
ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ᾠκοδόμησεν, ὅθεν καὶ
the same emperor Diocletian built whence also
τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν Διοκλητιανοὶ καλεῖσθαι οἱ τῆς ἐκείνης
the name Diocletians to-be-called those of-the that
χώρης ἐναπειλήφασιν. ἡ δὲ καὶ τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥωμάνων
land have-taken the and also of-the same Romani
διακράτησις ἦν μέχρι τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ· οἳ καί
dominion was as-far-as the Danube river who also
ποτε θελήσαντες τὸν ποταμὸν διαπερᾶσαι καὶ καταμαθεῖν
once having-wished the river to-cross and to-find-out
τίνες κατοικοῦσιν ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ, διαπεράσαντες
who dwell beyond-there of-the river having-crossed
εὗρον ἔθνη Σκλαβινικὰ ἄοπλα ὄντα, ἅτινα καὶ Ἄβαροι
found nations Slavonic unarmed being which also Avars
ἐκαλοῦντο. καὶ οὔτε οὗτοι ἤλπιζον ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
were-called and neither these expected beyond-there of-the river
κατοικεῖν τινὰς οὔτε ἐκεῖνοι ἔνθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. διὰ
to-dwell anyone nor those on-this-side of-the river because-of
οὖν τὸ ἀόπλους εὑρεῖν αὐτοὺς τοὺς Ἀβάρους οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι
then the unarmed to-find them the Avars the Romani
καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον ἀπαρασκευάστους καὶ καταπολεμήσαντες
and for war unprepared also having-warred-them-down

ἀνελάβοντο πραΐδαν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν, καὶ ἀνεχώρησαν.
took plunder and captives and withdrew
καὶ ἔκτοτε ποιήσαντες ἀλλάγια δύο οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἀπὸ
and from-then having-made relays two the Romani from
πάσχα ἕως πάσχα τὸν λαὸν αὐτῶν ἐνήλλασσον, ὥστε
Easter to Easter the people their exchanged so-that
τῷ μεγάλῳ καὶ ἁγίῳ σαββάτῳ ἀλλήλοις συναντᾶν, τοὺς
on-the great and holy sabbath with-each-other to-meet those
μὲν ἀποστρεφομένους ἀπὸ τοῦ παραμονίμου, τοὺς δὲ εἰς
indeed returning from the garrison those and to
τὴν τοιαύτην δουλείαν ἀπερχομένους. καὶ γὰρ πλησίον τῆς
the such service going-away and for near the
θαλάσσης ὑπὸ τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον ἔστι τὸ ἐπιλεγόμενον
sea under the same fortress is the(-one) called
Σαλῶνα, μέγεθος ἔχον τὸ ἥμισυ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, ἐν
Salona size having the half of-Constantinople in
ᾧ πάντες οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι συνήγοντο καὶ καθωπλίζοντο, καὶ
which all the Romani were-assembled and were-armed and
προσαπεκίνουν ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε καὶ πρὸς τὴν κλεισοῦραν
set-out from the(-places) there and to the defile
ἀπήρχοντο τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου ὑπάρχουσαν
went-away the(-one) from the same fortress being
μίλια τέσσαρα· ἥτις καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν καλεῖται Κλεῖσα
miles four which also until the now is-called Kleisa
διὰ τὸ συγκλείειν τοὺς διερχομένους ἐκεῖθεν. καὶ ἐκ
because-of the to-shut-in those passing-through there and from
τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀπήρχοντο πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν. τὸ οὖν τοιοῦτον
the there they-went-away to the river the then such
ἀλλάγιον ἐπὶ πολλοῖς γινόμενον χρόνοις, οἱ ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ
relay for many happening years the beyond-there of-the
ποταμοῦ Σκλάβοι, οἱ καὶ Ἄβαροι καλούμενοι, καθ' ἑαυτοὺς
river Slavs those also Avars called by themselves

ἐσκόπησαν λέγοντες ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι, ἐπεὶ ἐπέρασαν
considered saying that these the Romani since they-crossed
καὶ εὗρον πραΐδαν, ἀπὸ τοῦ νῦν καθ' ἡμῶν οὐ παύσονται
and found plunder from the now against us not will-cease
διαπερῶντες· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μηχανησόμεθα κατ' αὐτῶν.
crossing and because-of this we-will-contrive against them
οὕτως οὖν οἱ Σκλάβοι οἱ Ἄβαροι βουλευσάμενοι, καὶ
thus then the Slavs the Avars having-taken-counsel and
διαπερασάντων ποτὲ τῶν Ῥωμάνων ποιήσαντες οὗτοι
having-crossed once the Romani having-made these
ἐγκρύμματα καὶ πολεμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. καὶ
ambushes and having-warred conquered them and
ἀναλαβόμενοι τά τε ὅπλα αὐτῶν καὶ τὰ φλάμουλα καὶ
having-taken-up the both arms their and the pennons and
τὰ λοιπὰ πολεμικὰ σημεῖα, διαπεράσαντες οἱ προειρημένοι
the other war standards having-crossed the aforesaid
Σκλάβοι τὸν ποταμὸν ἦλθον εἰς τὴν κλεισοῦραν. οὓς
Slavs the river came to the defile whom
καὶ ἰδόντες οἱ ἐκεῖσε ὄντες Ῥωμᾶνοι, θεασάμενοι δὲ τὰ
also having-seen the there being Romani having-beheld and the
φλάμουλα καὶ τὴν ἐξόπλισιν τῶν ὁμοφύλων αὐτῶν, τοὺς
pennons and the equipment of-the fellow-tribesmen their the
αὐτῶν ὁμοφύλους εἶναι νομίσαντες, ἡνίκα κατέλαβον οἱ
their fellow-tribesmen to-be having-supposed when arrived the
Σκλάβοι οἱ προρρηθέντες εἰς τὴν κλεισοῦραν, παρεχώρησαν
Slavs the aforesaid at the defile let
αὐτοῖς διελθεῖν. διελθόντες δὲ εὐθὺς τοὺς Ῥωμάνους
them to-pass-through having-passed-through and at-once the Romani
οὗτοι ἐξήλασαν καὶ τὴν Σαλῶνα τὸ προειρημένον κάστρον
these drove-out and — Salona the aforesaid fortress
ἐκράτησαν. καὶ κατοικήσαντες ἐκεῖσε ἔκτοτε κατὰ μικρὸν
took and having-settled there from-then by little

ἀρξάμενοι πραιδεύειν τοὺς Ῥωμάνους τοὺς εἰς τοὺς κάμπους
having-begun to-plunder the Romani those in the plains
καὶ εἰς τὰ ὑψηλότερα μέρη κατοικοῦντας ἠφάνισαν, καὶ
and in the higher parts dwelling destroyed(-them) and
τοὺς τόπους αὐτῶν κατεκράτησαν. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι
the places their took-over the and remaining Romani
εἰς τὰ τῆς παραλίας κάστρα διεσώθησαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ
into the of-the coast fortresses escaped and until the
νῦν κρατοῦσιν αὐτά· ἅτινά εἰσι τάδε κάστρα, τὸ Ῥαοῦσιν,
now hold them which are these fortresses — Ragusa
τὸ Ἀσπάλαθον, τὸ Τετραγγούριν, τὰ Διάδωρα, ἡ Ἄρβη,
— Aspalathos — Tetrangourin — Diadora — Arbe
ἡ Βέκλα καὶ τὰ Ὄψαρα· ὧν τινῶν καὶ οἰκήτορες
— Vekla and — Opsara of-which some also inhabitants
μέχρι τοῦ νῦν οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι καλοῦνται.
until the now the Romani are-called
Ὅτι ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων,
that from the reign of-Heraclius the emperor of-(the)-Romans
καθ' ὃν μέλλει τρόπον ῥηθήσεσθαι ἐν τῇ τῶν Χρωβάτων
in which is-about way to-be-told in the of-the Croats
καὶ Σέρβλων συγγραφῇ, πᾶσα ἡ Δελματία καὶ τὰ
and Serbs account all — Dalmatia and the
περὶ αὐτὴν ἔθνη, οἷον Χρωβάτοι Σέρβλοι Ζαχλοῦμοι
around it nations such-as Croats Serbs Zachlumi
Τερβουνιῶται Καναλεῖται Διοκλητιανοὶ καὶ Ἀρεντανοὶ καὶ
Terbouniotes Kanalites Diocletians and Arentanoi and
οἱ Παγανοὶ προσαγορευόμενοι, τῆς δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
the Pagani called of-the and of-the Romans
βασιλείας διὰ τὴν τῶν τότε κρατούντων νωθρότητα καὶ
empire because-of the of-the then ruling sluggishness and
ἀφέλειαν εἰς τὸ μηδὲν παράπαν μικροῦ δεῖν ἐναπονευσάσης,
simplicity to the nothing at-all by-a-little to-lack having-declined

καὶ μάλιστα δὲ ἐπὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ ἐξ Ἀμορίου τοῦ
and especially too under Michael the from Amorion the
τραυλοῦ, οἱ τὰ τῆς Δελματίας κάστρα οἰκοῦντες γεγόνασιν
stammerer those the — of-Dalmatia fortresses inhabiting became
αὐτοκέφαλοι, μήτε τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων μήτε ἑτέρῳ
independent neither to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans nor to-other
τινὶ ὑποκείμενοι· ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖσε ἔθνη, οἵ τε
anyone subject but also the there nations the both
Χρωβάτοι καὶ Σέρβλοι καὶ Ζαχλοῦμοι καὶ Τερβουνιῶται
Croats and Serbs and Zachlumi and Terbouniotes
καὶ Καναλεῖται καὶ Διοκλητιανοὶ καὶ οἱ Παγανοί, τῆς τῶν
and Kanalites and Diocletians and the Pagani of-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας ἀφηνιάσαντες γεγόνασιν ἰδιόρυθμοι
Romans empire having-thrown-off-the-bridle became self-governing
καὶ αὐτοκέφαλοι, τινὶ μὴ ὑποκείμενοι. ἄρχοντας δέ, ὥς
and independent to-anyone not subject princes and as
φασι, ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη μὴ ἔχει, πλὴν ζουπάνους γέροντας,
they-say these the nations not have except zupans elders
καθὼς καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ Σκλαβίνιαι ἔχουσι τύπον. ἀλλὰ
as also the other Slavinias have (the)-pattern but
οἱ πλείονες τῶν τοιούτων Σκλάβων οὐδὲ ἐβαπτίζοντο,
the greater-part of-the such Slavs not-even were-baptized
ἀλλὰ μέχρι πολλοῦ ἔμενον ἀβάπτιστοι. ἐπὶ δὲ Βασιλείου
but until much remained unbaptized under and Basil
τοῦ φιλοχρίστου βασιλέως ἀπέστειλαν ἀποκρισιαρίους
the Christ-loving emperor they-sent envoys
ἐξαιτούμενοι καὶ παρακαλοῦντες αὐτὸν τοὺς ἐξ αὐτῶν
requesting and begging him those of them
ἀβαπτίστους βαπτισθῆναι καὶ εἶναι ὥστε ἐξ ἀρχῆς
unbaptized to-be-baptized and to-be as from (the)-beginning
ὑποτεταγμένους τῇ βασιλείᾳ τῶν Ῥωμαίων· ὧν τινῶν
subject to-the empire of-the Romans of-whom some

εἰσακούσας ὁ μακάριος ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἀοίδιμος βασιλεὺς
having-heard the blessed that and celebrated emperor
ἐξαπέστειλε βασιλικὸν μετὰ καὶ ἱερέων, καὶ ἐβάπτισεν
sent (an)-imperial-agent with also priests and baptized
αὐτοὺς πάντας τοὺς τῶν προρρηθέντων ἐθνῶν ἀβαπτίστους
them all those of-the aforesaid nations unbaptized
τυγχάνοντας· καὶ μετὰ τὸ βαπτισθῆναι αὐτούς, τότε
happening-to-be and after the to-be-baptized them then
προεβάλετο εἰς αὐτοὺς ἄρχοντας οὓς ἐκεῖνοι ἤθελον καὶ
he-appointed over them princes whom they wished and
προέκρινον, ἀπὸ γενεᾶς ἧς ἐκεῖνοι ἠγάπων καὶ ἔστεργον.
preferred from (the)-family which they loved and cherished
καὶ ἔκτοτε μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν γενεῶν γίνονται
and from-then until the now from the same families become
ἄρχοντες εἰς αὐτούς, καὶ οὐκ ἐξ ἑτέρας. οἱ δὲ Παγανοί,
princes over them and not from another the and Pagani
οἱ καὶ τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ Ἀρεντανοὶ καλούμενοι,
those also in-the of-(the)-Romans dialect Arentanoi called
εἰς δυσβάτους τόπους καὶ κρημνώδεις κατελείφθησαν
in hard-of-access places and precipitous were-left
ἀβάπτιστοι· καὶ γὰρ Παγανοὶ κατὰ τὴν τῶν Σκλάβων
unbaptized and for Pagani according-to the of-the Slavs
γλῶσσαν ἀβάπτιστοι ἑρμηνεύονται. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ
tongue unbaptized are-interpreted after and this also
αὐτοὶ ἀποστείλαντες εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν ἀοίδιμον βασιλέα
they having-sent to the same celebrated emperor
ἐξῃτήσαντο βαπτισθῆναι καὶ αὐτοί· καὶ ἀποστείλας
asked to-be-baptized also they and having-sent
ἐβάπτισε καὶ αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ δέ, ὡς προέφημεν, διὰ τὴν
he-baptized also them since and as we-said-before because-of the
τῶν κρατούντων νωθρότητα καὶ ἀφέλειαν εἰς κατόπιν τὰ
of-the ruling sluggishness and simplicity to backward the

τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἦλθον πράγματα, καὶ οἱ τὰ τῆς Δελματίας
of-the Romans came affairs also those the — of-Dalmatia
κάστρα οἰκοῦντες γεγόνασιν αὐτοκέφαλοι, μήτε τῷ βασιλεῖ
fortresses inhabiting became independent neither to-the emperor
Ῥωμαίων μήτε ἄλλῳ τινὶ ὑποκείμενοι. μετὰ δὲ χρόνον
of-(the)-Romans nor to-other anyone subject after and time
τινὰ ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Βασιλείου τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ
some under the reign of-Basil the celebrated and
ἀειμνήστου βασιλέως ἐλθόντων Σαρακηνῶν ἀπὸ Ἀφρικῆς,
ever-memorable emperor having-come Saracens from Africa
τοῦ τε Σολδανοῦ καὶ τοῦ Σάβα καὶ τοῦ Κλαφοῦς, μετὰ
— both Soldanos and — Sabas and — Klaphous with
καραβίων λς΄, κατέλαβον ἐν Δελματίᾳ καὶ ἐπόρθησαν
ships 36 they-reached to Dalmatia and sacked
τὸ κάστρον τὰ Βούτοβα, καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὴν Ῥῶσσαν
the fortress — Boutova and the fortress — Rhossa
καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὰ Δεκάτερα τὸ κάτω. καὶ ἦλθον καὶ
and the fortress — Dekatera the lower and came also
εἰς τὸ κάστρον Ῥαουσίου, καὶ παρεκάθισαν αὐτῷ μῆνας
to the fortress of-Ragusa and sat-down-before it months
δεκαπέντε. τότε βιασθέντες οἱ Ῥαουσαῖοι ἐδηλοποίησαν
fifteen then being-hard-pressed the Ragusans made-known
Βασιλείῳ τῷ ἀειμνήστῳ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, λέγοντες
to-Basil the ever-memorable emperor of-(the)-Romans saying
αὐτῷ οὕτως "ἐλέησον ἡμᾶς, καὶ μὴ ἐάσῃς ἀπολέσθαι
to-him thus have-mercy-on us and not let(-us) to-perish
παρὰ τῶν ἀρνητῶν τοῦ Χριστοῦ." ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
by the deniers — of-Christ the and emperor
σπλαγχνισθεὶς ἀπέστειλε τὸν πατρίκιον Νικήτα
having-been-moved-with-compassion sent the patrician Niketas
δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην Ὠορύφας,
drungarius of-the fleet whose the surname (was)-Ooryphas

μετὰ χελανδίων ἑκατόν. οἱ δὲ Σαρακηνοὶ μαθόντες τὴν
with warships (a)-hundred the and Saracens having-learned the
μετὰ τοῦ στόλου ἄφιξιν τοῦ πατρικίου δρουγγαρίου τοῦ
with the fleet arrival of-the patrician drungarius of-the
πλωΐμου ἔφυγον καταλιπόντες τὸ κάστρον Ῥαουσίου, καὶ
fleet fled having-left the fortress of-Ragusa and
ἀντεπέρασαν ἐν Λογουβαρδίᾳ, καὶ πολιορκήσαντες τὸ
crossed-over to Lombardy and having-besieged the
κάστρον Βάρεως τοῦτο ἐπόρθησαν. τότε ὁ Σολδανὸς
fortress of-Bari it sacked then — Soldanos
κτίσας ἐκεῖσε παλάτια κατεκράτησε πᾶσαν Λογουβαρδίαν
having-built there palaces held all Lombardy
μέχρι Ῥώμης ἔτη τεσσαράκοντα. ὁ οὖν βασιλεὺς διὰ τὴν
as-far-as Rome years forty the then emperor because-of the
αἰτίαν ταύτην ἀπέστειλε πρός τε τὸν Λοδόϊχον τὸν ῥῆγα
cause this sent to both — Louis the king
Φραγγίας καὶ τὸν πάπα Ῥώμης, ἵνα συνεπαμύνηται τῷ
of-Frankland and the pope of-Rome so-that he-might-help-together the
παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι στρατῷ. οἱ δὲ ὑπείξαντες
by the emperor sent army they and having-yielded
τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως αἰτήσει, ὅ τε ῥὴξ καὶ ὁ πάπας, ἦλθον
to-the of-the emperor request the both king and the pope came
ἀμφότεροι μετὰ δυνάμεως πολλῆς, καὶ ἑνωθέντες τῷ
both with force much and having-been-united to-the
παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι στρατῷ, ἅμα τῷ
by the emperor sent army together-with the
Χρωβάτῳ, τῷ Σέρβλῳ καὶ Ζαχλούμῳ καὶ Τερβουνιώταις
Croat the Serb and Zachlumian and Terbouniotes
καὶ Καναλείταις καὶ Ῥαουσίοις, μετὰ πάντων τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς
and Kanalites and Ragusans with all the from —
Δελματίας κάστρων (οὗτοι γὰρ πάντες βασιλικῇ κελεύσει
Dalmatia fortresses these for all by-imperial command

παρῆσαν), καὶ περασάντων ἐν Λογουβαρδίᾳ ἐκάθησαν τὸ
were-present and having-crossed to Lombardy they-besieged the
κάστρον Βάρεως καὶ ἐπόρθησαν αὐτό.
fortress of-Bari and sacked it
Ἰστέον ὅτι τοὺς Χρωβάτους καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς
(one)-must-know that the Croats and the other
Σκλαβάρχοντας οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Ῥαουσίου οἰκήτορες μετὰ
Slav-chiefs the of-the fortress of-Ragusa inhabitants with
τῶν ἰδίων αὐτῶν καραβίων διεπέρασαν ἐν Λογουβαρδίᾳ.
the own their ships carried-across to Lombardy
καὶ τὸ μὲν κάστρον Βάρεως καὶ τὴν χώραν καὶ τὴν
and the indeed fortress of-Bari and the land and the
αἰχμαλωσίαν πᾶσαν ἀνελάβετο ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων· τὸν
captives all took the emperor of-(the)-Romans —
δὲ Σολδανὸν καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς Σαρακηνοὺς ἀνελάβετο
and Soldanos and the other Saracens took
Λοδοΐχος ὁ ῥὴξ Φραγγίας, καὶ ἀπήγαγεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ
Louis the king of-Frankland and led them-away to the
κάστρῳ Καπύης καὶ ἐν τῷ κάστρῳ Βενεβενδοῦ. καὶ οὐδεὶς
fortress of-Capua and to the fortress of-Benevento and no-one
αὐτὸν εἶδεν γελῶντα. εἶπεν δὲ ὁ ῥὴξ ὅτι εἴ τίς μοι τὸν
him saw laughing said and the king that if anyone to-me —
Σολδανὸν μετὰ ἀληθείας ἀναγγείλῃ ἢ ὑποδείξῃ γελῶντα,
Soldanos with truth reports or shows laughing
δώσω αὐτῷ χρήματα πολλά. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο εἶδέ τις
I-will-give to-him monies many and after this saw someone
αὐτὸν γελῶντα, καὶ τῷ ῥηγὶ Λοδοΐχῳ ἀπήγγειλεν. ὁ
him laughing and to-the king Louis reported he
δὲ προσκαλεσάμενος τὸν Σολδανὸν ἠρώτησεν αὐτὸν ποίῳ
and having-summoned — Soldanos asked him in-what
τρόπῳ ἐγέλασεν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν "ἅμαξαν εἶδον καὶ τοὺς ἐν
way he-laughed he and said (a)-wagon I-saw and the on

αὐτῇ τροχοὺς κυλιομένους, καὶ τούτου χάριν ἐγέλασα,
it wheels rolling and of-this for-the-sake I-laughed
ὅτι καὶ ἐγώ ποτε κεφαλὴ ἤμην καὶ ἀρτίως εἰμὶ ὑποκάτω
that also I once head was and now I-am below
πάντων, καὶ πάλιν δύναται ὁ θεὸς ὑψῶσαί με." καὶ ἀπὸ
all and again is-able — God to-raise me and from
τότε προσεκαλεῖτο αὐτὸν ὁ Λοδοΐχος εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν
then summoned him — Louis to the table
αὐτοῦ καὶ συνήσθιεν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες τῆς Καπύης
his and ate-with him the and princes — of-Capua
καὶ Βενεβενδοῦ ἤρχοντο πρὸς τὸν Σολδανὸν ἐρωτῶντες
and Benevento came to — Soldanos asking
αὐτὸν περὶ ἰατρειῶν καὶ θεραπείας ἀλόγων καὶ λοιπῶν
him about cures and treatment of-beasts and other
ὑποθέσεων ὡς γέροντα καὶ πεπειραμένον. ὁ δὲ Σολδανὸς
matters as (an)-old-man and experienced — and Soldanos
πανοῦργος ὢν καὶ σκολιὸς εἶπε πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι πρᾶγμα
crafty being and crooked said to them that (a)-thing
θέλω εἰπεῖν πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ δέδοικα τοῦ μὴ παρ' ὑμῶν
I-wish to-say to you and I-fear of-the not by you
κατάδηλον γενέσθαι πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα, καὶ ἀπολέσω τὴν
evident to-become to the king and I-lose the
ἐμαυτοῦ ζωήν. οἱ δὲ ὤμοσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ θαρρήσας
my-own life they and swore to-him and having-taken-courage
εἶπε πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι ὁ ῥὴξ ἐξορίσαι θέλει πάντας ὑμᾶς
he-said to them that the king to-exile wishes all you
ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Φραγγίᾳ, καὶ ἐὰν ἀπιστῆτε, ἐκδέξασθε
into the great Frankland and if you-disbelieve wait
μικρόν, κἀγὼ πληροφορῶ ὑμᾶς. καὶ ἀπελθὼν εἶπε πρὸς
(a)-little and-I convince you and having-gone-away he-said to
τὸν Λοδοΐχον ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες τοῦ τόπου κακοί εἰσι, καὶ
— Louis that the princes of-the place wicked are and

σὺ οὐ δύνασαι κυριεῦσαι τὴν χώραν ταύτην, ἐὰν μὴ
you not are-able to-become-master-of the land this if not
ἀφανίσῃς τοὺς δυνατοὺς τοὺς ἀντιπίπτοντάς σοι· ἀλλὰ
you-destroy the powerful those opposing you but
δέσμευσον τοὺς πρώτους τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ ἀπόστειλον
bind the first-men of-the fortress and send
αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν χώραν σου, καὶ τότε ὡς θέλεις οἱ
them to the land your and then as you-wish the
λοιποὶ ὑποταγήσονταί σοι. καὶ ὅτε παρέπεισεν αὐτὸν ἵνα
others will-be-subjected to-you and when he-had-persuaded him that
πληρώσῃ τὴν βουλὴν αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὥρισε γενέσθαι ἁλύσεις
he-fulfill the counsel his and he-ordered to-be-made chains
σιδηρᾶς εἰς τὸ ἐξορίσαι αὐτούς, ἀπῆλθεν ὁ Σολδανὸς καὶ
iron for the to-exile them went-away — Soldanos and
εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅτι ἀκμὴν οὐ πιστεύετε ὅτι ὁ
said to the princes that still not you-believe that the
ῥὴξ ἐξορίστους ὑμᾶς ποιεῖ καὶ παντελῶς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
king exiles you makes and utterly from men
γίνεται τὸ μνημόσυνον ὑμῶν· ὅμως εἰ θέλετε τελείως
becomes the memory your nevertheless if you-wish completely
πληροφορηθῆναι, ἀπελθόντες θεάσασθε τί ἄρα ἐργάζονται
to-be-convinced having-gone-away behold what then are-making
πάντες οἱ χαλκεῖς τῇ προστάξει τοῦ ῥηγός· καὶ εἰ οὐχ
all the smiths at-the command of-the king and if not
εὕρητε αὐτοὺς ἐργαζομένους τὰς ἁλύσεις καὶ τὰ δεσμά,
you-find them making the chains and the fetters
γινώσκετε ὅτι πάντα τὰ παρ' ἐμοῦ λαλούμενα ὑμῖν
know that all the(-things) by me spoken to-you
ἐστὶ ψευδῆ· εἰ δὲ ἀληθεύω, φροντίσατε τὴν σωτηρίαν ὑμῶν
are false if and I-speak-truth take-thought-for the safety your
καὶ ἐμὲ εὐεργετήσατε τὸν τὰ χρηστὰ καὶ σωτήρια
and me reward the(-one) the(-things) good and saving

ὑμῖν βουλευσάμενον. οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες πεισθέντες τῷ
for-you having-counseled the and princes having-been-persuaded by-the
τοῦ Σολδανοῦ λόγῳ, θεασάμενοι δὲ καὶ τὰς ἁλύσεις καὶ τὰ
— of-Soldanos word having-beheld and also the chains and the
δεσμά, τελείαν πληροφορίαν ἔλαβον, καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐμελέτων
fetters complete conviction received and from-then planned
τὴν ἀπώλειαν τοῦ ῥηγὸς Λοδοΐχου. ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ ταῦτα
the destruction of-the king Louis the and king these(-things)
πάντα ἀγνοῶν ἐξῆλθε πρὸς τὸ κυνηγῆσαι· ὑποστρέψαντος
all not-knowing went-out for the to-hunt (him)-having-returned
δὲ οἱ τούτου ἄρχοντες ἐκράτησαν τὸ κάστρον, μὴ ἐάσαντες
and the his princes held the fortress not having-allowed
αὐτὸν εἰσελθεῖν. ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ Λοδόϊχος τὴν τῶν ἀρχόντων
him to-enter the and king Louis the of-the princes
ἔνστασιν θεασάμενος εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψεν. οἱ
resistance having-beheld to the own land returned the
δὲ ἄρχοντες εἶπον πρὸς τὸν Σολδανὸν "τί ἄρα θέλεις
and princes said to — Soldanos what then do-you-wish
ἡμᾶς ποιῆσαί σοι περὶ τῆς γενομένης εἰς ἡμᾶς παρὰ
us to-do for-you concerning the having-come to us from
σοῦ σωτηρίας"; ὁ δὲ ᾐτήσατο ἐν τῇ ἰδίᾳ χώρᾳ ἀπολῦσαι
you safety he and asked in the own land to-release
αὐτόν, καὶ τούτου γενομένου ἀπῆλθεν ἐν Ἀφρικῇ εἰς τὴν
him and this having-happened he-went-away to Africa to the
ἰδίαν αὐτοῦ χώραν. μὴ ἐπιλαθόμενος δὲ τῆς ἀρχαίας αὐτοῦ
own his land not having-forgotten and the ancient his
κακίας ἐστρατοπέδευσε, καὶ ἦλθε μετὰ δυνάμεως ἐν Καπύῃ
wickedness he-encamped and came with (a)-force to Capua
καὶ ἐν Βενεβενδῷ πρὸς τὸ πολιορκῆσαι καὶ ὑποτάξαι
and to Benevento for the to-besiege and to-subject
αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα κάστρα κρατοῦντες ἀπέστειλαν
them those and the such fortresses holding sent

πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Λοδοΐιχον ἐν Φραγγίᾳ, ἵνα
envoys to the king Louis in Frankland that
ἐλθὼν συνεπαμύνηται αὐτοῖς κατὰ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ καὶ τῶν
having-come he-might-help-together them against — Soldanos and the
Ἀφρικῶν. ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ Λοδοΐιχος ταῦτα μαθών, καὶ ὅνπερ
Africans the and king Louis these(-things) having-learned and in-which
ἐποίησε τρόπον ὁ Σολδανὸς πείσας καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας
he-did way — Soldanos having-persuaded also the princes
ὅτι δεσμίους μέλλει ὑμᾶς ὁ ῥὴξ ἐν Φραγγίᾳ ἐξορίσαι,
that in-bonds is-about you the king into Frankland to-exile
ἀντεδήλωσεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι καὶ ἅπερ ἐποίησα πρότερον
sent-word-back to-them that also (the-things)-which I-did before
εἰς ὑμᾶς μεταμεμέλημαι, ὅτι ἔσωσα ὑμᾶς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν
for you I-repent that I-saved you from the enemies
ὑμῶν, καὶ ἀνταπεδώκατέ μοι πονηρὰ ἀντὶ ἀγαθῶν·
your and you-repaid me evil-things in-return-for good-things
καὶ καθὼς ἐδιώχθην παρ᾽ ὑμῶν, ἀρτίως χαίρω ἐπὶ τῇ
and as I-was-driven-out by you now I-rejoice at the
ἀπωλείᾳ ὑμῶν. τότε ἀπορήσαντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ῥηγὸς Λοδοΐχου
destruction your then being-at-a-loss from the king Louis
ἀπέστειλαν πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων τοῦ
they-sent envoys to the emperor of-(the)-Romans of-the
δοῦναι αὐτοῖς βοήθειαν καὶ λυτρώσασθαι τοῦ τοιούτου
to-give to-them help and to-ransom(-them) from-the such
κινδύνου· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ὑπέσχετο βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς. τοῦ δὲ
danger the and emperor promised to-help them the and
ἀποκρισιαρίου ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως ὑποστρέψαντος καὶ ἀγαθὰς
envoy from the city having-returned and good
ἀγγελίας τοῖς πέμψασιν αὐτὸν ἀποκομίζοντος περὶ τῆς
tidings to-those having-sent him bringing-back about the
τοῦ βασιλέως συμμαχίας, μήπω τούτου ἀποσωθέντος ἐν
of-the emperor alliance not-yet him having-come-safe into

τῷ κάστρῳ, ἐκρατήθη παρὰ τῶν βιγλῶν τοῦ Σολδανοῦ·
the fortress was-seized by the watches — of-Soldanos
προεγνώκει γὰρ ὁ Σολδανὸς τὴν γεγονυῖαν ἀποστολὴν
had-foreknown for — Soldanos the having-happened mission
πρὸς ἱκεσίαν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων, καὶ ἐπύκτευσε
for supplication of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans and he-strove
τοῦ τὸν ἀποκρισιάριον αὐτῶν κρατῆσαι, ὅπερ καὶ γέγονε.
of-the the envoy their to-seize which also happened
κρατηθέντος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμαθε τὴν ἀποτελεσθεῖσαν παρ᾽
having-been-seized and him he-learned the accomplished by
αὐτοῦ δουλείαν, καὶ ὅτι δι᾽ ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν καταλαμβάνει
him service and that within few days arrives
ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων βοήθεια. ὁ δὲ Σολδανὸς
the of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans help — and Soldanos
εἶπε τῷ αὐτῷ ἀποκρισιαρίῳ ὅτι εἰ ποιήσεις ὅπερ σοι
said to-the same envoy that if you-do what to-you
εἴπω, ἐλευθερίας καὶ δωρεῶν μεγίστων ἀξιωθήσῃ·
I-say of-freedom and of-gifts very-great you-will-be-deemed-worthy
εἰ δὲ μή, πονηρῷ θανάτῳ τὴν ζωὴν ἀπολέσεις. τοῦ δὲ
if and not by-(an)-evil death the life you-will-lose him and
ὑποσχομένου ἐκπληρῶσαι τὰ κελευόμενα αὐτῷ, εἶπεν
having-promised to-fulfill the(-things) commanded him said
ὁ Σολδανὸς πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι κελεύω στῆναί σε πλησίον
— Soldanos to him that I-order to-stand you near
τοῦ τείχους, καὶ προσκαλέσασθαι τοὺς ἀποστείλαντάς σε,
the wall and to-call-forth those having-sent you
καὶ εἰπεῖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς "ἐγὼ μὲν τὴν δουλείαν ἣν
and to-say to them I indeed the service which
ὤφειλον ποιῆσαι πεποίηκα, καὶ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
I-ought to-do have-done and the emperor of-(the)-Romans
περὶ ὑμῶν ἐδυσώπησα· πλὴν οὖν γινώσκετε ὅτι εἰς κενὸν
concerning you I-entreated however then know that in vain

ἐγένετο ἡ ὁδός μου, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς παμφαῦλον ἔθηκε
was the journey my and the emperor as-worthless set
τὴν παρ᾽ ὑμῶν γεγονυῖαν ἱκεσίαν, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως
the by you having-been-made supplication and from the emperor
μὴ ἐλπίζετε βοήθειαν.” τοῦ δὲ ὑποσχομένου ταῦτα μετὰ
not expect help him and having-promised these(-things) with
χαρᾶς ἐκπληρῶσαι, ἤγαγον αὐτὸν πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου,
joy to-fulfill they-led him near the fortress
καὶ ἐν οὐδενὶ θέμενος τὰ παρὰ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ
and at nothing having-set the(-things) by — Soldanos
ῥηθέντα πάντα, μήτε τὰς ἀπειλὰς αὐτοῦ φοβηθεὶς μήτε
spoken all neither the threats his having-feared nor
ταῖς ὑποσχέσεσιν αὐτοῦ πεισθείς, ἀλλὰ τὸν τοῦ
by-the promises his having-been-persuaded but the —
θεοῦ φόβον ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτοῦ θέμενος διελογίσατο ἐν
of-God fear in the heart his having-set he-reasoned in
ἑαυτῷ ὅτι συμφέρον ἐστὶν ἐμὲ μόνον ἀποθανεῖν καὶ μὴ
himself that advantageous it-is me alone to-die and not
τοσαύτας ψυχὰς διὰ λόγου παγιδεῦσαι καὶ προδοῦναι εἰς
so-many souls by (a)-word to-ensnare and to-betray to
θάνατον. καὶ δὴ πλησίον τοῦ τείχους αὐτοῦ γενομένου
death and indeed near the wall him having-come
καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἄρχοντας προσκαλεσαμένου, εἶπε πρὸς
and all the princes having-called-forth he-said to
τοὺς ἐξουσιάσαντας τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου “ἐγὼ μέν,
those having-authority-over the such fortress I indeed
κύριοί μου, τὴν διακονίαν μου ἐξεπλήρωσα, καὶ τὰ
lords my the ministry my have-fulfilled and the(-things)
παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων δηλωθέντα ὑμῖν ἀπαγγελῶ·
by the emperor of-(the)-Romans made-known to-you I-will-report
πλὴν ὁρκίζω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ εἰς τὴν
however I-adjure you by the son — of-God and by the

σωτηρίαν παντὸς τοῦ κάστρου καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν ψυχῶν
safety of-all the fortress and of-the-very the souls
ὑμῶν, ἵνα ἀντὶ ἐμοῦ εὐεργετήσητε τὰ τέκνα μου καὶ
your that in-place-of me you-benefit the children my and
τὴν ἐλπίζουσαν ἀπολαβεῖν με σύμβιόν μου· ὡς γὰρ
the(-one) hoping to-receive-back me wife my as for
ποιήσητε μετὰ αὐτῶν, παρὰ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ μισθαποδότου
you-do with them from the just and rewarder
ἀγαθοῦ θεοῦ, μέλλοντος κρῖναι ζῶντας καὶ νεκρούς, τὸν
good God being-about to-judge (the)-living and (the)-dead the
μισθὸν ἀπολήψεσθε." καὶ ταῦτα εἰπὼν παρεθάρρυνεν
reward you-will-receive and these(-things) having-said he-encouraged
αὐτοὺς λέγων "ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ ἀπολοῦμαι
them saying I indeed by — Soldanos shall-perish
καὶ περὶ τὴν ζωὴν κινδυνεύω· ὑμεῖς δὲ στῆτε ἑδραῖοι
and for the life am-in-danger you and stand firm
καὶ μὴ δειλανδρήσητε, ἀλλ' ὑπομείνατε μικρόν, καὶ εἰς
and not play-the-coward but endure (a)-little and in
ὀλίγον ἡμερῶν φθάσει ἡ ἀποσταλεῖσα ὑμῖν σωτηρία παρὰ
(a)-few of-days will-arrive the sent to-you deliverance from
τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων." ταῦτα δὲ αὐτοῦ εἰπόντος, οἱ
the emperor of-(the)-Romans these(-things) and him having-said the
κατέχοντες αὐτὸν οἰκεῖοι τοῦ Σολδανοῦ παρὰ προσδοκίαν
holding him servants — of-Soldanos beyond expectation
τὰ παρ' αὐτοῦ λαληθέντα ἀκούσαντες ἔβρυξαν ἐπ'
the(-things) by him spoken having-heard gnashed at
αὐτὸν τοὺς ὀδόντας, καὶ εἷς τοῦ ἑτέρου προέτρεχον,
him the teeth and one than-the other ran-ahead
τίς ἄρα τῆς αὐτοῦ σφαγῆς γένειεν αὐτουργός. τοῦ δὲ
who then of-the his slaughter might-become (the)-perpetrator him and
παρ' αὐτῶν ἀναιρεθέντος, πτοηθεὶς ὁ Σολδανὸς τὴν
by them having-been-slain having-been-terrified — Soldanos the

τοῦ βασιλέως ἐρχομένην δυναστείαν ὑπέστρεψεν εἰς τὴν
of-the emperor coming power returned to the
ἰδίαν χώραν. καὶ ἔκτοτε καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν καὶ οἱ τῆς
own land and from-then and until the now both those —
Καπύης καὶ οἱ τῆς Βενεβενδοῦ εἰσὶν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
of-Capua and those — of-Benevento are under the authority
τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰς τελείαν δούλωσιν καὶ ὑποταγὴν διὰ
of-the Romans in complete subjection and obedience because-of
τὴν εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένην μεγάλην ταύτην εὐεργεσίαν.
the to them having-come great this benefaction
Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ῥαουσίου οὐ καλεῖται Ῥαούση
that the fortress — of-Ragusa not is-called Raouse
τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἐπάνω τῶν κρημνῶν
in-the of-(the)-Romans dialect but since upon the cliffs
ἵσταται, λέγεται δὲ Ῥωμαϊστὶ ὁ κρημνὸς λαῦ, ἐκλήθησαν
it-stands is-called and in-Latin the cliff lau they-were-called
ἐκ τούτου Λαυσαῖοι ἤγουν οἱ καθεζόμενοι εἰς τὸν κρημνόν.
from this Lausaioi that-is those sitting on the cliff
ἡ δὲ κοινὴ συνήθεια, ἡ πολλάκις μεταφθείρουσα τὰ
the and common usage the(-one) often corrupting the
ὀνόματα τῇ ἐναλλαγῇ τῶν γραμμάτων, μεταβαλοῦσα τὴν
names by-the exchange of-the letters having-changed the
κλῆσιν Ῥαουσαίους τούτους ἐκάλεσεν. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Ῥαουσαῖοι
name Ragusans them called the and same Ragusans
τὸ παλαιὸν ἐκράτουν τὸ κάστρον τὸ ἐπιλεγόμενον
in-the old(-days) held the fortress the(-one) called
Πίταυρα· καὶ ἐπειδή, ἡνίκα τὰ λοιπὰ ἐκρατήθησαν κάστρα
Pitaura and since when the other were-taken fortresses
παρὰ τῶν Σκλάβων τῶν ὄντων ἐν τῷ θέματι, ἐκρατήθη
by the Slavs those being in the theme was-taken
καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐσφάγησαν οἱ
also the such fortress and some indeed were-slaughtered others

δὲ ἠχμαλωτίσθησαν, οἱ δὲ δυνηθέντες ἐκφυγεῖν καὶ
and were-taken-captive others and having-been-able to-escape and
διασωθῆναι εἰς τοὺς ὑποκρήμνους τόπους κατῴκησαν,
to-be-saved in the under-the-cliff places settled
ἐν ᾧ ἔστιν ἀρτίως τὸ κάστρον, οἰκοδομήσαντες αὐτὸ
in which is now the fortress having-built it
πρότερον μικρὸν καὶ πάλιν μετὰ ταῦτα μεῖζον, καὶ μετὰ
first small and again after these(-things) larger and after
τοῦτο πάλιν τὸ τεῖχος αὐτοῦ αὐξήσαντες μέχρι δ΄ ἔχειν
this again the wall its having-enlarged until 4 to-have
τὸ κάστρον διὰ τὸ πλατύνεσθαι αὐτοὺς κατ᾽ ὀλίγον καὶ
the fortress because-of the to-spread-out them by little and
πληθύνεσθαι. ἐκ δὲ τῶν μετοικησάντων εἰς τὸ Ῥαούσιον
to-multiply from and those having-migrated to — Ragusa
εἰσὶν οὗτοι, Γρηγόριος, Ἀρσάφιος, Βικτωρῖνος, Βιτάλιος,
are these Gregory Arsaphios Victorinus Vitalius
Βαλεντῖνος ὁ ἀρχιδιάκων, Βαλεντῖνος ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ
Valentine the archdeacon Valentine the father of-the
πρωτοσπαθαρίου Στεφάνου. ἀφ᾽ οὗ δὲ ἀπὸ Σαλῶνα
protospatharius Stephen from (the-time)-when and from Salona
μετῴκησαν εἰς Ῥαούσιον, εἰσὶν ἔτη φ΄ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον,
they-migrated to Ragusa there-are years 500 until the today
ἥτις ἰνδικτιῶνος ἑβδόμης ἔτους ,ϛυνζ΄. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ
which (is)-of-(the)-indiction seventh of-(the)-year 6457 in and the same
κάστρῳ κεῖται ὁ ἅγιος Παγκράτιος ἐν τῷ ναῷ τοῦ ἁγίου
fortress lies the holy Pankratios in the temple of-the holy
Στεφάνου τῷ ὄντι μέσον τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου.
Stephen the(-one) being (in)-(the)-middle of-the same fortress
Ὅτι τὸ Ἀσπαλάθου κάστρον, ὅπερ παλάτιον μικρὸν
that the of-Aspalathos fortress which palace little
ἑρμηνεύεται, ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς τοῦτο ἔκτισεν· εἶχε
is-interpreted the emperor Diocletian this built he-had

δὲ αὐτὸ ὡς ἴδιον οἶκον, καὶ αὐλὴν οἰκοδομήσας ἔνδοθεν καὶ
and it as own house and court having-built inside also
παλάτια, ἐξ ὧν τὰ πλείονα κατελύθησαν. σώζεται δὲ μέχρι
palaces of which the greater-part were-destroyed survive and until
τοῦ νῦν ὀλίγα, ἐξ ὧν ἐστὶ τὸ ἐπισκοπεῖον τοῦ κάστρου
the now few of which is the bishop's-house of-the fortress
καὶ ὁ ναὸς τοῦ ἁγίου Δόμνου, ἐν ᾧ κατάκειται ὁ αὐτὸς
and the temple of-the holy Domnus in which lies the same
ἅγιος Δόμνος, ὅπερ ἦν κοιτὼν τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως
holy Domnus which was (the)-bedchamber of-the same emperor
Διοκλητιανοῦ. ὑποκάτω δὲ αὐτοῦ ὑπάρχουσιν εἰλληματικαὶ
Diocletian beneath and it are vaulted
καμάραι, αἵτινες ὑπῆρχον φυλακαὶ ἐν αἷς τοὺς παρ' αὐτοῦ
chambers which were prisons in which the by him
βασανιζομένους ἁγίους ἐναπέκλειεν ἀπηνῶς. ἀπόκειται δὲ
tortured saints he-shut-up cruelly is-laid-up and
καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ κάστρῳ καὶ ὁ ἅγιος Ἀναστάσιος.
also in the-very the fortress also the holy Anastasius
Ὅτι τὸ τεῖχος τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου οὔτε ἀπὸ βησάλων
that the wall of-the such fortress neither from bricks
ἐστὶν ἐκτισμένον οὔτε ἀπὸ ἐγχορήγου, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ λίθων
is built nor from rubble but from stones
τετραπεδίκων ἐχόντων εἰς μῆκος ἀνὰ ὀργυιᾶς α΄, πολλάκις
squared having in length each fathom 1 often
καὶ ἀνὰ δύο, καὶ τὸ πλάτος ἀνὰ ὀργυιᾶς μιᾶς, οἵτινές εἰσι
also each two and the breadth each fathom one which are
συνηρμοσμένοι καὶ συνδεδεμένοι εἰς ἀλλήλους μετὰ σιδήρων
fitted-together and bound to each-other with irons
ἐν μολίβδῳ ἐγχυλιασμένων. ἵστανται δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον
in lead set stand and also in the such
κάστρον καὶ κίονες πυκνοί, ἔχοντες ἐπάνω κοσμίτας, ἐν οἷς
fortress also columns close-set having above cornices on which

ἔμελλεν ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς εἰληματικὰς ἐγεῖραι
was-about the same emperor Diocletian vaulted to-raise
καμάρας, καὶ σκεπάσαι τὸ κάστρον ὅλον, καὶ ποιῆσαι τὰ
chambers and to-cover the fortress whole and to-make the
παλάτια αὐτοῦ καὶ πάντα τὰ οἰκήματα τοῦ κάστρου ἐπάνω
palaces his and all the dwellings of-the fortress above
τῶν εἰλημάτων ἐκείνων διόροφα καὶ τριόροφα, ὥστε μὴ
the vaults those two-storied and three-storied so-that not
ὀλίγον ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου ἐσκέπασε. τοῦ δὲ τοιούτου
little of the same fortress he-covered of-the and such
κάστρου τὸ τεῖχος οὔτε περίπατον ἔχει οὔτε προμαχῶνας,
fortress the wall neither walkway has nor ramparts
ἀλλὰ τοίχους μόνους ὑψηλοὺς καὶ τοξικὰς φωταγωγούς.
but walls only high and arched windows
Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Τετραγγούριν μικρόν ἐστι νησίον ἐν
that the fortress — Tetrangourin small is (an)-islet in
τῇ θαλάσσῃ, ἔχον καὶ τράχηλον ἕως τῆς γῆς στενώτατον
the sea having also (a)-neck as-far-as the land very-narrow
δίκην γεφυρίου, ἐν ᾧ διέρχονται οἱ κατοικοῦντες εἰς
in-the-manner-of (a)-little-bridge by which pass those dwelling in
τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον. Τετραγγούριν δὲ καλεῖται διὰ τὸ εἶναι
the same fortress Tetrangourin and it-is-called because-of the to-be
αὐτὸ μικρὸν δίκην ἀγγουρίου. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ
it small in-the-manner-of (a)-cucumber in and the same fortress
ἀπόκειται ὁ ἅγιος μάρτυρ Λαυρέντιος ὁ ἀρχιδιάκων.
is-laid-up the holy martyr Lawrence the archdeacon
Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τῶν Δεκατέρων ἑρμηνεύεται τῇ Ῥωμαίων
that the fortress of-the Dekatera is-interpreted in-the of-(the)-Romans
διαλέκτῳ ἐστενωμένον καὶ πεπληγμένον, διότι εἰσέρχεται ἡ
dialect narrowed and pressed because enters the
θάλασσα ὥσπερ γλῶσσα ἐστενωμένη μέχρι τῶν δεκαπέντε
sea like (a)-tongue narrowed as-far-as the fifteen

καὶ εἴκοσι μιλίων, καὶ εἰς τὸ τῆς θαλάσσης συμπλήρωμά
and twenty miles and at the of-the sea end
ἐστι τὸ κάστρον. ἔχει δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον κύκλον αὐτοῦ
is the fortress has and the such fortress around it
ὄρη ὑψηλά, ὥστε μόνῳ τῷ καλοκαιρίῳ βλέπειν τὸν
mountains high so-that only in-the summer to-see the
ἥλιον διὰ τὸ μεσουρανεῖν, τῷ δὲ χειμῶνι οὐδαμῶς. ἐν δὲ
sun because-of the to-be-in-mid-heaven in-the and winter not-at-all in and
τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ κεῖται ὁ ἅγιος Τρύφων ἀκεραίως πᾶσαν
the same fortress lies the holy Tryphon wholly every
νόσον ἰώμενος, μάλιστα τοὺς ὑπὸ πνευμάτων ἀκαθάρτων
disease healing especially those by spirits unclean
τυραννουμένους· ὁ δὲ ναὸς αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν εἰλληματικός.
tyrannized the and temple his is vaulted
Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τῶν Διαδώρων καλεῖται τῇ Ῥωμαίων
that the fortress of-the Diadora is-called in-the of-(the)-Romans
διαλέκτῳ ἰὰμ ἔρατ, ὅπερ ἑρμηνεύεται ἀπάρτι ἦτον· δηλονότι
dialect iam erat which is-interpreted already it-was evidently
ὅτε ἡ Ῥώμη ἐκτίσθη, προεκτισμένον ἦν τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον·
when — Rome was-built built-before was the such fortress
ἔστι δὲ τὸ κάστρον μέγα. ἡ δὲ κοινὴ συνήθεια καλεῖ
is and the fortress great the and common usage calls
αὐτὸ Διάδωρα. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ κεῖται ἐν σαρκὶ ἡ
it Diadora in and the same fortress lies in (the)-flesh the
ἁγία Ἀναστασία ἡ παρθένος, θυγάτηρ γεγονυῖα Εὐσταθίου
holy Anastasia the virgin daughter having-been of-Eustathios
τοῦ κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον βασιλεύσαντος, καὶ ὁ ἅγιος
the(-one) at the time that having-reigned and the holy
Χρυσόγονος μοναχὸς καὶ μάρτυς, καὶ ἡ ἁγία ἅλυσις αὐτοῦ.
Chrysogonos monk and martyr and the holy chain his
ὁ δὲ ναὸς τῆς ἁγίας Ἀναστασίας ἐστὶ δρομικός, ὅμοιος τῷ
the and temple of-the holy Anastasia is oblong like to-the

Χαλκοπρατίων ναῷ, μετὰ κιόνων πρασίνων καὶ λευκῶν,
of-the-Chalkoprateia temple with columns green and white
ὅλος εἰκονισμένος ἐξ ὑλογραφίας ἀρχαίας· ὁ δὲ πάτος
whole painted with painting ancient the and floor
αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν ἀπὸ συγκοπῆς θαυμαστῆς. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἕτερος
its is of inlay-work marvelous there-is and also another
ναὸς πλησίον αὐτοῦ εἰλληματικός, ἡ ἁγία Τριάς· καὶ ἐπάνω
temple near it vaulted the holy Trinity and above
τοῦ ναοῦ αὐτοῦ πάλιν ἕτερος ναὸς δίκην κατηχουμένων,
the temple its again another temple in-the-manner-of galleries
καὶ αὐτὸς εἰλληματικός, εἰς ὃν καὶ ἀνέρχονται διὰ κοχλείας.
and it vaulted to which also they-go-up by (a)-spiral-stair
Ὅτι εἰσὶ νησία ὑπὸ τὴν ἐπικράτειαν τῆς Δελματίας
that there-are islets under the dominion — of-Dalmatia
μέχρι Βενεβενδοῦ πυκνὰ καὶ πάμπολλα, ὥστε μηδέποτε
as-far-as Benevento close-set and very-many so-that never
φοβεῖσθαι κλύδωνα ἐκεῖσε τὰ πλοῖα. ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν νησίων
to-fear (a)-swell there the ships of the-very the islets
ἐστὶ τὸ κάστρον ἡ Βέκλα, καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον ἡ Ἄρβη,
is the fortress — Vekla and on another islet — Arbe
καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον ἡ Ὄψαρα, καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον
and on another islet — Opsara and on another islet
τὸ Λουμβρικάτον, ἅτινα κατοικοῦνται μέχρι τοῦ νῦν· τὰ
— Loumbrikaton which are-inhabited until the now the
δὲ λοιπά εἰσιν ἀοίκητα, ἔχοντα ἐρημόκαστρα, ὧν τὰ
and others are uninhabited having deserted-fortresses of-which the
ὀνόματά εἰσιν οὕτω, Καταυτρεβενὼ Πιζὺχ Σελβὼ Σκερδὰ
names are thus Katautreveno Pizych Selvo Skerda
Ἀλωὴπ Σκιρδάκισσα Πυρότιμα Μελετὰ Ἑστιουνήζ, καὶ
Aloep Skirdakissa Pyrotima Meleta Estiounez and
ἕτερα πάμπολλα ὧν τὰ ὀνόματα οὐ νοοῦνται. τὰ δὲ
others very-many of-which the names not are-understood the and

λοιπὰ κάστρα τὰ ὄντα εἰς τὴν ξηρὰν τοῦ θέματος καὶ
other fortresses those being on the dry-land of-the theme and
κρατηθέντα παρὰ τῶν εἰρημένων Σκλάβων ἀοίκητα καὶ
taken by the said Slavs uninhabited and
ἔρημα ἵστανται, μηδενὸς κατοικοῦντος ἐν αὐτοῖς.
deserted stand no-one dwelling in them

XXX · AN ACCOUNT OF DALMATIA

Dalmatia once stretched from Dyrrachium to Istria and the Danube. The Avars took Salona disguised in captured Dalmatian clothes. Five brothers and two sisters led the Croats in, and they defeated the Avars. The Croats threw off the Franks, who had killed their infants, and were baptized from Rome. The chapter describes the zupanias of Croatia and the lands of the neighboring Slavs, and how Basil had the coastal towns pay their tribute to the Slavs.

διήγησις περὶ τοῦ θέματος Δελματίας.
(an)-account concerning the theme of-Dalmatia
Εἰ πᾶσιν ἡ γνῶσις καλόν, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἄρα τῶν πραγμάτων
if for-all the knowledge (is)-good also we then of-the affairs
τὴν γνῶσιν καταλαμβάνοντες οὐ πόρρω τούτου γινώμεθα.
the knowledge grasping not far from-this are
ὅθεν καὶ πᾶσι φανερὰν ποιοῦμεν τῶν μεθ' ἡμᾶς πῇ
whence also to-all evident we-make of-those after us in-one-place
μὲν τούτων τὴν δήλωσιν πῇ δὲ ἑτέρων τινῶν
indeed of-these the setting-forth in-another and of-others some
ἀξιολόγων, ἵνα διπλοῦν ἐπανακολουθῇ τὸ καλόν. τοῖς
notable so-that double may-follow the good to-those
οὖν καὶ τῆς Δελματίας τὴν παράληψιν ζητοῦσιν, ὅπως
then also — of-Dalmatia the taking seeking how
ἐλήφθη παρὰ τῶν Σκλαβικῶν ἐθνῶν, ἐντεῦθεν ἔστι
it-was-taken by the Slavonic nations from-here it-is

μαθεῖν. ἀλλὰ πρότερον τὴν θέσιν αὐτῆς διηγητέον. ἐκ
to-learn but first the position its must-be-related from
παλαιοῦ μὲν τοίνυν ἡ Δελματία τὴν ἀρχὴν μὲν εἶχεν
old indeed then — Dalmatia the beginning indeed had
ἀπὸ τῶν συνόρων Δυρραχίου ἤγουν ἀπὸ Ἀντιβάρεως,
from the borders of-Dyrrachium that-is from Antibaris
καὶ παρετείνετο μὲν μέχρι τῶν τῆς Ἰστρίας ὀρῶν,
and extended indeed as-far-as the — of-Istria mountains
ἐπλατύνετο δὲ μέχρι τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ. ἦν δὲ
was-broad and as-far-as the Danube river was and
ἅπασα ἡ τοιαύτη περίχωρος ὑπὸ τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν,
all the such surrounding-country under the of-(the)-Romans rule
καὶ ἐνδοξότερον τῶν ἄλλων ἑσπερίων θεμάτων τὸ τοιοῦτον
and more-glorious of-the other western themes the such
θέμα ἐτύγχανεν· πλὴν παρελήφθη παρὰ τὴν Σκλαβινικῶν
theme happened-to-be however it-was-taken by the Slavonic
ἐθνῶν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. κάστρον ἐστὶ πλησίον Ἀσπαλάθου
nations in-(a)-way such (a)-fortress is near Aspalathos
ὃ Σαλῶνα λέγεται, ἔργον Διοκλητιανοῦ βασιλέως. ἀλλ᾽
which Salona is-called (a)-work of-Diocletian (the)-emperor but
ἡ μὲν Ἀσπάλαθος καὶ αὐτὴ παρὰ Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐκτίσθη,
— indeed Aspalathos also itself by Diocletian was-built
καὶ τὰ αὐτοῦ βασιλικὰ ἐκεῖσε ἐτύγχανον· εἰς δὲ
and the his imperial(-residences) there happened-to-be in and
Σαλῶναν κατῴκουν οἱ μεγιστᾶνες αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν ὄχλων
Salona dwelt the grandees his and of-the crowds
ἱκανοί. ὑπῆρχε δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον κεφαλὴ
considerable(-numbers) was and the such fortress head
πάσης τῆς Δελματίας. ἠθροίζοντο οὖν ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος ἐκ
of-all — Dalmatia were-assembled then by every year from
τῶν λοιπῶν κάστρων τῆς Δελματίας στρατιῶται ἔφιπποι,
the other fortresses — of-Dalmatia soldiers mounted

καὶ ἀπεστέλλοντο ἀπὸ τῆς Σαλῶνος μέχρι τῶν χιλίων,
and were-sent from — Salona up-to the thousand
καὶ ἐφύλαττον εἰς τὸν Δανουβίου ποταμὸν ἕνεκα τῶν
and they-kept-guard on the Danube river on-account-of the
Ἀβάρων· οἱ γὰρ Ἀβάρεις ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ
Avars the for Avars beyond-there of-the Danube river
τὰς διατριβὰς ἐποιοῦντο, ἔνθα ἀρτίως εἰσὶν οἱ Τοῦρκοι,
the abodes made where now are the Turks
νομάδα βίον ζῶντες. ἀπερχόμενοι δὲ οἱ Δελματίας κατ᾽
(a)-nomad life living going-away and the Dalmatians each
ἔτος ἔβλεπον πολλάκις ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τά τε
year saw often beyond-there of-the river the both
κτήνη καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς κατά
cattle and the men it-seemed then to-them at
τινα χρόνον διαπερᾶσαι καὶ ἐρευνῆσαι τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ
some time to-cross and to-search-out who are those
ἐκεῖσε τὴν δίαιταν ἔχοντες. περάσαντες οὖν εὗρον τὰς
there the way-of-life having having-crossed then they-found the
γυναῖκας τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ τὰ παιδία μόνα, τοὺς ἄνδρας
wives of-the Avars and the children alone the men
δὲ καὶ τὴν ἀκμάζουσαν ἡλικίαν ἐν ταξειδίῳ. ἄφνω οὖν
but and the flourishing age on campaign suddenly then
ἐπιπεσόντες ᾐχμαλώτευσαν αὐτούς, καὶ ὑπέστρεψαν
having-fallen-upon(-them) they-captured them and returned
ἀταλαιπώρως, ἀποκομίσαντες τὴν τοιαύτην πραῖδαν εἰς
without-hardship having-carried-off the such plunder to
Σαλῶνα. ὡς οὖν ὑπέστρεψαν οἱ Ἄβαρες ἐκ τοῦ ταξειδίου
Salona when then returned the Avars from the campaign
καὶ τὸ γενόμενον ἀφ᾽ ὧν ἔπαθον ἔμαθον,
and the having-happened from (the-things)-which they-had-suffered learned
ἐταράχθησαν μέν, ἠγνόουν δὲ ὁπόθεν αὐτοῖς ἡ τοιαύτη
they-were-troubled indeed they-did-not-know and whence on-them the such

πληγὴ προσεγένετο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς παραφυλάξαι τὸν
blow had-come it-seemed then to-them to-watch-for the
καιρὸν καὶ μαθεῖν τὸ πᾶν ἐξ αὐτοῦ. ἐπεὶ οὖν κατὰ τὸ
time and to-learn the whole from it since then according-to the
σύνηθες αὖθις οἱ ταξεῶται ἀπεστάλησαν ἀπὸ Σαλῶνος,
custom again the campaigners were-sent from Salona
ἦσαν δὲ οὐκ ἐκεῖνοι ἀλλ᾽ ἕτεροι, ταὐτὰ ἐκείνοις καὶ
they-were and not those but others the-same-things as-those also
οὗτοι κατὰ βουλὰς ἔθεντο. διεπέρασαν οὖν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν,
these by counsels set they-crossed then against them
ἐντυχόντες δὲ αὐτοῖς συνηγμένοις ὁμοῦ, οὐχ ὡς τὸ
having-met and them gathered together not as the
πρότερον ἐσκορπισμένοις, οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν ἐποίησαν ἀλλὰ
before scattered not only nothing they-did but
καὶ τὰ πάντων δεινότατα ἔπαθον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν
also the of-all most-terrible-things suffered some indeed for of-them
ἐσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐχειρώθησαν ζῶντες, καὶ οὐδεὶς
were-slaughtered the and others were-taken alive and no-one
ἐκείνων τῶν χειρῶν ἐξέφυγεν. ἐξετάσαντες δὲ αὐτοὺς
of-those the hands escaped having-questioned and them
τίνες καὶ ὅθεν εἰσί, καὶ ἀναμαθόντες ὅτι ἐξ αὐτῶν
who and whence they-are and having-learned that from them
ἔπαθον τὴν εἰρημένην πληγήν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς
they-had-suffered the said blow yet and also concerning the
ποιότητος τοῦ τόπου αὐτῶν ἐρευνήσαντες, καὶ ὅσον ἐξ
quality of-the place their having-inquired and as-much-as by
ἀκοῆς ἐρασθέντες, ἐκράτησαν τοὺς ζῶντας δεσμίους, καὶ
hearing having-fallen-in-love they-held the living (as)-prisoners and
ἐνεδύσαντο τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτῶν καθὰ ἐκεῖνοι, καὶ δὴ τοὺς
put-on the clothes their as those and indeed the
ἵππους ἀναβάντες, ἐπὶ χεῖρας τά τε φλάμουλα καὶ τὰ
horses having-mounted in hands the both pennons and the

λοιπὰ σημεῖα ἃ ἐπεφέροντο μετ᾽ αὐτῶν, ἀπῆραν πάντες
other standards which they-carried with them set-out all
φοσσατικῶς καὶ κατὰ τῆς Σαλῶνος ὥρμησαν. ὡς οὖν καὶ
in-army-array and against — Salona rushed as then also
τὸν καιρὸν ἔμαθον ζητήσαντες καθ᾽ ὃν οἱ ταξεῶται
the time they-had-learned having-sought at which the campaigners
ἐκ τοῦ Δανουβίου ὑπέστρεφον (ἦν δὲ τὸ μέγα καὶ ἅγιον
from the Danube returned it-was and the great and holy
σάββατον), ἦλθον καὶ κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν ἡμέραν. καὶ τὸ
sabbath they-came also on the same day and the
μὲν πλῆθος, ὅτε δήπου πλησίον ἐγένοντο, τοῦ φοσσάτου
indeed multitude when surely near they-came of-the army
ἀπεκρύβη· μέχρι δὲ τῶν χιλίων, οἵτινες τούς τε ἵππους
was-hidden up-to and the thousand who the both horses
καὶ τὰς στολὰς εἰς ἀπάτην ἐκέκτηντο τῶν Δελματινῶν,
and the robes for deception had-acquired of-the Dalmatians
ἐξήλασαν. ἀναγνωρίσαντες δὲ οἱ τοῦ κάστρου τά τε
rode-forward having-recognized and those of-the fortress the both
σημεῖα καὶ τὴν ἀμφίασιν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ὡς
standards and the dress their but also the day as
ἔθους ὄντος αὐτοῖς τοῦ ὑποστρέφειν ἐν αὐτῇ, ἤνοιξαν τὰς
(a)-custom being for-them of-the to-return on it opened the
πόρτας καὶ ὑπεδέξαντο αὐτοὺς μετὰ περιχαρείας. ἐκεῖνοι δὲ
gates and received them with great-joy they and
ἅμα τοῦ εἰσελθεῖν τάς τε πόρτας ἐκράτησαν, καὶ
at-the-same-time-as the to-enter the both gates seized and
δήλην διὰ σημείου τὴν πρᾶξιν τῷ φοσσάτῳ πεποιηκότες
evident by (a)-signal the deed to-the army having-made
συνεισδραμεῖν καὶ συνεισελθεῖν παρεσκεύασαν. κατέσφαξαν
to-run-in-together and to-enter-together prepared(-them) they-slaughtered
οὖν πάντας τοὺς τῆς πόλεως, καὶ ἔκτοτε κατεκράτησαν
then all those of-the city and from-then took-control-of

πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν Δελματίας καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν αὐτῇ.
all the land of-Dalmatia and settled in it
μόνα δὲ τὰ πρὸς θάλασσαν πολίχνια οὐ συνέδωκαν αὐτοῖς,
only and the toward (the)-sea little-towns not surrendered to-them
ἀλλὰ κατείχοντο παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων διὰ τὸ εἶναι τὸν
but were-held by the Romans because-of the to-be the
πόρον τῆς ζωῆς αὐτῶν ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης. ἰδόντες οὖν οἱ
means of-the life their from the sea having-seen then the
Ἀβάρεις καλλίστην οὖσαν τὴν τοιαύτην γῆν κατεσκήνωσαν
Avars most-beautiful being the such land settled
ἐν αὐτῇ. οἱ δὲ Χρωβάτοι κατῴκουν τηνικαῦτα ἐκεῖθεν
in it the and Croats dwelt at-that-time beyond-there
Βαγιβαρείας, ἔνθα εἰσὶν ἀρτίως οἱ Βελοχρωβάτοι. μία δὲ
of-Bavaria where are now the White-Croats one and
γενεὰ διαχωρισθεῖσα ἐξ αὐτῶν, ἤγουν ἀδελφοὶ πέντε,
family having-separated from them that-is brothers five
ὅ τε Κλουκὰς καὶ ὁ Λόβελος καὶ ὁ Κοσέντζης καὶ ὁ
— both Kloukas and — Lobelos and — Kosentzes and —
Μουχλὼ καὶ ὁ Χρώβατος, καὶ ἀδελφαὶ δύο, ἡ Τοῖγα
Mouchlo and — Chrobatos and sisters two — Toiga
καὶ ἡ Βοῦγα, μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν ἦλθον εἰς Δελματίαν,
and — Bouga with the people their came to Dalmatia
καὶ εὗρον τοὺς Ἀβάρεις κατέχοντας τὴν τοιαύτην γῆν.
and found the Avars holding the such land
ἐπί τινας οὖν χρόνους πολεμοῦντες ἀλλήλοις ὑπερίσχυσαν
for some then years warring with-each-other prevailed
οἱ Χρωβάτοι, καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῶν Ἀβάρων κατέσφαξαν,
the Croats and some indeed of-the Avars they-slaughtered
τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς ὑποταγῆναι κατηνάγκασαν. ἔκτοτε οὖν
the and others to-be-subjected they-compelled from-then then
κατεκρατήθη ἡ τοιαύτη χώρα παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων· καὶ
was-held the such land by the Croats and

εἰσὶν ἀκμὴν ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ ἐκ τοὺς τῶν Ἀβάρων, καὶ
there-are still in Croatia of the of-the Avars and
γινώσκονται Ἀβάρεις ὄντες. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Χρωβάτοι ἔμειναν
they-are-known Avars being the and other Croats remained
πρὸς Φραγγίαν, καὶ λέγονται ἀρτίως Βελοχρωβάτοι ἤγουν
toward Frankland and are-called now White-Croats that-is
ἄσπροι Χρωβάτοι, ἔχοντες τὸν ἴδιον ἄρχοντα· ὑπόκεινται
white Croats having the own prince are-subject
δὲ Ὄτῳ τῷ μεγάλῳ ῥηγὶ Φραγγίας τῆς καὶ Σαξίας, καὶ
and to-Otto the great king of-Frankland the also of-Saxony and
ἀβάπτιστοι τυγχάνουσι, συμπενθερίας μετὰ τοὺς Τούρκους
unbaptized they-are marriage-alliances with the Turks
καὶ ἀγάπας ἔχοντες. ἀπὸ δὲ Χρωβάτων τῶν ἐλθόντων
and friendships having from and (the)-Croats those having-come
ἐν Δελματίᾳ διεχωρίσθη μέρος τι, καὶ ἐκράτησε τὸ
to Dalmatia separated (a)-part some and took-control-of —
Ἰλλυρικὸν καὶ τὴν Παννονίαν· εἶχον δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄρχοντα
Illyricum and — Pannonia they-had and also they (a)-prince
αὐτεξούσιον, διαπεμπόμενον πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα Χρωβατίας
independent sending(-envoys) to the prince of-Croatia
κατὰ φιλίαν. μέχρι δὲ χρόνων τινῶν ὑπετάσσοντο καὶ οἱ
in friendship until and times some were-subject also the
ἐν Δελματίᾳ ὄντες Χρωβάτοι τοῖς Φράγγοις, καθὼς καὶ
in Dalmatia being Croats to-the Franks as also
πρότερον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν· τοσοῦτον δὲ ἐσκληρύνοντο
before in the land their so-much and were-harsh
οἱ Φράγγοι πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι τὰ ὑπομάσθια τῶν Χρωβάτων
the Franks toward them that the sucklings of-the Croats
φονεύοντες προσέρριπτον αὐτὰ σκύλαξι. μὴ δυνάμενοι δὲ
killing they-threw them to-dogs not being-able and
οἱ Χρωβάτοι ταῦτα παρὰ τῶν Φράγγων ὑφίστασθαι
the Croats these(-things) from the Franks to-endure

διέστησαν ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν, φονεύσαντες καὶ οὓς εἶχον ἄρχοντας
revolted from them having-killed also whom they-had (as)-princes
ἐξ αὐτῶν· ὅθεν ἐστράτευσαν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀπὸ Φραγγίας
from them whence marched against them from Frankland
φοσσάτον μέγα, καὶ ἐπὶ ἑπτὰ χρόνους πολεμήσαντες
(an)-army great and for seven years having-warred
ἀλλήλοις ὀψὲ καὶ μόγις ὑπερίσχυσαν οἱ Χρωβάτοι, καὶ
with-each-other late and hardly prevailed the Croats and
ἀνεῖλον τοὺς Φράγγους πάντας καὶ τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν
destroyed the Franks all and the prince their
Κοτζίλιν καλούμενον. ἔκτοτε δὲ μείναντες αὐτοδέσποτοι
Kotzilis called from-then and having-remained their-own-masters
αὐτόνομοι ἐξῃτήσαντο τὸ ἅγιον βάπτισμα παρὰ τοῦ
independent they-asked-for the holy baptism from the(-bishop)
Ῥώμης· καὶ ἀπεστάλησαν ἐπίσκοποι καὶ ἐβάπτισαν αὐτοὺς
of-Rome and were-sent bishops and baptized them
ἐπὶ Πορίνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος αὐτῶν. διεμερίσθη οὖν ἡ χώρα
under Porinos the prince their was-divided then the land
αὐτῶν εἰς ζουπανίας ια΄, ἤγουν ἡ Χλεβίανα, ἡ Τζέντζηνα,
their into zupanias 11 that-is — Chlebena — Tzentina
τὰ Ἥμοτα, ἡ Πλέβα, ἡ Πεσέντα, ἡ παραθαλασσία,
— Emota — Pleva — Pesenta — Parathalassia
ἡ Βρεβέρα, ἡ Νόνα, ἡ Τνήνα, ἡ Σίδραγα, ἡ Νίνα·
— Brebera — Nona — Tnena — Sidraga — Nina
καὶ ὁ βοάνος αὐτῶν κρατεῖ τὴν Κρίβασαν, τὴν Λίτζαν
and the ban their holds — Kribasa — Litza
καὶ τὴν Γουτζηκᾶ. καὶ ἡ μὲν εἰρημένη Χρωβατία,
and — Goutzeka and the indeed said Croatia
ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Σκλαβίνιοι διάκεινται οὕτως· ἡ δὲ
but also the other Slavonians are-disposed thus — and
Διόκλεια πλησιάζει πρὸς τὰ καστέλλια τοῦ Δυρραχίου
Diokleia borders on the castles — of-Dyrrachium

ἤγουν πρὸς τὸν Ἐλισσὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἐλκύνιον καὶ
that-is on — Elissos and on — Elkynion and
τὴν Ἀντίβαριν, καὶ ἔρχεται μέχρι τῶν Δεκατέρων, πρὸς
— Antibaris and comes as-far-as the Dekatera toward
τὰ ὀρεινὰ δὲ πλησιάζει τῇ Σερβλίᾳ. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ
the mountainous(-parts) and it-borders — on-Serbia from and the
κάστρου τῶν Δεκατέρων ἄρχεται ἡ ἀρχοντία Τερβουνίας,
fortress of-the Dekatera begins the government of-Terbounia
καὶ παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ Ῥαουσίου, πρὸς δὲ τὰ
and extends as-far-as — Ragusa toward and the
ὀρεινὰ αὐτῆς πλησιάζει τῇ Σερβλίᾳ. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ
mountainous(-parts) its it-borders — on-Serbia from and —
Ῥαουσίου ἄρχεται ἡ ἀρχοντία τῶν Ζαχλούμων καὶ
Ragusa begins the government of-the Zachlumi and
παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ Ὀροντίου ποταμοῦ, καὶ πρὸς μὲν
extends as-far-as the Orontios river and toward indeed
τὴν παραθαλασσίαν πλησιάζει τοῖς Παγανοῖς, πρὸς δὲ τὰ
the coast it-borders on-the Pagani toward and the
ὀρεινὰ εἰς ἄρκτον μὲν πλησιάζει τοῖς Χρωβάτοις,
mountainous(-parts) to (the)-north indeed it-borders on-the Croats
εἰς κεφαλὴν δὲ τῇ Σερβλίᾳ. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Ὀροντίου
at (the)-head and — on-Serbia from and the Orontios
ποταμοῦ ἄρχεται ἡ Παγανία, καὶ παρεκτείνεται μέχρι
river begins — Pagania and extends as-far-as
τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῆς Ζεντίνας, τρεῖς ἔχουσα ζουπανίας, τὴν
the river of-the Tzentina three having zupanias —
Ῥάστωτζαν καὶ τὸ Μοκρὸν καὶ τὸ Δαλέν. καὶ αἱ μὲν δύο
Rhastotza and — Mokron and — Dalen and the indeed two
ζουπανίαι, ἤγουν ἡ Ῥάστωτζα, καὶ ἡ τοῦ Μοκροῦ,
zupanias that-is — Rhastotza and the(-one) — of-Mokron
πρόσκεινται τῇ θαλάσσῃ· αἵτινες καὶ σαγήνας ἔχουσιν·
lie-against the sea which also galleys have

ἡ δὲ τοῦ Δαλενοῦ μηκόθέν ἐστὶ τῆς θαλάσσης, καὶ
the and — of-Dalen far-off is from-the sea and
ἐκ τῆς ἐργασίας ζῶσι τῆς γῆς. πλησιάζουσι δὲ αὐτοῖς
from the working they-live of-the land border and on-them
νῆσοι τέσσαρες, τὰ Μέλετα, τὰ Κούρκουρα, ἡ Βάρτζω
islands four — Meleta — Kourkoura — Bartzo
καὶ ὁ Φάρος, κάλλισται καὶ εὐφορώταται, ἐρημόκαστρα
and — Pharos most-beautiful and most-fertile deserted-fortresses
ἔχουσαι καὶ ἐλῶνας πολλούς· οἰκοῦσι δὲ ἐν αὐταῖς καὶ
having and olive-groves many they-dwell and on them and
ἔχουσι τὰ κτήνη αὐτῶν καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν ζῶσιν. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς
have the cattle their and from them they-live from and the
Ζεντίνας τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄρχεται ἡ χώρα τῆς Χρωβατίας,
Tzentina the river begins the land — of-Croatia
καὶ παρεκτείνεται πρὸς μὲν τὴν παραθαλασσίαν μέχρι
and extends toward indeed the coast as-far-as
τῶν συνόρων Ἰστρίας ἤγουν τοῦ κάστρου Ἀλβούνου· πρὸς
the borders of-Istria that-is of-the fortress of-Albounon toward
δὲ τὰ ὀρεινὰ καὶ ὑπέρκειται μέχρι τινὸς τῷ
and the mountainous(-parts) also it-lies-above to some(-extent) the
θέματι Ἰστρίας, πλησιάζει δὲ πρὸς τὴν Τζέντινα καὶ τὴν
theme of-Istria it-borders and at — Tzentina and —
Χλέβενα τῇ χώρᾳ Σερβλίας· ἡ γὰρ χώρα Σερβλίας
Chlebena on-the land of-Serbia the for land of-Serbia
εἰς κεφαλὴν μέν ἐστι πασῶν τῶν λοιπῶν χωρῶν, πρὸς
at (the)-head indeed is of-all the other lands toward
ἄρκτον δὲ πλησιάζει τῇ Χρωβατίᾳ, πρὸς μεσημβρίαν
(the)-north and it-borders — on-Croatia toward (the)-south
δὲ τῇ Βουλγαρίᾳ. ἀφ' οὗ δὲ κατεσκήνωσαν οἱ
and — on-Bulgaria from (the-time)-when and settled the
εἰρημένοι Σκλάβοι, κατεκράτησαν πᾶσαν τὴν περίχωρον
said Slavs they-took-control-of all the surrounding-country

Δελματίας. ἐργάζοντο δὲ τὰ κάστρα τῶν Ῥωμαίων τὰς
of-Dalmatia worked and the fortresses of-the Romans the
νήσους, καὶ ἔζουν ἐξ αὐτῶν· ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν Παγανῶν καθ'
islands and lived from them by and the Pagani by
ἑκάστην ἐπαιχμαλωτιζόμενοι καὶ ἀφανιζόμενοι κατέλιπον
each(-day) being-taken-captive and being-destroyed they-abandoned
τὰς τοιαύτας νήσους, βουλόμενοι εἰς τὴν ἤπειρον ἐργάζεσθαι.
the such islands wishing on the mainland to-work
ἐκωλύοντο δὲ παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων· οὔπω γὰρ ἐτέλουν
they-were-hindered and by the Croats not-yet for they-paid
αὐτοῖς φόρους, ἀλλὰ πάντα ἅπερ ἀρτίως παρέχουσι τοῖς
to-them tributes but all which now they-furnish to-the
Σκλάβοις, τῷ στρατηγῷ ταῦτα παρεῖχον. ἀδυνάτως δὲ
Slavs to-the general these(-things) they-furnished unable and
ἔχοντες τοῦ ζῆν προσῆλθον Βασιλείῳ τῷ ἀοιδίμῳ βασιλεῖ,
being of-the to-live they-came-to Basil the celebrated emperor
ἀναδιδάξαντες τὰ εἰρημένα πάντα, ὁ οὖν ἀοίδιμος ἐκεῖνος
having-informed(-him) the said-things all the then celebrated that
βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος προετρέψατο πάντα τὰ διδόμενα
emperor Basil urged all the(-things) given
τῷ στρατηγῷ δίδοσθαι παρ' αὐτῶν τοῖς Σκλάβοις καὶ
to-the general to-be-given by them to-the Slavs and
εἰρηνικῶς ζῆν μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ βραχύ τι δίδοσθαι τῷ
peacefully to-live with them and little something to-be-given to-the
στρατηγῷ, ἵνα μόνον δείκνυται ἡ πρὸς τοὺς βασιλεῖς
general so-that only may-be-shown the toward the emperors
τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν ὑποταγὴ
of-the Romans and toward the general their subjection
καὶ δούλωσις. καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐγένοντο πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα
and servitude and from-then became all the such
κάστρα ὑπόφορα τῶν Σκλάβων, καὶ τελοῦσιν αὐτοῖς
fortresses tributary of-the Slavs and pay to-them

πάκτα, τὸ μὲν κάστρον ἡ Ἀσπάλαθος νομίσματα σ΄, τὸ
tributes the indeed fortress — Aspalathos nomismata 200 the
κάστρον τὸ Τετραγγούριν νομίσματα ρ΄, τὸ κάστρον τὰ
fortress — Tetrangourin nomismata 100 the fortress —
Διάδωρα ρι΄, τὸ κάστρον τὰ Ὄψαρα ρ΄, τὸ κάστρον ἡ
Diadora 110 the fortress — Opsara 100 the fortress —
Ἄρβη ρ΄, τὸ κάστρον ἡ Βέκλα ρ΄, ὡς ὁμοῦ νομίσματα
Arbe 100 the fortress — Vekla 100 as together nomismata
ψι΄, ἐκτὸς οἴνου καὶ ἑτέρων διαφόρων εἰδῶν· ταῦτα
710 apart-from wine and other various kinds these
γὰρ πλείονά εἰσιν ὑπὲρ τὰ νομίσματα. τὸ δὲ κάστρον
for more are than the nomismata the and fortress
τὸ Ῥαούσιον μέσον τῶν δύο χωρῶν πρόσκειται, τῶν
— Ragusa between the two lands lies the
τε Ζαχλούμων καὶ τῆς Τερβουνίας· ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ τοὺς
both Zachlumi and — Terbounia they-have and also the
ἀμπελῶνας αὐτῶν εἰς ἀμφοτέρας τὰς χώρας, καὶ τελοῦσι
vineyards their in both the lands and they-pay
πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν Ζαχλούμων νομίσματα λς΄,
to indeed the prince of-the Zachlumi nomismata 36
πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἄρχοντα Τερβουνίας νομίσματα λς΄.
to and the prince of-Terbounia nomismata 36

The Croats came from White Croatia and, at Heraclius' bidding, drove the Avars out of Dalmatia. Heraclius had them baptized by priests from Rome. They swore to Saint Peter, by the pope's ordinance, never to attack a foreign land, so their ships sail only for trade. They never submitted to Bulgaria. Baptized Croatia once fielded sixty thousand horse and a hundred thousand foot, before civil strife reduced it. White Croatia, still unbaptized, is weaker and far from the sea.

περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων, καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
concerning the Croats and which now they-inhabit land
Ὅτι οἱ Χρωβάτοι οἱ εἰς τὰ Δελματίας νῦν κατοικοῦντες
that the Croats those in the of-Dalmatia now dwelling
μέρη ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Χρωβάτων καὶ τῶν ἄσπρων
parts from the unbaptized Croats and the white
ἐπονομαζομένων κατάγονται, οἵτινες Τουρκίας μὲν ἐκεῖθεν
called are-descended who of-Turkey indeed beyond
Φραγγίας δὲ πλησίον κατοικοῦσι, καὶ συνοροῦσι Σκλάβοις
of-Frankland and near dwell and border on-Slavs
τοῖς ἀβαπτίστοις Σέρβλοις. τὸ δὲ Χρωβάτοι τῇ τῶν
the unbaptized Serbs the and Croats in-the of-the
Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἑρμηνεύεται, τουτέστιν οἱ τὴν πολλὴν
Slavs dialect is-interpreted that-is those the much
χώραν κατέχοντες. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι εἰς τὸν
land holding the and same Croats to the
βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων Ἡράκλειον πρόσφυγες παρεγένοντο
emperor of-the Romans Heraclius (as)-refugees came
πρὸ τοῦ τοὺς Σέρβλους προσφυγεῖν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν
before the the Serbs to-take-refuge to the same
βασιλέα Ἡράκλειον, κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ὃν οἱ Ἀβάρεις
emperor Heraclius at the time in-which the Avars
πολεμήσαντες ἀπ᾽ ἐκεῖσε τοὺς Ῥωμάνους ἐναπεδίωξαν,
having-warred from there the Romani drove-out

οὓς ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἀγαγὼν
whom the emperor Diocletian from Rome having-brought
ἐκεῖσε κατεσκήνωσε· διὸ καὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐκλήθησαν διὰ
there settled therefore also Romani they-were-called because-of
τὸ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετοίκους αὐτοὺς γενέσθαι ἐν ταῖς
the from Rome settlers them to-become in the
τοιαύταις χώραις, ἤγουν τῆς νῦν καλουμένης Χρωβατίας
such lands that-is of-the now called Croatia
καὶ Σερβλίας. παρὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων ἐκδιωχθέντες οἱ
and Serbia by and the Avars having-been-driven-out the
αὐτοὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως
same Romani in the days of-the same emperor
Ῥωμαίων Ἡρακλείου, αἱ τούτων ἔρημοι καθεστήκασι
of-(the)-Romans Heraclius the their deserted had-become
χῶραι. προστάξει οὖν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου οἱ αὐτοὶ
lands by-(the)-command then of-the emperor Heraclius the same
Χρωβάτοι καταπολεμήσαντες καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε τοὺς
Croats having-warred-down and from the there the
Ἀβάρους ἐκδιώξαντες, Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως κελεύσει
Avars having-driven-out of-Heraclius the emperor by-(the)-order
ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τῶν Ἀβάρων χώρᾳ, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσι,
in the same of-the Avars land in which now they-dwell
κατεσκήνωσαν· εἶχον δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι τῷ τότε καιρῷ
settled had and the same Croats at-the then time
ἄρχοντα τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Ποργά. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἡράκλειος
(as)-prince the father — of-Porgas the and emperor Heraclius
ἀποστείλας καὶ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἀγαγὼν ἱερεῖς, καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν
having-sent also from Rome having-brought priests and of them
ποιήσας ἀρχιεπίσκοπον καὶ ἐπίσκοπον καὶ πρεσβυτέρους
having-made (an)-archbishop and (a)-bishop and presbyters

καὶ διακόνους, τοὺς Χρωβάτους ἐβάπτισεν· εἶχον δὲ τῷ
and deacons the Croats baptized had and at-the
τότε καιρῷ οἱ τοιοῦτοι Χρωβάτοι ἄρχοντα τὸν Ποργά.
then time the such Croats (as)-prince — Porgas
Ὅτι ἡ τοιαύτη χώρα εἰς ἣν οἱ Χρωβάτοι κατεσκηνώθησαν
that the such land in which the Croats were-settled
ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν
from (the)-beginning under the authority was of-the emperor of-the
Ῥωμαίων, ἐξ οὗ καὶ παλάτια καὶ ἱπποδρόμια τοῦ
Romans from which also palaces and hippodromes of-the
βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐν τῇ τῶν αὐτῶν Χρωβάτων χώρᾳ
emperor Diocletian in the of-the same Croats land
μέχρι τῆς νῦν περισώζονται εἰς τὸ κάστρον Σαλώνας,
until the now survive at the fortress of-Salona
πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου Ἀσπαλάθου.
near the fortress of-Aspalathos
Ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ βαπτισμένοι Χρωβάτοι ἔξωθεν τῆς ἰδίας
that these the baptized Croats outside of-the own
αὐτῶν χώρας πολεμεῖν ἀλλοτρίοις οὐ βούλονται· χρησμὸν
their land to-war-upon strangers not wish (an)-oracle
γάρ τινα καὶ ὁρισμὸν ἔλαβον παρὰ τοῦ πάπα Ῥώμης
for some and ordinance they-received from the pope of-Rome
τοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων
the(-one) under — Heraclius the emperor of-(the)-Romans
ἀποστείλαντος ἱερεῖς καὶ τούτους βαπτίσαντος. καὶ γὰρ
having-sent priests and them having-baptized and for
οὗτοι οἱ Χρωβάτοι, μετὰ τὸ αὐτοὺς βαπτισθῆναι, συνθήκας
these the Croats after the them to-be-baptized covenants
καὶ ἰδιόχειρα ἐποιήσαντο καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἅγιον Πέτρον
and handwritten(-pledges) made also to the holy Peter
τὸν ἀπόστολον ὅρκους βεβαίους καὶ ἀσφαλεῖς, ἵνα μηδέποτε
the apostle oaths firm and secure that never

εἰς ἀλλοτρίαν χώραν ἀπέλθωσι καὶ πολεμήσωσιν, ἀλλὰ
into another's land they-go-away and make-war but
μᾶλλον εἰρηνεύειν μετὰ πάντων τῶν βουλομένων, λαβόντες
rather to-be-at-peace with all those wishing(-it) having-received
καὶ παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πάπα Ῥώμης εὐχὴν τοιάνδε ὡς
also from the same pope of-Rome (a)-blessing such that
εἴ τινες ἄλλοι ἐθνικοὶ κατὰ τῆς τῶν αὐτῶν Χρωβάτων
if any other heathens against the of-the same Croats
χώρας ἐπέλθωσιν καὶ πόλεμον ἐπενέγκωσιν, ἵνα ὁ τῶν
land come and war bring that the of-the
Χρωβάτων θεὸς προσπολεμεῖ καὶ προΐσταται, καὶ νίκας
Croats God may-fight-for(-them) and protect(-them) and victories
αὐτοῖς Πέτρος ὁ τοῦ Χριστοῦ μαθητὴς προξενεῖ· μετὰ δὲ
for-them Peter the — of-Christ disciple procure after and
χρόνους πολλοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις Τερπημέρη τοῦ ἄρχοντος,
years many in the days of-Terpimir the prince
τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἄρχοντος Κρασημέρη, ἐλθὼν ἀπὸ
the father of-the prince Krasimir having-come from
Φραγγίας τῆς μεταξὺ Χρωβατίας καὶ Βενετίας ἀνήρ
Frankland the(-one) between Croatia and Venice (a)-man
τις τῶν πάνυ μὲν εὐλαβῶν, Μαρτῖνος ὀνόματι, σχῆμα
certain of-the very indeed devout Martin by-name (a)-habit
δὲ κοσμικὸν περιβεβλημένος, ὃν καὶ λέγουσιν οἱ αὐτοὶ
and lay having-put-on whom also say the same
Χρωβάτοι θαύματα ἱκανὰ ποιῆσαι· ἀσθενὴς δὲ ὢν ὁ
Croats miracles considerable to-have-done infirm and being the
τοιοῦτος εὐλαβὴς ἀνὴρ καὶ τοὺς πόδας ἠκρωτηριασμένος,
such devout man and the feet maimed
ὥστε ὑπὸ τεσσάρων καὶ βαστάζεσθαι καὶ περιφέρεσθαι
so-that by four both to-be-carried and to-be-carried-about
ὅπου δ' ἂν καὶ βούληται, τὴν τοιαύτην τοῦ ἁγιωτάτου
wherever and — also he-might-wish the such of-the most-holy

πάπα ἐντολὴν τοῖς αὐτοῖς Χρωβάτοις διατηρεῖν μέχρι
pope command to-the same Croats to-keep until
τέλους ζωῆς αὐτῶν ἐπεθέσπισεν, ἐπευξάμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς
(the)-end of-life their he-decreed having-prayed and also he
αὐτοῖς τὴν ὁμοίαν τοῦ πάπα εὐχήν. διὰ τοῦτο οὔτε
for-them the like of-the pope blessing because-of this neither
αἱ σαγῆναι τῶν τοιούτων Χρωβάτων οὔτε αἱ κοντοῦραι
the galleys of-the such Croats nor the cutters
οὐδέποτε κατά τινος πρὸς πόλεμον ἀπέρχονται, εἰ μὴ ἄρα
ever against anyone for war go-away if not then
τις κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπέλθοι. πλὴν διὰ τῶν τοιούτων πλοίων
anyone against them should-come but through the such ships
ἀπέρχονται οἱ βουλόμενοι τῶν Χρωβάτων διοικεῖν ἐμπόρια,
go-away those wishing of-the Croats to-carry-on trade
ἀπὸ κάστρου εἰς κάστρον περιερχόμενοι τήν τε Παγανίαν
from fortress to fortress going-round — both Pagania
καὶ τὸν κόλπον τῆς Δελματίας καὶ μέχρι Βενετίας.
and the gulf — of-Dalmatia and as-far-as Venice
Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων Χρωβατίας ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἤγουν ἀπὸ
that the prince of-Croatia from (the)-beginning that-is from
τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως, δουλικῶς ἐστὶν
the reign of-Heraclius the emperor in-servitude is
ὑποτεταγμένος τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ οὐδέποτε τῷ
subjected to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans and never to-the
ἄρχοντι Βουλγαρίας καθυπετάγη. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ Βούλγαρος
prince of-Bulgaria was-subjected but not-even (a)-Bulgarian
ἀπῆλθε πρὸς πόλεμον κατὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων, εἰ μὴ Μιχαὴλ ὁ
went-away for war against the Croats if not Michael the
ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας, ὁ Βορώσης, ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολεμήσας
prince of-Bulgaria — Boris having-gone-away and having-warred
αὐτοῖς καὶ μηδὲν ἀνύσαι δυνηθεὶς εἰρήνευσε μετ᾽ αὐτῶν,
against-them and nothing to-accomplish having-been-able made-peace with them

ξενιάσας τοὺς Χρωβάτους καὶ ξενιασθεὶς παρὰ τῶν
having-given-gifts-to the Croats and having-received-gifts from the
Χρωβάτων. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ πώποτε οἱ Χρωβάτοι οὗτοι τοῖς
Croats but not-even ever the Croats these to-the
Βουλγάροις πάκτον δεδώκασιν, εἰ μὴ πολλάκις ἀμφότεροι
Bulgarians tribute have-given if not often both
ξένιά τινα πρὸς ἀλλήλους παρέσχον φιλοφρονήσεως ἕνεκα.
gifts some to each-other furnished of-friendliness for-the-sake
Ὅτι ἡ βαπτισμένη Χρωβατία εἰσὶ κάστρα οἰκούμενα
that the baptized Croatia there-are fortresses inhabited
ἡ Νόνα, τὸ Βελόγραδον, τὸ Βελίτζειν, τὸ Σκόρδονα, τὸ
— Nona — Belogradon — Belitzein — Skordona —
Χλεβένα, τὸ Στόλπον, τὸ Τενήν, τὸ Κόρι, τὸ Κλαβώκα.
Chlebena — Stolpon — Tenen — Kori — Klaboka
Ὅτι ἡ βαπτισμένη Χρωβατία ἐκβάλλει καβαλλαρικὸν ἕως
that the baptized Croatia puts-out cavalry up-to
τῶν ξ΄ χιλιάδων, πεζικὸν δὲ ἕως χιλιάδας ρ΄ καὶ σαγήνας
the 60 thousands infantry and up-to thousands 100 and galleys
μέχρι τῶν π΄ καὶ κοντούρας μέχρι τῶν ρ΄. καὶ αἱ μὲν
up-to the 80 and cutters up-to the 100 and the indeed
σαγῆναι ἔχουσιν ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν μ΄, αἱ δὲ κονδοῦραι ἀνὰ
galleys have each of-men 40 the and cutters each
ἀνδρῶν κ΄, αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι κονδοῦραι ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν ι΄.
of-men 20 the and smaller cutters each of-men 10
Ὅτι τὴν πολλὴν ταύτην δύναμιν καὶ τὸ τοῦ λαοῦ πλῆθος
that the great this force and the of-the people multitude
εἶχεν ἡ Χρωβατία μέχρι τοῦ ἄρχοντος Κρασημέρη, κἀκείνου
had — Croatia until the prince Krasimir and-that-one
μὲν τελευτήσαντος, τοῦ δὲ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ Μιροσθλάβου
indeed having-died the and son his Miroslav
ἄρξαντος ἔτη τέσσαρα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ Πριβουνία βοεάνου
having-ruled years four and by — Pribounias ban

ἀναιρεθέντος, καὶ διχονοιῶν καὶ πολλῶν διχοστασιῶν εἰς
having-been-killed and dissensions and many divisions in
τὴν χώραν γενομένων, ἠλάττωται καὶ τὸ καβαλλαρικὸν
the land having-arisen have-been-diminished both the cavalry
καὶ τὸ πεζικὸν καὶ αἱ σαγῆναι καὶ αἱ κονδοῦραι τῆς ἐξουσίας
and the infantry and the galleys and the cutters of-the dominion
τῶν Χρωβάτων. ἀρτίως δὲ ἔχει σαγήνας λ΄, κονδούρας
of-the Croats now and it-has galleys 30 cutters
μεγάλας καὶ μικράς, καὶ καβαλλαρικὸν καὶ πεζικόν.
great and small and cavalry and infantry
Ὅτι ἡ μεγάλη Χρωβατία καὶ ἡ ἄσπρη ἐπονομαζομένη
that the great Croatia and the white called
ἀβάπτιστος τυγχάνει μέχρι τῆς σήμερον, καθὼς καὶ οἱ
unbaptized is until the today as also the
πλησιάζοντες αὐτὴν Σέρβλοι. ὀλιγώτερον καβαλλαρικὸν
bordering-on it Serbs less cavalry
ἐκβάλλουσιν, ὁμοίως καὶ πεζικὸν παρὰ τὴν βαπτισμένην
put-out likewise also infantry than the baptized
Χρωβατίαν ὡς συνεχέστερον πραιδευόμενοι παρά τε τῶν
Croatia as more-constantly being-plundered by both the
Φράγγων καὶ Τούρκων καὶ Πατζινακιτῶν. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ
Franks and Turks and Pechenegs but not-even
σαγήνας κέκτηνται οὔτε κονδούρας οὔτε ἐμπορευτικὰ
galleys they-possess nor cutters nor merchant
πλοῖα, ὡς μηκόθεν οὔσης τῆς θαλάσσης· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῶν
ships as far-off being the sea from for the
ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς θαλάσσης ὁδός ἐστιν ἡμερῶν λ΄. ἡ
there as-far-as the sea (a)-journey it-is of-days 30 the
δὲ θάλασσα εἰς ἣν διὰ τῶν ἡμερῶν λ΄ κατέρχονται,
and sea to which through the days 30 they-come-down
ἐστὶν ἡ λεγομένη Σκοτεινή.
is the called Dark

The Serbs, from White Serbia, took refuge with Heraclius, who settled them in lands the Avars had emptied and had them baptized. Their princes are traced from Vlastimir through quarrels among brothers and cousins, with Bulgarian interference and Byzantine support. Symeon of Bulgaria emptied the land by treachery. Tzeeslav returned to find only fifty men and rebuilt Serbia with the emperor's help.

περὶ τῶν Σέρβλων καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
concerning the Serbs and which now they-inhabit land

Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ Σέρβλοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Σέρβλων
(one)-must-know that the Serbs from the unbaptized Serbs

τῶν καὶ ἄσπρων ἐπονομαζομένων κατάγονται, τῶν τῆς
those also white called are-descended those —

Τουρκίας ἐκεῖθεν κατοικούντων εἰς τὸν παρ' αὐτοῖς Βόϊκι
of-Turkey beyond dwelling in the among them Boïki

τόπον ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἐν οἷς πλησιάζει καὶ ἡ Φραγγία,
place named in which borders also — Frankland

ὁμοίως καὶ ἡ μεγάλη Χρωβατία ἡ ἀβάπτιστος ἡ καὶ
likewise also the great Croatia the unbaptized the(-one) also

ἄσπρη προσαγορευομένη· ἐκεῖσε οὖν καὶ οὗτοι οἱ Σέρβλοι
white called there then also these the Serbs

τὸ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς κατῴκουν. δύο δὲ ἀδελφῶν τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς
the from (the)-beginning dwelt two and brothers the rule —

Σερβλίας ἐκ τοῦ πατρὸς διαδεξαμένων, ὁ εἷς αὐτῶν τὸ
of-Serbia from the father having-succeeded-to the one of-them the

τοῦ λαοῦ ἀναλαβόμενος ἥμισυ εἰς Ἡράκλειον τὸν βασιλέα
of-the people having-taken half to Heraclius the emperor

Ῥωμαίων προσέφυγεν, ὃν καὶ προσδεξάμενος ὁ αὐτὸς
of-(the)-Romans took-refuge whom also having-received the same

Ἡράκλειος βασιλεὺς παρέσχε τόπον εἰς κατασκήνωσιν ἐν
Heraclius emperor provided (a)-place for settlement in

τῷ θέματι Θεσσαλονίκης τὰ Σέρβλια, ἃ ἔκτοτε τὴν
the theme of-Thessalonike — Servlia which from-then the
τοιαύτην προσηγορίαν παρείληφε. Σέρβλοι δὲ τῇ τῶν
such name has-received Serbs and in-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ δοῦλοι προσαγορεύονται· ὅθεν καὶ
Romans dialect slaves are-called whence also
σέρβουλα ἡ κοινὴ συνήθεια τὰ δουλικῶς φησὶν ὑποδήματα,
serboula the common usage the servile says(-it) shoes
καὶ τζερβουλιανοὺς τοὺς τὰ εὐτελῆ καὶ πενιχρὰ ὑποδήματα
and tzerboulianoi those the cheap and poor shoes
φοροῦντας. ταύτην δὲ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἔσχον οἱ Σέρβλοι
wearing this and the name had the Serbs
διὰ τὸ δοῦλοι γενέσθαι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων. μετὰ
because-of the slaves to-become of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans after
δὲ χρόνον τινὰ ἔδοξε τοὺς αὐτοὺς Σέρβλους εἰς τὰ
and time some it-seemed the same Serbs to the
ἴδια ἀπελθεῖν, καὶ τούτους ἀπέστειλεν ὁ βασιλεύς· ὅτε
own(-parts) to-go-away and them sent-off the emperor when
δὲ διεπέρασαν τὸν Δάνουβιν ποταμόν, μετάμελοι γενόμενοι
and they-had-crossed the Danube river repentant having-become
ἐμήνυσαν Ἡρακλείῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ διὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ τοῦ
they-sent-word to-Heraclius the emperor through the general the
τότε τὸ Βελόγραδον κρατοῦντος δοῦναι αὐτοῖς ἑτέραν γῆν
then — Belgrade holding to-give to-them other land
εἰς κατασκήνωσιν. καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἡ νῦν Σερβλία καὶ Παγανία
for settlement and since the now Serbia and Pagania
καὶ ἡ ὀνομαζομένη Ζαχλούμων χώρα καὶ Τερβουνία
and the named of-(the)-Zachlumi land and Terbounia
καὶ ἡ τῶν Καναλιτῶν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ βασιλέως
and the of-the Kanalites under the authority of-the emperor
Ῥωμαίων ὑπῆρχον, ἐγένοντο δὲ αἱ τοιαῦται χῶραι ἔρημαι
of-(the)-Romans were had-become and the such lands deserted

παρὰ τῶν Ἀβάρων (ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε γὰρ Ῥωμάνους τοὺς
by the Avars from the there for Romani those
νῦν Δελματίαν καὶ τὸ Δυρράχιον οἰκοῦντας ἀπήλασαν),
now Dalmatia and — Dyrrachium inhabiting they-had-driven-out
καὶ κατεσκήνωσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς αὐτοὺς Σέρβλους ἐν
and settled the emperor the same Serbs in
ταῖς τοιαύταις χώραις. καὶ ἦσαν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων
the such lands and they-were to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans
ὑποτασσόμενοι· οὓς ὁ βασιλεὺς πρεσβύτας ἀπὸ Ῥώμης
subject whom the emperor elders from Rome
ἀγαγὼν ἐβάπτισε, καὶ διδάξας αὐτοὺς τὰ τῆς
having-brought baptized and having-taught them the(-works) of-the
εὐσεβείας τελεῖν καλῶς αὐτοῖς τῶν χρόνων πίστιν
piety to-perform well to-them of-the times faith
ἐξέθετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ Βουλγαρία ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἦν τῶν
set-out since and — Bulgaria under the authority was of-the
Ῥωμαίων, αὐτοῦ οὖν ἄρχοντος τοῦ Σέρβλου τοῦ εἰς
Romans that then prince the Serb the(-one) to
τὸν βασιλέα προσφυγόντος τελευτήσαντος, κατὰ διαδοχὴν
the emperor having-taken-refuge having-died by succession
ἦρξεν ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ πάλιν ὁ ἔγγων, καὶ οὕτως ἐκ
ruled the son his and again the grandson and thus from
τῆς γενεᾶς αὐτοῦ οἱ καθεξῆς ἄρχοντες. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους
the family his the successive princes after and years
τινὰς ἐγεννήθη ἐξ αὐτῶν ὁ Βοισέσθλαβος καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ
some was-born of them — Boïseslav and from him
ὁ Ῥοδόσθλαβος καὶ ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνου ὁ Προσηγόης καὶ ἐξ
— Rhodoslav and from that-one — Prosegoes and from
ἐκείνου ὁ Βλαστήμερος, καὶ μέχρις αὐτοῦ τοῦ Βλαστημέρου
that-one — Vlastimir and up-to himself — Vlastimir
μετὰ τῶν Σέρβλων εἰρηνικῶς διετέλουν οἱ Βούλγαροι ὡς
with the Serbs peaceably continued the Bulgarians as

γείτονες καὶ συνορῖται ἀγαπῶντες ἀλλήλους, ἔχοντες δὲ
neighbors and borderers loving each-other having and
δούλωσιν καὶ ὑποταγὴν εἰς τοὺς βασιλεῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
servitude and subjection to the emperors of-the Romans
καὶ εὐεργετούμενοι παρ᾽ αὐτῶν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τοῦ
and being-benefited by them under and the rule of-the
αὐτοῦ Βλαστημέρου ἦλθεν μετὰ πολέμου Πρεσιὰμ ὁ ἄρχων
same Vlastimir came with war Presiam the prince
Βουλγαρίας κατὰ τῶν Σέρβλων, θέλων αὐτοὺς ὑποτάξαι·
of-Bulgaria against the Serbs wishing them to-subject
ἀλλ᾽ ἐπὶ τριετίαν πολεμήσας οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν ἤνυσεν,
but for three-years having-warred not only nothing he-accomplished
ἀλλὰ καὶ λαὸν αὐτοῦ πλεῖστον ἀπώλεσε. μετὰ δὲ θάνατον
but also people his very-much he-lost after and (the)-death
Βλαστημέρου τοῦ ἄρχοντος διεδέξαντο τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς
of-Vlastimir the prince succeeded-to the rule —
Σερβλίας οἱ τρεῖς υἱοὶ αὐτοῦ ὁ Μουντιμῆρος καὶ ὁ
of-Serbia the three sons his — Mountimir and —
Στροήμερος καὶ ὁ Γοΐνικος, μερισάμενοι τὴν χώραν. ἐπὶ
Stroimir and — Goïnik having-divided the land under
τούτων παρεγένετο ὁ τῆς Βουλγαρίας ἄρχων Μιχαὴλ ὁ
these came the — of-Bulgaria prince Michael —
Βορίσης θέλων ἐκδικῆσαι τὴν ἧτταν Πρεσιὰμ τοῦ πατρὸς
Boris wishing to-avenge the defeat of-Presiam the father
αὐτοῦ· καὶ πολεμήσας, εἰς τοσοῦτον αὐτὸν ἐπτόησαν οἱ
his and having-warred to such-a-degree him terrified the
Σέρβλοι ὥστε καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Βλαστήμερον ἐκράτησαν
Serbs that also the son his Vlastimir they-held
δέσμιον μετὰ καὶ βολιάδων δώδεκα μεγάλων. τότε δὲ
(as)-prisoner with also boyars twelve great then and
τῇ τοῦ υἱοῦ θλίψει καὶ μὴ θέλων ὁ Βορίσης εἰρήνευσε
by-the of-the son affliction even not wishing — Boris made-peace

μετὰ τῶν Σέρβλων. μέλλων δὲ ὑποστρέφειν ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ,
with the Serbs being-about and to-return to Bulgaria
καὶ φοβηθεὶς μήποτε ἐνεδρεύσωσιν αὐτὸν οἱ Σέρβλοι καθ᾽
and having-feared lest they-ambush him the Serbs on
ὁδοῦ, ἐπεζήτησεν εἰς διάσωσιν αὐτοῦ τὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
(the)-road he-sought-for for safe-conduct his the of-the prince
Μουντιμήρου παιδία, τὸν Βόρενα καὶ τὸν Στέφανον· οἳ
Mountimir children — Boren and — Stephen who
καὶ διέσωσαν αὐτὸν ἀβλαβῆ μέχρι τῶν συνόρων ἕως τῆς
also brought him unharmed as-far-as the borders up-to —
Ῥάσης. καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης χάριτος δέδωκεν αὐτοῖς
Rasa and for the such favor gave to-them
Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βορίσης δωρεὰς μεγάλας· καὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἀντέδωκαν
Michael — Boris gifts great and they gave-back
αὐτῷ χάριν ξενίων ψυχάρια δύο, φαλκώνια δύο, σκυλία
to-him by-way of-gifts slaves two falcons two dogs
δύο καὶ γοῦνας ἐννενήκοντα· ὅπερ λέγουσιν οἱ Βούλγαροι
two and furs ninety which say the Bulgarians
εἶναι πάκτον. μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ ἐγένοντο κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων
to-be tribute after little and became against each-other
οἱ τρεῖς ἀδελφοὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες Σερβλίας· καὶ γενόμενος
the three brothers the princes of-Serbia and having-become
ἐπικρατέστερος ὁ εἷς αὐτῶν ὁ Μουντίμηρος, καὶ θέλων
more-powerful the one of-them — Mountimir and wishing
μόνος τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐπέχειν, κρατήσας παρέδωκε τοὺς δύο
alone the rule to-hold having-seized(-them) he-handed-over the two
ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, μόνον τὸ παιδίον τοῦ ἑνὸς ἀδελφοῦ Γοϊνίκου
to Bulgaria only the child of-the one brother Goïnik
Πέτρον ὀνόματι παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ κρατήσας καὶ ἐπιμελούμενος,
Peter by-name with himself having-kept and caring-for(-him)
ὅστις καὶ φυγὼν ἦλθεν εἰς Χρωβατίαν· περὶ οὗ μετ᾽
who also having-fled came to Croatia about whom after

ὀλίγον ῥηθήσεται. ὁ δὲ προρρηθεὶς ἀδελφὸς ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ
little it-will-be-told the and aforesaid brother in Bulgaria
Στροήμερος εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Κλονίμηρον, ᾧ καὶ γυναῖκα
Stroimir had (a)-son — Klonimir to-whom also (a)-wife
παρέσχεν ὁ Βορίσης Βουλγάραν. ἐξ αὐτοῦ γεννᾶται
provided — Boris (a)-Bulgarian-woman from him is-born
ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ Τζεεσθλάβος. ὁ δὲ Μουντίμηρος τοὺς δύο
in Bulgaria Tzeeslav — and Mountimir the two
ἀδελφοὺς διώξας καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν δεξάμενος γεννᾷ
brothers having-driven-out and the rule having-received begets
υἱοὺς τρεῖς, τὸν Πριβέσθλαβον καὶ τὸν Βράνον καὶ τὸν
sons three — Pribeslav and — Bran and —
Στέφανον, καὶ μετὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ θάνατον διαδέχεται αὐτὸν
Stephen and after the his death succeeds him
ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς ὁ Πριβέσθλαβος. μετὰ οὖν χρόνον ἕνα
the first son — Pribeslav after then year one
ἐξελθὼν ἀπὸ Χρωβατίας ὁ προειρημένος Πέτρος ὁ
having-come-out from Croatia the aforesaid Peter the
υἱὸς τοῦ Γοϊνίκου διώκει ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς τὸν ἐξάδελφον
son — of-Goïnik drives from the rule the cousin
αὐτοῦ Πριβέσθλαβον μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν, κἀκεῖνος
his Pribeslav with the two brothers and-he
τὴν ἀρχὴν διαδέχεται· ἐκεῖνοι δὲ φυγόντες εἰσέρχονται
the rule succeeds-to those and having-fled enter
ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τρεῖς ἐλθὼν ὁ Βράνος
into Croatia after and years three having-come — Bran
πρὸς τὸ πολεμῆσαι τὸν Πέτρον καὶ ἡττηθεὶς καὶ
for the to-war-upon — Peter and having-been-defeated and
κρατηθεὶς παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐτυφλώθη. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους δύο
having-been-seized by him was-blinded after and years two
φυγὼν καὶ Κλονίμηρος ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίας ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ
having-fled also Klonimir from Bulgaria the father —

Τζεεσθλάβου καταλαμβάνει καὶ αὐτός, καὶ εἰσέρχεται εἰς
of-Tzeeslav arrives also he and enters into
ἓν κάστρον τῆς Σερβλίας τὴν Δοστινίκαν μετὰ λαοῦ
one fortress — of-Serbia — Destinikon with people
πρὸς τὸ παραλαβεῖν τὴν ἀρχήν. τοῦτον οὖν πολεμήσας ὁ
for the to-take-over the rule him then having-warred —
Πέτρος ἀπέκτεινεν, καὶ ἐκράτησεν ἕτερα ἔτη κ΄. ἄρξας
Peter killed and held-power other years 20 having-ruled
ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ μακαριωτάτου καὶ ἁγίου
under the reign of-Leo the most-blessed and holy
βασιλέως, ἔχων ὑποταγὴν καὶ δούλωσιν πρὸς αὐτόν.
emperor having subjection and servitude toward him
εἰρήνευσε δὲ καὶ μετὰ Συμεὼν τοῦ ἄρχοντος Βουλγαρίας,
he-made-peace and also with Symeon the prince of-Bulgaria
ὥστε καὶ σύντεκνον αὐτὸν ἐποίησε. μετὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν
so-that also co-sponsor him he-made after and the time
ὃν αὐτὸς ὁ κῦρις Λέων ἐβασίλευσε, παρεγένετο ὁ τότε
in-which he the lord Leo reigned came the then
εἰς τὸ Δυρράχιον στρατηγῶν, ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων
at — Dyrrachium being-general the protospatharius Leo
ὁ Ῥαβδοῦχος, ὁ μετὰ τοῦτο μάγιστρος τιμηθεὶς καὶ
the Rhabdouchos the(-one) after this (as)-magistros honored and
λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου, εἰς Παγανίαν τὴν τότε παρὰ τοῦ
logothete of-the course to Pagania the(-land) then by the
ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας διακρατουμένην, πρὸς τὸ βουλευθῆναι
prince of-Serbia held for the to-take-counsel
καὶ συντυχεῖν τῷ αὐτῷ ἄρχοντι Πέτρῳ περί τινος
and to-meet-with the same prince Peter about some
δουλώσεως καὶ ὑποθέσεως. ζηλοτυπήσας δὲ πρὸς τοῦτο
service and matter having-been-jealous and at this
Μιχαὴλ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Ζαχλούμων ἐμήνυσε Συμεὼν τῷ
Michael the prince of-the Zachlumi sent-word to-Symeon the

Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντι ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων δεξιοῦται
of-Bulgarians prince that the emperor of-(the)-Romans wins-over
διὰ δώρων τὸν ἄρχοντα Πέτρον πρὸς τὸ συνεπαρεῖν τοὺς
by gifts the prince Peter for the to-lift-up-together the
Τούρκους καὶ ἐπελθεῖν κατὰ Βουλγαρίας· ἐγένετο δὲ καὶ
Turks and to-come against Bulgaria happened and also
κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον καὶ πόλεμος εἰς Ἀχελῶν μεταξὺ
at the time that also (a)-war at Achelous between
τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ τῶν Βουλγάρων. ἐμμανὴς οὖν γενόμενος
the Romans and the Bulgarians enraged then having-become
ἐν τούτῳ ὁ Συμεὼν κατὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας Πέτρου
in this — Symeon against the prince of-Serbia Peter
ἀπέστειλε τὸν Σιγρίτζη Θεόδωρον καὶ τὸν Μαρμαὴν ἐκεῖνον
sent — Sigritzes Theodore and — Marmaem that
μετὰ φοσσάτου, ἔχοντας καὶ ἀρχοντόπουλον Παῦλον
with (an)-army having also (a)-prince's-son Paul
τὸν υἱὸν Βράνου, ὃν ὁ Πέτρος ὁ ἄρχων Σερβλίας
the son of-Bran whom — Peter the prince of-Serbia
ἐτύφλωσε. δόλῳ οὖν ἐπελθόντες οἱ Βούλγαροι πρὸς τὸν
blinded by-guile then having-come the Bulgarians to the
ἄρχοντα Σερβλίας, καὶ συντεκνίαν μετ' αὐτοῦ ποιησάμενοι,
prince of-Serbia and co-sponsorship with him having-made
καὶ ὅρκῳ βεβαιώσαντες μὴ παθεῖν τι παρ' αὐτῶν
and by-oath having-confirmed not to-suffer anything from them
ἐναντίον, ἠπάτησαν αὐτὸν ἐξελθεῖν πρὸς αὐτούς, ὃν
contrary deceived him to-come-out to them whom
καὶ παραυτὰ δεσμήσαντες εἰσήγαγον ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, καὶ
also immediately having-bound they-brought-in to Bulgaria and
ἀποθνήσκει ἐν φυλακῇ. εἰσῆλθε δὲ ἀντ' αὐτοῦ Παῦλος
he-dies in prison entered and in-place-of him Paul
ὁ υἱὸς Βράνου, καὶ ἐκράτησεν ἔτη τρία. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
the son of-Bran and held-power years three the and emperor

ὁ κῦρις Ῥωμανὸς ἔχων ἀρχοντόπουλον ἐν τῇ πόλει
the lord Romanos having (a)-prince's-son in the city
Ζαχαρίαν τὸν υἱὸν Πριβεσθλάβου τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας
Zacharias the son of-Pribeslav the prince of-Serbia
ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸ γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα ἐν Σερβλίᾳ· ἀλλὰ
sent(-him) for the to-become prince in Serbia but
ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολεμήσας ἡττήθη παρὰ τοῦ Παύλου·
having-gone-away and having-warred he-was-defeated by — Paul
κρατήσας γὰρ αὐτὸν παρέδωκε τοῖς Βουλγάροις,
having-seized for him he-handed(-him)-over to-the Bulgarians
καὶ ἐκρατεῖτο δέσμιος. εἶτα μετὰ χρόνους τρεῖς, τοῦ
and he-was-held (a)-prisoner then after years three —
Παύλου ἐναντιωθέντος τοῖς Βουλγάροις, ἀπέστειλε τὸν
Paul having-opposed the Bulgarians he-sent —
Ζαχαρίαν τὸν πρότερον παρὰ τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ
Zacharias the(-one) formerly by the lord Romanos
τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντα, καὶ διώξας τὸν Παῦλον
the emperor sent and having-driven-out — Paul
ἐκράτησεν αὐτὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν τῶν Σέρβλων· ὅστις παραυτὰ
held he the rule of-the Serbs who immediately
τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων ἐπιμνησθεὶς
of-the benefactions of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans having-remembered
ἐγένετο κατὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων, μηδ' ὅλως θελήσας
turned against the Bulgarians not at-all having-wished
ὑποταγῆναι αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως μᾶλλον
to-be-subjected to-them but by the emperor rather
Ῥωμαίων δεσπόζεσθαι. ὥστε καὶ τοῦ Συμεὼν φοσσάτον
of-(the)-Romans to-be-ruled so-that also — Symeon (an)-army
κατ' αὐτοῦ ἀποστείλαντος διὰ τοῦ Μαρμαὴμ καὶ τοῦ
against him having-sent through — Marmaem and —
Σιγρίτζη Θεοδώρου, ὧν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ ἅρματα
Sigritzes Theodore whose also the heads and arms

ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
from the war he-sent to the emperor of-(the)-Romans
ἐπινίκια (ἔτι γὰρ μεταξὺ Ῥωμαίων καὶ Βουλγάρων μάχη
(as)-trophies still for between (the)-Romans and Bulgarians battle
ἦν), οὐδέποτε δὲ ἐπαύσατο, καθὼς καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ
was never and ceased as also the before him
ἄρχοντες ἀπέστελλον πρὸς τοὺς βασιλεῖς Ῥωμαίων, καὶ
princes sent to the emperors of-(the)-Romans both
ὑποτασσόμενος καὶ δουλεύων αὐτοῖς. πάλιν δὲ ἀπέστειλεν
being-subject and serving them again and sent
ἕτερον φοσσάτον ὁ Συμεὼν διὰ τοῦ Κνήνου καὶ
another army — Symeon through — Knenos and
τοῦ Ἡμνήκου καὶ τοῦ Ἠτζβόκλια κατὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
— Hemnekos and — Etzboklias against the prince
Ζαχαρίου, συναποστείλας μετ' αὐτῶν καὶ Τζεέσθλαβον.
Zacharias having-sent-along with them also Tzeeslav
τότε ὁ μὲν Ζαχαρίας φοβηθεὶς φεύγει ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ·
then — indeed Zacharias having-feared flees to Croatia
οἱ δὲ Βούλγαροι μηνύσαντες τοῖς ζουπάνοις ἐλθεῖν πρὸς
the and Bulgarians having-sent-word to-the zupans to-come to
αὐτοὺς καὶ παραλαβεῖν ἄρχοντα τὸν Τζεέσθλαβον, καὶ
them and to-take-over (as)-prince — Tzeeslav and
δι' ὅρκου τούτους ἀπατήσαντες καὶ ἐξαγαγόντες μέχρι
by oath them having-deceived and having-led-out as-far-as
τοῦ πρώτου χωρίου, καὶ παραυτὰ δεσμήσαντες αὐτούς,
the first village and immediately having-bound them
εἰσῆλθον ἐν Σερβλίᾳ καὶ συνεπῆραν τὸν ἅπαντα λαὸν ἀπὸ
entered into Serbia and took-up-together the whole people from
μικροῦ ἕως μεγάλου, καὶ εἰσήγαγον ἕως Βουλγαρίας·
small to great and brought(-them)-in as-far-as Bulgaria
τινὲς δὲ ἀποδράσαντες εἰσῆλθον καὶ ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ, καὶ
some and having-run-away entered also into Croatia and

ἔμεινεν ἡ χώρα ἔρημος. κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν οὖν ἐκεῖνον
remained the land deserted at the time then that
εἰσῆλθον οἱ αὐτοὶ Βούλγαροι εἰς Χρωβατίαν μετὰ τοῦ
entered the same Bulgarians into Croatia with —
Ἀλογοβότουρ τοῦ πολεμῆσαι, καὶ ἐσφάγησαν πάντες
Alogobotour for-the to-war and were-slaughtered all
ἐκεῖσε παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους ἑπτὰ ἀπὸ
there by the Croats after and years seven from
τῶν Βουλγάρων φυγὼν ὁ Τζεέσθλαβος μετὰ καὶ ἑτέρων
the Bulgarians having-fled — Tzeeslav with also other
τεσσάρων ἀπὸ Πρεσθλάβου εἰσῆλθεν ἐν Σερβλίᾳ, οὐχ
four from Preslav entered into Serbia not
εὗρε δὲ εἰς τὴν χώραν εἰ μὴ πεντήκοντα μόνους ἄνδρας
he-found and in the land if not fifty only men
μήτε γυναῖκας ἔχοντας μήτε παιδία, ἀλλὰ κυνηγοῦντας
neither wives having nor children but hunting
καὶ διατρεφομένους. μετὰ τούτων κρατήσας τὴν χώραν
and being-maintained with these having-held the land
ἐμήνυσε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων, τὴν ἐξ αὐτοῦ
he-sent-word to the emperor of-(the)-Romans the from him
ἀντίληψιν καὶ βοήθειαν ἐπιζητῶν, ὑπισχνούμενος δουλεύειν
support and help seeking promising to-serve
καὶ ὑπείκειν τῇ προστάξει αὐτοῦ καθὼς καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ
and to-yield to-the command his as also the before him
ἄρχοντες. καὶ ἔκτοτε οὐ διέλιπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων
princes and from-then not ceased the emperor of-(the)-Romans
εὐεργετῶν αὐτόν, ὥστε καὶ εἰς Χρωβατίαν καὶ Βουλγαρίαν
benefiting him so-that also in Croatia and Bulgaria
καὶ ἐν ταῖς λοιπαῖς χώραις διάγοντες Σέρβλοι, οὓς ὁ
and in the other lands living Serbs whom —
Συμεὼν διεσκόρπισε, τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες συνήχθησαν εἰς
Symeon scattered this having-heard were-gathered to

αὐτόν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν τῇ πόλει πολλοὶ ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίας
him but also in the city many from Bulgaria
φυγόντες εἰσῆλθον· οὓς καὶ ἐνδύσας καὶ εὐεργετήσας ὁ
having-fled entered whom also having-clothed and having-benefited the
βασιλεὺς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν Τζεέσθλαβον.
emperor of-the Romans sent to — Tzeeslav
καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλουσίων δωρεῶν τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν
and from the rich gifts of-the emperor of-the
Ῥωμαίων συστησάμενος καὶ ἐνοικήσας τὴν χώραν ὡς τὸ
Romans having-established and having-settled the land as the
πρότερόν ἐστιν ὑποτεταγμένος δουλοπρεπῶς τῷ βασιλεῖ
before he-is subjected servilely to-the emperor
Ῥωμαίων, καὶ διὰ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως συνδρομῆς καὶ τῶν
of-(the)-Romans and through the of-the emperor assistance and the
πολλῶν αὐτοῦ εὐεργεσιῶν τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν συστήσας
many his benefactions the such land having-established
καὶ ἄρχων ἐν αὐτῇ βεβαιωθείς.
and (as)-prince in it confirmed
Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων Σερβλίας ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἤγουν ἀπὸ
that the prince of-Serbia from (the)-beginning that-is from
τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως, δουλικῶς ἐστὶν
the reign of-Heraclius the emperor in-servitude is
ὑποτεταγμένος τῷ Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ, καὶ οὐδέποτε τῷ
subjected to-the of-(the)-Romans emperor and never to-the
ἄρχοντι Βουλγαρίας καθυπετάγη.
prince of-Bulgaria was-subjected
Ὅτι ἐν τῇ βαπτισμένῃ Σερβλίᾳ εἰσὶ κάστρα οἰκούμενα
that in the baptized Serbia there-are fortresses inhabited
τὸ Δεστινίκον, τὸ Τζερναβουσκεή, τὸ Μεγυρέτους, τὸ
— Destinikon — Tzernavouskee — Megyretous —

Δρεσνεήκ, τὸ Λεσνήκ, τὸ Σαληνές, καὶ εἰς τὸ χωρίον
Dresneek — Lesneek — Salenes and in the district
Βόσωνα τὸ Κάτερα καὶ τὸ Δεσνήκ.
Bosona — Katera and — Desneek

XXXIII · THE ZACHLUMI

The land of the Zachlumi, once held by the Romani and wasted by the Avars, is settled by Serbs who came under Heraclius. Their name means behind the hill, and the family of their prince Michael came from the Vistula.

περὶ τῶν Ζαχλούμων, καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
concerning the Zachlumi and which now they-inhabit land
Ὅτι ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων χώρα παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμάνων πρότερον
that the of-the Zachlumi land by the Romani formerly
ἐκρατεῖτο, Ῥωμάνων δέ φημι οὓς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης Διοκλητιανὸς
was-held Romani and I-mean whom from Rome Diocletian
ὁ βασιλεὺς μετῴκισε, καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὴν τῶν Χρωβάτων
the emperor transplanted as also in the of-the Croats
ἱστορίαν εἴρηται περὶ αὐτῶν. ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ δὲ Ῥωμαίων
history has-been-said about them under (the)-emperor and of-(the)-Romans
ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων αὕτη χώρα ὑπῆρχεν, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῶν
the of-the Zachlumi this land was but by the
Ἀβάρων αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα ἥ τε χώρα καὶ ὁ ταύτης λαὸς τὸ
Avars having-been-made-captive the both land and the its people the
παράπαν ἠρήμωται. οἱ δὲ νῦν ἐκεῖσε οἰκοῦντες Ζαχλοῦμοι
at-all has-been-laid-waste the and now there dwelling Zachlumi
Σέρβλοι τυγχάνουσιν, ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ εἰς τὸν
Serbs are from that the prince the(-one) to the
βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος. Ζαχλοῦμοι δὲ
emperor of-(the)-Romans Heraclius having-taken-refuge Zachlumi and

ὠνομάσθησαν ἀπὸ ὄρους οὕτω καλουμένου Χλούμου. καὶ
they-were-named from (a)-mountain so called Chloumos and
ἄλλως δὲ παρὰ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἑρμηνεύεται τὸ
otherwise too in the of-the Slavs dialect is-interpreted the
Ζαχλοῦμοι ἤγουν ὀπίσω τοῦ βουνοῦ, ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ
Zachlumi that-is behind the hill since in the such
χωρίῳ βουνός ἐστι μέγας, ἔχων ἄνωθεν αὐτοῦ δύο κάστρα,
district (a)-hill is great having above it two fortresses
τὸ Βόνα καὶ τὸ Χλούμ. ὄπισθεν δέ τοῦ τοιούτου βουνοῦ
— Bona and — Chloum behind and the such hill
διέρχεται ποταμὸς καλούμενος Βόνα, ὃ ἑρμηνεύεται καλόν.
passes (a)-river called Bona which is-interpreted good
Ὅτι ἡ γενεὰ τοῦ ἀνθυπάτου καὶ πατρικίου Μιχαὴλ τοῦ
that the family of-the proconsul and patrician Michael the
υἱοῦ τοῦ Βουσεβούτζη τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν Ζαχλούμων ἦλθεν
son — of-Bouseboutzes the prince of-the Zachlumi came
ἀπὸ τῶν κατοικούντων ἀβαπτίστων εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν
from those dwelling unbaptized on the river
Βίσλας, τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Διτζίκη, καὶ ᾤκησεν εἰς
Vistula the(-one) named Ditzike and settled on
τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ζαχλούμα.
the river the(-one) named Zachlouma
Ὅτι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ τῶν Ζαχλούμων εἰσὶ κάστρα
that in the district of-the Zachlumi there-are fortresses
οἰκούμενα τὸ Σταγνόν, τὸ Μοκρισκίκ, τὸ Ἰοσλή, τὸ
inhabited — Stagnon — Mokriskik — Iosle —
Γαλουμαήνικ, τὸ Δοβρισκίκ.
Galoumaenik — Dobriskik

Their land was settled by unbaptized Serbs. Vlastimir married his daughter to Krainas, son of the zupan of Terbounia, and made him prince. Terbounia means strong place, and Kanali means wagon road, since the land is flat.

περὶ τῶν Τερβουνιατῶν καὶ τῶν Καναλιτῶν καὶ ἧς
concerning the Terbouniotes and the Kanalites and which
νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
now they-inhabit land
Ὅτι ἡ τῶν Τερβουνιατῶν καὶ τῶν Καναλιτῶν χώρα
that the of-the Terbouniotes and the Kanalites land
μία ὑπάρχει. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Σέρβλων οἱ
one is from and the unbaptized Serbs those
ἐκεῖσε κατάγονται, οἱ ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος οἰκοῦντες
there are-descended those from that the prince dwelling
τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλέα Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος ἀπὸ
the(-one) to the emperor Heraclius having-taken-refuge from
τῆς ἀβαπτίστου Σερβλίας μέχρι τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας
the unbaptized Serbia until the prince of-Serbia
τοῦ Βλαστημέρου. οὗτος οὖν ὁ ἄρχων Βλαστήμερος
— Vlastimir this then the prince Vlastimir
τῇ ἰδίᾳ θυγατρὶ δέδωκεν ἄνδρα Κραΐναν τὸν υἱὸν
to-the own daughter gave (as)-husband Krainas the son
Βελάη τοῦ ζουπάνου Τερβουνίας. θέλων οὗτος τὸν ἴδιον
of-Belaes the zupan of-Terbounia wishing he the own
γαμβρὸν δοξάσαι ὠνόμασεν αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα, ποιήσας αὐτὸν
son-in-law to-glorify named him prince having-made him
αὐτεξούσιον. ἐξ ἐκείνου δὲ ὁ Φαλιμέρης ἐγεννήθη, καὶ
independent from that and — Phalimer was-born and
ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνου ὁ Τζουτζημέρης. ἦσαν δὲ οἱ τῆς Τερβουνίας
from that-one — Tzoutzimer were and the — of-Terbounia

ἄρχοντες ἀεὶ ὑπὸ τὸν λόγον τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας.
princes always under the word of-the prince of-Serbia
Τερβουνία δὲ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἑρμηνεύεται
Terbounia and in-the of-the Slavs dialect is-interpreted
ἰσχυρὸς τόπος· ἡ γὰρ τοιαύτη χώρα ὀχυρώματα ἔχει πολλά.
strong place the for such land strongholds has many
Ὅτι ἐστὶ καὶ ἑτέρα χώρα ὑπὸ ταύτην τὴν χώραν
that there-is also another land under this the land
Τερβουνίας, Καναλὴ προσαγορευομένη. τὸ δὲ Καναλὴ
of-Terbounia Kanali called — and Kanali
ἑρμηνεύεται τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἁμαξιά, ἐπειδή,
is-interpreted in-the of-the Slavs dialect wagon-road since
διὰ τὸ εἶναι τὸν τόπον ἐπίπεδον, πάσας αὐτῶν τὰς
because-of the to-be the place level all their the
δουλείας διὰ ἁμαξῶν ἐκτελοῦσιν.
services by wagons they-carry-out
Ὅτι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ Τερβουνίας καὶ τοῦ Καναλὴ εἰσὶ
that in the district of-Terbounia and — of-Kanali there-are
κάστρα οἰκούμενα ἡ Τερβουνία, τὸ Ὅρμος, τὰ Ῥίσενα,
fortresses inhabited — Terbounia — Ormos — Risena
τὸ Λουκάβετε, τὸ Ζετλήβη.
— Loukavete — Zetlebe

Diokleia, once held by the Romani and wasted by the Avars, was resettled under Heraclius. It is named for a fortress Diocletian built there, now deserted.

περὶ τῶν Διοκλητιανῶν, καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
concerning the Diocletians and which now they-inhabit land
Ὅτι ἡ Διοκλήας χώρα καὶ αὐτὴ πρότερον παρὰ τῶν
that the of-Diokleia land also it formerly by the
Ῥωμάνων ἐκρατεῖτο, οὓς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετῴκισεν ὁ βασιλεὺς
Romani was-held whom from Rome transplanted the emperor
Διοκλητιανός, καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὴν περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων
Diocletian as also in the concerning the Croats
ἱστορίαν εἴρηται· ὑπὸ δὲ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ὑπῆρχε.
history has-been-said under and the emperor of-(the)-Romans it-was
παρὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ αὕτη ἡ χώρα αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα
by and the Avars also this the land having-been-made-captive
ἠρήμωται, καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως
has-been-laid-waste and again under Heraclius the emperor
ἐνῳκίσθη, καθὼς καὶ ἡ Χρωβατία καὶ ἡ Σερβλία καὶ
it-was-settled as also — Croatia and — Serbia and
ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων καὶ ἡ Τερβουνία καὶ τοῦ Καναλή.
the(-land) of-the Zachlumi and — Terbounia and — of-Kanali
Διόκλεια δὲ ὀνομάζεται ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ χώρᾳ
Diokleia and it-is-named from the in the such land
κάστρου, ὅπερ ἔκτισεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός· νυνὶ δέ
fortress which built the emperor Diocletian now and
ἐστιν ἐρημόκαστρον, μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ὀνομαζόμενον Διόκλεια.
it-is (a)-deserted-fortress until the now named Diokleia

Ὅτι ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Διοκλείας εἰσὶ μεγάλα κάστρα
that in the land of-Diokleia there-are great fortresses
οἰκούμενα, τὸ Γράδεται, τὸ Νουγράδε, τὸ Λοντοδόκλα.
inhabited — Gradetai — Nougrade — Lontodokla

XXXVI · THE PAGANI

The Pagani, also called Arentanoi, are Serbs who refused baptism when the rest were baptized; the name means unbaptized. They hold several fortresses and the islands of Kourkoura, Meleta (the Melite of Acts), Pharos, and Bartzo.

περὶ τῶν Παγανῶν τῶν καὶ Ἀρεντανῶν καλουμένων,
concerning the Pagani those also Arentanoi called
καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
and which now they-inhabit land
Ὅτι ἡ χώρα εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν οἱ Παγανοὶ καὶ
that the land in which now dwell the Pagani also
αὕτη πρότερον παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκρατεῖτο, οὓς ἀπὸ
it formerly by the Romans was-held whom from
Ῥώμης ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς μετοικίσας ἐν Δελματίᾳ
Rome the emperor Diocletian having-transplanted in Dalmatia
ἐνῴκισεν. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Παγανοὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων
settled the and same Pagani from the unbaptized
Σέρβλων κατάγονται, ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ
Serbs are-descended from that the prince the(-one)
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος. παρὰ δὲ τῶν
to the emperor Heraclius having-taken-refuge by and the
Ἀβάρων καὶ αὕτη ἡ χώρα αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα ἠρήμωται,
Avars also this the land having-been-made-captive has-been-laid-waste
καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐνῳκίσθη.
and again under Heraclius the emperor it-was-settled

Παγανοὶ δὲ καλοῦνται διὰ τὸ μὴ καταδέξασθαι αὐτοὺς
Pagani and they-are-called because-of the not to-have-consented them
τῷ τότε καιρῷ βαπτισθῆναι ὅτε καὶ πάντες οἱ Σέρβλοι
at-the then time to-be-baptized when also all the Serbs
ἐβαπτίσθησαν· καὶ γὰρ Παγανοὶ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων
were-baptized and for Pagani in-the of-the Slavs
διαλέκτῳ ἀβάπτιστοι ἑρμηνεύονται. τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
dialect unbaptized are-interpreted in-the of-the Romans
δὲ διαλέκτῳ ἡ χώρα αὐτῶν Ἀρέντα καλεῖται, ἐξ οὗ
and dialect the land their Arenta is-called from which
κἀκεῖνοι παρὰ τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥωμαίων Ἀρεντάνοι καλοῦνται.
also-they by the same Romans Arentanoi are-called
Ὅτι ἐν Παγανίᾳ εἰσὶ κάστρα οἰκούμενα τὸ Μόκρον, τὸ
that in Pagania there-are fortresses inhabited — Mokron —
Βερούλλια, τὸ Ὄστρωκ καὶ ἡ Λαβίνετζα. κρατοῦσι δὲ
Beroullia — Ostrok and — Labinetza they-hold and
καὶ ταύτας τὰς νήσους. νῆσος μεγάλη ἡ Κούρκρα ἤτοι
also these the islands (an)-island great — Kourkoura that-is
τὸ Κίκερ, ἐν ᾗ ἔστι καὶ κάστρον. νῆσος ἑτέρα μεγάλη
— Kiker on which is also (a)-fortress (an)-island another great
τὰ Μέλετα ἤτοι τὸ Μαλοζεάται, ἣν ἐν ταῖς πράξεσι τῶν
— Meleta that-is — Malozeatai which in the acts of-the
ἀποστόλων ὁ ἅγιος Λούκας μέμνηται, Μελίτην ταύτην
apostles the holy Luke mentions Melite it
προσαγορεύων· ἐν ᾗ καὶ ἔχις τὸν ἅγιον Παῦλον ἀπὸ
calling on which also (a)-viper the holy Paul by
τοῦ δακτύλου προσήψατο, ἣν καὶ τῷ πυρὶ ὁ ἅγιος
the finger fastened which also in-the fire the holy
Παῦλος κατέφλεξε. νῆσος ἑτέρα μεγάλη τὸ Φάρα. νῆσος
Paul burned-up (an)-island another great — Pharos (an)-island
ἑτέρα μεγάλη ὁ Βράτζης. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἕτεραι νῆσοι αἱ
another great — Bartzo there-are and also other islands those

μὴ κρατούμεναι παρὰ τῶν αὐτῶν Παγανῶν, νῆσος τὰ
not held by the same Pagani (an)-island —
Χόαρα, νῆσος Ἴης, νῆσος τὸ Λάστοβον.
Choara (an)-island Ies (an)-island — Lastobon

XXXVII · THE PECHENEGS

The Pechenegs once lived on the rivers Atel and Geech. Fifty years ago the Uzes and Khazars drove them out, and they in turn drove out the Turks, whose land they have held fifty-five years. Their eight themes, four on each side of the Dnieper, pass to cousins, never to sons or brothers. Some who stayed behind live among the Uzes and wear short tunics with the sleeves cut off. Ruined fortresses with crosses stand on the Dnieper, and three themes, the bravest and noblest, are called Kangar.

περὶ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν.
concerning the nation of-the Pechenegs
Ἰστέον ὅτι Πατζινακῖται τὸ ἀπ᾽ ἀρχῆς εἰς τὸν
(one)-must-know that (the)-Pechenegs the from (the)-beginning on the
ποταμὸν Ἀτὴλ τὴν αὐτῶν εἶχον κατοίκησιν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ εἰς
river Atel the their had dwelling likewise and also on
τὸν ποταμὸν Γεήχ, ἔχοντες τούς τε Μαζάρους συνοροῦντας
the river Geech having the both Mazars bordering(-them)
καὶ τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους Οὔζ. πρὸ ἐτῶν δὲ πεντήκοντα
and those called Uzes before years and fifty
οἱ λεγόμενοι Οὔζ μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ὁμονοήσαντες καὶ
those called Uzes with the Khazars having-agreed and
πόλεμον συμβαλόντες πρὸς τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ὑπερίσχυσαν,
war having-joined against the Pechenegs prevailed
καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας χώρας αὐτοὺς ἐξεδίωξαν, καὶ κατέσχον
and from the own land them drove-out and occupied
αὐτὴν μέχρι τῆς σήμερον οἱ λεγόμενοι Οὔζοι. οἱ δὲ
it until the today those called Uzes the and

Πατζινακῖται φυγόντες περιήρχοντο ἀναψηλαφῶντες τόπον
Pechenegs having-fled went-about searching-out (a)-place
εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν κατασκήνωσιν· καταλαβόντες δὲ τὴν σήμερον
for the their settlement having-reached and the today
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν κρατουμένην γῆν καὶ εὑρόντες τοὺς Τούρκους
by them held land and having-found the Turks
οἰκοῦντας ἐν αὐτῇ, πολέμου τρόπῳ τούτους νικήσαντες
dwelling in it of-war in-(the)-manner them having-conquered
καὶ ἐκβαλόντες ἐξεδίωξαν αὐτοὺς καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν
and having-cast-out drove-out them and settled in
αὐτῇ, καὶ δεσπόζουσι τῆς τοιαύτης χώρας, ὡς εἴρηται,
it and are-masters of-the such land as has-been-said
μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἔτη πεντήκοντα πέντε.
until the today years fifty five
Ἰστέον ὅτι πᾶσα ἡ Πατζινακία εἰς θέματα ὀκτὼ
(one)-must-know that all — Patzinakia into themes eight
διαιρεῖται, ἔχουσα καὶ μεγάλους ἄρχοντας τοσούτους. τὰ δὲ
is-divided having also great princes as-many the and
θέματά εἰσι ταῦτα. ὄνομα τοῦ πρώτου θέματος Ἠρτήμ, τοῦ
themes are these (the)-name of-the first theme Ertem of-the
δευτέρου Τζούρ, τοῦ τρίτου Γύλα, τοῦ τετάρτου Κουλπέῃ,
second Tzour of-the third Gyla of-the fourth Koulpee
τοῦ πέμπτου Χαροβόη, τοῦ ἕκτου Ταλμάτ, τοῦ ἑβδόμου
of-the fifth Charoboe of-the sixth Talmat of-the seventh
Χοπόν, τοῦ ὀγδόου Τζοπόν. κατὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν ὃν
Chopon of-the eighth Tzopon at and the time in-which
ἀπὸ τῶν ἰδίων τόπων οἱ Πατζινακῖται ἐξεδιώχθησαν, εἶχον
from the own places the Pechenegs were-driven-out they-had
ἄρχοντας εἰς μὲν τὸ θέμα Ἠρτὴμ τὸν Μαΐτζαν, εἰς δὲ τὸ
princes in indeed the theme Ertem — Maïtzas in and —
Τζοὺρ τὸν Κούελ, εἰς δὲ τὸ Γύλα τὸν Κουρκοῦταν, εἰς δὲ τὸ
Tzour — Kouel in and — Gyla — Kourkoutas in and —

Κουλπέη τὸν Ἰπαόν, εἰς δὲ τὸ Χαροβόη τὸν Καϊδούμ, εἰς
Koulpee — Ipaos in and — Charoboe — Kaïdoum in
δὲ τὸ θέμα Ταλμὰτ τὸν Κώσταν, εἰς τὸ Χοπὸν τὸν Γιαζή,
and the theme Talmat — Kostas in — Chopon — Giazes
εἰς δὲ τὸ θέμα Τζοπὸν τὸν Βατάν. μετὰ δὲ θάνατον αὐτῶν
in and the theme Tzopon — Batas after and (the)-death their
διεδέξαντο τὰς ἀρχὰς οἱ τούτων ἐξάδελφοι· νόμος γὰρ
succeeded-to the rules the their cousins (a)-law for
ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ τύπος ἐκράτησε παλαιὸς μὴ ἔχειν ἐξουσίαν
among them and custom has-prevailed ancient not to-have authority
πρὸς παῖδας ἢ ἀδελφοὺς αὐτῶν μεταπέμπειν τὰ ἀξιώματα,
to sons or brothers their to-transmit the dignities
ἀλλ' ἀρκεῖσθαι μόνον τοῖς κεκτημένοις τὸ καὶ μέχρι
but to-be-content only with-the having-possessed(-them) the also until
ζωῆς ἄρχειν αὐτούς, μετὰ δὲ θάνατον προχειρίζεσθαι ἢ
life to-rule them after and death to-appoint either
ἐξάδελφον αὐτῶν ἢ ἐξαδέλφων παῖδας, πρὸς τὸ μὴ καθ'
(a)-cousin their or of-cousins sons for the not at
ὅλου εἰς ἓν μέρος γενεᾶς διατρέχειν τὸ ἀξίωμα, ἀλλὰ
all in one part of-(the)-family to-run the dignity but
καὶ εἰς τοὺς ἐκπλαγίους καὶ κληρονομεῖν καὶ ἀπεκδέχεσθαι
also to the collateral(-kin) both to-inherit and to-receive
τὴν τιμήν· ἀπὸ ξένης δὲ γενεᾶς οὐχ ὑπεισέρχεταί τις
the honor from (a)-foreign and family not does-enter anyone
καὶ γίνεται ἄρχων. τὰ δὲ ὀκτὼ θέματα διαιροῦνται εἰς
and becomes prince the and eight themes are-divided into
τεσσαράκοντα μέρη, καὶ ἔχουσι καὶ ἐλάττονας ἄρχοντας.
forty parts and have also lesser princes
Ἰστέον ὅτι αἱ τέσσαρες τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν γενεαί, ἤγουν
(one)-must-know that the four of-the Pechenegs clans that-is
τὸ θέμα Κουαρτζιτζοὺρ καὶ τὸ θέμα Συρουκαλπέη καὶ
the theme Kouartzitzour and the theme Syroukalpee and

τὸ θέμα Βοροτάλματ καὶ τὸ θέμα Βουλατζυσπόν, κεῖνται
the theme Borotalmat and the theme Boulatzyspon lie
πέρα τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, πρὸς τὰ ἀνατολικώτερα
beyond the Dnieper river toward the more-eastern
καὶ βορειότερα μέρη ἐναποβλέποντα, πρός τε Οὐζίαν
and more-northern parts looking-toward toward both Uzia
καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ Ἀλανίαν καὶ τὴν Χερσῶνα καὶ τὰ
and Khazaria and Alania and — Cherson and the
λοιπὰ κλίματα. αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι τέσσαρες γενεαὶ κεῖνται
other regions the and other four clans lie
ἔνθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, πρὸς τὰ δυτικώτερα καὶ
on-this-side of-the Dnieper river toward the more-western and
ἀρκτικώτερα μέρη· τουτέστι τὸ θέμα Γιαζιχοπὸν πλησιάζει
more-northern parts that-is the theme Giazichopon borders
τῇ Βουλγαρίᾳ, τὸ δὲ θέμα τοῦ κάτω Γύλα πλησιάζει τῇ
— on-Bulgaria the and theme of-the lower Gyla borders —
Τουρκίᾳ, τὸ δὲ θέμα Χαροβόη πλησιάζει τῇ Ῥωσίᾳ, τὸ δὲ
on-Turkey the and theme Charoboe borders — on-Russia the and
θέμα Ἰαβδιερτὶμ πλησιάζει τοῖς ὑποφόροις χωρίοις χώρας
theme Iabdiertim borders on-the tributary districts of-(the)-land
τῆς Ῥωσίας, τοῖς τε Οὐλτίνοις καὶ Δερβλενίνοις καὶ
— of-Russia the both Ultines and Derblenines and
Λενζενίνοις καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς Σκλάβοις. ἀπῴκισται δὲ ἡ
Lenzanenes and the other Slavs is-distant and —
Πατζινακία ἐκ μὲν Οὐζίας καὶ Χαζαρίας ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν
Patzinakia from indeed Uzia and Khazaria (a)-journey of-days
πέντε, ἐκ δὲ Ἀλανίας ἡμερῶν ἕξ, ἀπὸ δὲ Μορδίας
five from and Alania of-days six from and Mordia
ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν δέκα, ἀπὸ δὲ Ῥωσίας ὁδὸν ἡμέρας
(a)-journey of-days ten from and Russia (a)-journey of-day
μιᾶς, ἀπὸ δὲ Τουρκίας ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν τεσσάρων, ἀπὸ
one from and Turkey (a)-journey of-days four from

δὲ Βουλγαρίας ὁδὸν ἡμέρας ἥμισυ· καὶ εἰς Χερσῶνα
and Bulgaria (a)-journey of-day half and to Cherson
μέν ἐστιν ἔγγιστα, εἰς δὲ τὴν Βόσπορον πλησιέστερον.
indeed it-is nearest to and — Bosporus nearer
Ἰστέον ὅτι κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ὃν οἱ Πατζινακῖται
(one)-must-know that at the time in-which the Pechenegs
ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας χώρας ἐξεδιώχθησαν, θελήσει τινὲς ἐξ
from the own land were-driven-out by-will some of
αὐτῶν καὶ οἰκείᾳ γνώμῃ ἐναπέμειναν ἐκεῖσε καὶ τοῖς
them and by-own choice remained-behind there and with-the
λεγομένοις Οὔζοις συνῴκησαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν εἰσὶν ἐν
called Uzes lived and until the now they-are among
αὐτοῖς, ἔχοντες τοιαῦτα γνωρίσματα ὥστε διαχωρίζεσθαι
them having such marks so-that to-be-distinguished
αὐτοῖς καὶ νοεῖσθαι τίνες τε ἦσαν καὶ πῶς αὐτοὺς
among-them and to-be-recognized who both they-were and how them
ἀποσπασθῆναι τῶν ἰδίων συνέβη· τὰ γὰρ ἱμάτια
to-be-torn-away from-the own(-people) it-happened the for garments
αὐτῶν εἰσὶ κόντευρα μέχρι γονάτων, καὶ τὰ μανίκια
their are short to (the)-knees and the sleeves
ἀπὸ τῶν βραχιόνων ἀποκεκομμένα, ὡς δῆθεν ἐκ τούτου
from the arms cut-off as forsooth by this
δεικνύντες ὅτι ἀπὸ τῶν ἰδίων καὶ ὁμοφύλων ἀπεκόπησαν.
showing that from the own and kindred they-were-cut-off
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἔνθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ πρὸς
(one)-must-know that on-this-side of-the Dnieper river toward
τὸ ἀποβλέπον μέρος τὴν Βουλγαρίαν εἰς τὰ περάματα
the facing part — Bulgaria at the crossings
τοῦ αὐτοῦ ποταμοῦ εἰσὶν ἐρημόκαστρα. κάστρον πρῶτον
of-the same river there-are deserted-fortresses fortress first
τὸ ὀνομασθὲν παρὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν Ἄσπρον διὰ
the(-one) named by the Pechenegs Aspron because-of

τὸ τοὺς λίθους αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι καταλεύκους, κάστρον
the the stones its to-appear very-white fortress
δεύτερον τὸ Τουγγâται, κάστρον τρίτον τὸ Κρακνακάται,
second — Tounggatai fortress third — Kraknakatai
κάστρον τέταρτον τὸ Σαλμακάται, κάστρον πέμπτον
fortress fourth — Salmakatai fortress fifth
τὸ Σακακάται, κάστρον ἕκτον Γιαιουκάται. ἐν αὐτοῖς
— Sakakatai fortress sixth Giaioukatai in them
δὲ τοῖς τῶν παλαιοκάστρων κτίσμασιν εὑρίσκονται καὶ
and the of-the old-fortresses buildings are-found also
ἐκκλησιῶν γνωρίσματά τινα καὶ σταυροὶ λαξευτοὶ εἰς
of-churches marks some and crosses carved in
λίθους πορίνους· ὅθεν καί τινες παράδοσιν ἔχουσιν ὡς
stones of-tufa whence also some (a)-tradition have that
Ῥωμαῖοί ποτε τὰς κατοικίας εἶχον ἐκεῖσε.
(the)-Romans once the settlements had there
Ἰστέον ὅτι Κάγκαρ ὀνομάζονται οἱ Πατζινακῖται, ἀλλ'
(one)-must-know that Kangar are-named the Pechenegs but
οὐχὶ πάντες, πλὴν ὁ τῶν τριῶν θεμάτων λαός, τοῦ
not all except the of-the three themes people —
Ἰαβδιηρτί, καὶ τοῦ Κουαρτζιτζοὺρ καὶ τοῦ Χαβουξιγγυλά,
of-Iabdiertim and — of-Kouartzitzour and — of-Chabouxinggyla
ὡς ἀνδρειότεροι καὶ εὐγενέστεροι τῶν λοιπῶν· τοῦτο γὰρ
as braver and nobler of-the others this for
δηλοῖ ἡ τοῦ Κάγγαρ προσηγορία.
shows the of-the Kangar name

The Turks, once called Sabartoiasphaloi, lived near Khazaria at Lebedia. Defeated by the Pechenegs, they split in two: one part went toward Persia, the other west. The Khazar chagan offered rule to Lebedias, who declined and named Salmoutzes or his son Arpad; the Turks chose Arpad and raised him on a shield as prince. The Pechenegs drove them out again, and they settled in Moravia.

περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Τούρκων, καὶ
concerning the genealogy of-the nation of-the Turks and
ὅθεν κατάγονται.
whence they-are-descended

Ὅτι τὸ τῶν Τούρκων ἔθνος πλησίον τῆς Χαζαρίας τὸ
that the of-the Turks nation near — Khazaria in-the
παλαιὸν τὴν κατοίκησιν ἐποιεῖτο εἰς τὸν τόπον τὸν
old(-days) the dwelling made in the place the(-one)
ἐπονομαζόμενον Λεβεδία ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ πρώτου βοεβόδου
named Lebedia from the of-the first voivode
αὐτῶν ἐπωνυμίας, ὅστις βοέβοδος τὸ μὲν τῆς κλήσεως
their name who voivode the indeed of-the calling
ὄνομα Λεβεδίας προσαγορεύετο, τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀξίας, ὡς καὶ
name Lebedias was-called the and of-the rank as also
οἱ λοιποὶ μετ᾽ αὐτόν, βοέβοδος ἐκαλεῖτο. ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ
the others after him voivode was-called in this then the
τόπῳ τῷ προρρηθέντι Λεβεδία ποταμός ἐστι ῥέων Χιδμάς,
place the aforesaid Lebedia (a)-river is flowing Chidmas
ὁ καὶ Χιγγυλοὺς ἐπονομαζόμενος. οὐκ ἐλέγοντο δὲ
the(-one) also Chingylous named not they-were-called and
τῷ τότε χρόνῳ Τοῦρκοι, ἀλλὰ Σαβαρτοιάσφαλοι ἔκ
at-the then time Turks but Sabartoiasphaloi from
τινος αἰτίας ἐπωνομάζοντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν Τοῦρκοι γενεαὶ
some cause they-were-named and the indeed Turks clans

ὑπῆρχον ἑπτά, ἄρχοντα δὲ εἰς αὐτοὺς εἴτε ἴδιον εἴτε
were seven prince and over them whether own or
ἀλλότριόν ποτε οὐκ ἐκτήσαντο, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπῆρχον ἐν αὐτοῖς
foreign ever not they-had but there-were among them
βοέβοδοί τινες, ὧν πρῶτος βοέβοδος ἦν ὁ προρρηθεὶς
voivodes some of-whom first voivode was the aforesaid
Λεβεδίας. συνῴκησαν δὲ μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ἐνιαυτοὺς
Lebedias they-lived and with the Khazars years
τρεῖς, συμμαχοῦντες τοῖς Χαζάροις ἐν πᾶσι τοῖς αὐτῶν
three fighting-alongside the Khazars in all the their
πολέμοις. ὁ δὲ χαγάνος ἄρχων Χαζαρίας διὰ τὴν
wars the and chagan prince of-Khazaria because-of the
αὐτῶν ἀνδρίαν καὶ συμμαχίαν τῷ πρώτῳ βοεβόδῳ τῶν
their bravery and alliance to-the first voivode of-the
Τούρκων Λεβεδίᾳ ἐπονομαζομένῳ γυναῖκα δέδωκε πρὸς
Turks Lebedias named (a)-wife gave for
γάμον Χαζάραν εὐγενῆ, διὰ τὸ τῆς ἀνδρίας αὐτοῦ
marriage (a)-Khazar-woman noble because-of the of-the bravery his
περίφημον καὶ τὸ τοῦ γένους περιφανές, ὅπως ἐξ αὐτοῦ
renown and the of-the family distinction so-that from him
τεκνώσῃ· ὁ δὲ Λεβεδίας ἐκεῖνος ἔκ τινος τύχης
she-might-bear-children — and Lebedias that from some chance
μετὰ τῆς αὐτῆς Χαζάρου οὐκ ἐπαιδοποίησεν. οἱ δὲ
with the same Khazar-woman not had-children the and
Πατζινακῖται οἱ πρότερον Κάγγαρ ἐπονομαζόμενοι (τοῦτο
Pechenegs those formerly Kangar named this
γὰρ τὸ Κάγγαρ ὄνομα ἐπ᾽ εὐγενείᾳ καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ ἐλέγετο
for the Kangar name for nobility and bravery was-said
παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς) πρὸς Χαζάρους οὖν οὗτοι κινήσαντες πόλεμον
among them against (the)-Khazars then these having-moved war
καὶ ἡττηθέντες τὴν οἰκείαν γῆν καταλεῖψαι καὶ τὴν
and having-been-defeated the own land to-leave and the(-land)

τῶν Τούρκων κατοικῆσαι κατηναγκάσθησαν. ἀναμεταξὺ δὲ
of-the Turks to-settle were-compelled between and
τῶν Τούρκων συναφθέντος πολέμου καὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν
the Turks having-been-joined war and the Pechenegs
τῶν τηνικαῦτα Κάγγαρ ἐπονομαζομένων, τὸ τῶν Τούρκων
those at-that-time Kangar named the of-the Turks
φοσσάτον ἡττήθη καὶ εἰς δύο διῃρέθη μέρη· καὶ τὸ
army was-defeated and into two was-divided parts and the
μὲν ἓν μέρος πρὸς ἀνατολὴν εἰς τὸ τῆς Περσίδος μέρος
indeed one part toward (the)-east in the — of-Persia part
κατῴκησεν, οἳ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν κατὰ τὴν τῶν
settled who also until the now according-to the of-the
Τούρκων ἀρχαίαν ἐπωνυμίαν καλοῦνται Σαβαρτοιάσφαλοι·
Turks ancient name are-called Sabartoiasphaloi
τὸ δὲ ἕτερον μέρος εἰς τὸ δυτικὸν κατῴκησε μέρος, ἅμα
the and other part in the western settled part together
καὶ τῷ βοεβόδῳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀρχηγῷ Λεβεδίᾳ, εἰς τόπους
also with-the voivode their and chief Lebedias in places
τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους Ἀτελκούζου, ἐν οἷς τόποις τὸ
the(-ones) named Atelkouzou in which places the
νῦν τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν ἔθνος κατοικεῖ. ὀλίγου δὲ χρόνου
now of-the Pechenegs nation dwells little and time
διαδραμόντος ὁ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος ἄρχων Χαζαρίας τοῖς
having-passed the chagan that prince of-Khazaria to-the
Τούρκοις ἐμήνυσε τοῦ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀποσταλῆναι χελάνδια
Turks sent-word of-the to him to-be-sent warships
τὸν πρῶτον αὐτῶν βοέβοδον. ὁ Λεβεδίας τοίνυν πρὸς
the first their voivode — Lebedias then to
τὸν χαγάνον Χαζαρίας ἀφικόμενος ἀνηρώτα τὴν αἰτίαν δι᾽
the chagan of-Khazaria having-arrived asked the cause for
ἣν ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο. ὁ δὲ χαγάνος εἶπε
which to-come to him he-had-sent-for(-him) the and chagan said

πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι διὰ τοῦτό σε προσεκαλεσάμεθα, ἵνα
to him that because-of this you we-have-summoned that
ἐπειδὴ εὐγενὴς καὶ φρόνιμος καὶ ἠνδρειωμένος ὑπάρχεις
since noble and prudent and brave you-are
καὶ πρῶτος τῶν Τούρκων, ἄρχοντά σε τοῦ ἔθνους
and first of-the Turks prince you of-the nation
σου προβαλώμεθα, καὶ ἵνα ὑπείκῃς τῷ λόγῳ καὶ τῇ
your we-may-appoint and that you-may-yield to-the word and the
προστάξει ἡμῶν. ὁ δὲ ἀποκριθεὶς πρὸς τὸν χαγάνον
command our he and having-answered to the chagan
ἀντέφησεν ὅτι τὴν περὶ ἐμέ σου σχέσιν τε καὶ προαίρεσιν
replied that the toward me your affection both and choice
μεγάλως ἐναποδέχομαι, καὶ τὴν εὐχαριστίαν ὁμολογῶ σοι
greatly I-welcome and the thanks I-acknowledge to-you
προσήκουσαν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀδυνάτως ἔχω πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην
fitting since and unable I-am for the such
ἀρχήν, ὑπακοῦσαι οὐ δύναμαι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἔστιν ἕτερος
rule to-obey not I-am-able but rather there-is another
ἀπ᾽ ἐμοῦ βοέβοδος, λεγόμενος Σαλμούτζης καὶ υἱὸν
than me voivode called Salmoutzes and (a)-son
κεκτημένος ὀνόματι Ἀρπαδήν· ἐκ τούτων μᾶλλον εἴτε
having by-name Arpad of these rather either
ἐκεῖνος Σαλμούτζης εἴτε ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀρπαδὴς ἵνα γένηται
that Salmoutzes or the son his Arpad let become
ἄρχων, καὶ ἔστιν ὑπὸ τοῦ λόγου ὑμῶν. ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ
prince and be under the word your at this then the
λόγῳ ἀρεσθεὶς ὁ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος δέδωκεν ἀνθρώπους
word having-been-pleased the chagan that gave men
αὐτοῦ μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς τοὺς Τούρκους ἀπέστειλεν, οἳ καὶ
his with him and to the Turks sent(-them) who also
συλλαλήσαντες περὶ τούτου μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων, μᾶλλον οἱ
having-conferred about this with the Turks rather the

Τοῦρκοι τὸν Ἀρπαδὴ γενέσθαι προέκριναν ἄρχοντα ἤπερ
Turks — Arpad to-become preferred prince than
Σαλμούτζη τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα, ὡς ἀξιολογώτερον ὄντα
Salmoutzes the his father as more-notable being
καὶ περισπούδαστον ἔν τε φρονήσει καὶ βουλῇ καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ
and much-esteemed in both prudence and counsel and bravery
καὶ ἱκανὸν πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρχήν· ὃν καὶ ἄρχοντα
and fit for the such rule whom also prince
κατὰ τὸ τῶν Χαζάρων ἔθος καὶ ζάκανον πεποιήκασι,
according-to the of-the Khazars custom and law they-made
σηκώσαντες αὐτὸν εἰς σκουτάριον. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ
having-raised him on (a)-shield before and — Arpad
τούτου ἄρχοντα ἕτερον οἱ Τοῦρκοι οὐκ ἐκτήσαντο πώποτε·
this prince other the Turks not had ever
ἐξ οὗ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐκ τῆς τούτου γενεᾶς
from which also until the today from the his family
ἄρχων Τουρκίας καθίσταται. μετὰ δέ τινας χρόνους
(the)-prince of-Turkey is-appointed after and some years
τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπιπεσόντες οἱ Πατζινακῖται κατεδίωξαν
on-the Turks having-fallen the Pechenegs drove-out
αὐτοὺς μετὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος αὐτῶν Ἀρπαδή. οἱ οὖν
them with the prince their Arpad the then
Τοῦρκοι τραπέντες καὶ πρὸς κατοίκησιν γῆν ἐπιζητοῦντες,
Turks having-been-routed and for settlement land seeking
ἐλθόντες ἀπεδίωξαν οὗτοι τοὺς τὴν μεγάλην Μοραβίαν
having-come drove-out these those the great Moravia
κατοικοῦντας, καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν κατεσκήνωσαν, εἰς
inhabiting and in the land their settled in
ἣν νῦν οἱ Τοῦρκοι μέχρι τῆς σήμερον κατοικοῦσι· καὶ
which now the Turks until the today dwell and
ἔκτοτε πόλεμον οἱ Τοῦρκοι μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν οὐκ
from-then war the Turks with the Pechenegs not

ἐποίησαν. εἰς δὲ τὸ κατασκηνῶσαν τὸ προρρηθὲν ἔθνος
made to and the having-settled the aforesaid nation
τῶν Τούρκων πρὸς τὴν ἀνατολὴν εἰς τὰ τῆς Περσίδας
of-the Turks toward the east in the — of-Persia
μέρη μέχρι τοῦ νῦν πραγματευτὰς ἀποστέλλουσιν οὗτοι
parts until the now traders send these
οἱ πρὸς τὸ δυτικὸν μέρος οἰκοῦντες προειρημένοι Τοῦρκοι,
the toward the western part dwelling aforesaid Turks
καὶ βλέπουσιν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀποκρίσεις παρ᾽ αὐτῶν πρὸς
and visit them and answers from them to
αὐτοὺς πολλάκις ἀποκομίζουσιν.
them often bring-back
Ὅτι ὁ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν τόπος ἐν ᾧ τῷ τότε καιρῷ
that the of-the Pechenegs place in which at-the then time
κατῴκησαν οἱ Τοῦρκοι, καλεῖται κατὰ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν
dwelt the Turks is-called according-to the name
τῶν ἐκεῖσε ὄντων ποταμῶν· οἱ δὲ ποταμοί εἰσιν οὗτοι,
of-the there being rivers the and rivers are these
ποταμὸς πρῶτος ὁ καλούμενος Βαρούχ, ποταμὸς
river first the(-one) called Barouch river
δεύτερος ὁ καλούμενος Κουβοῦ, ποταμὸς τρίτος ὁ
second the(-one) called Koubou river third the(-one)
καλούμενος Τροῦλλος, ποταμὸς τέταρτος ὁ καλούμενος
called Troullos river fourth the(-one) called
Βροῦτος, ποταμὸς πέμπτος ὁ καλούμενος Σέρετος.
Broutos river fifth the(-one) called Seretos

The Kabaroi, rebels from the Khazars, joined the Turks, taught them Khazar, and led them in war.

περὶ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Καβάρων.
concerning the nation of-the Kabaroi
Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ λεγόμενοι Κάβαροι ἀπὸ τῆς τῶν Χαζάρων
(one)-must-know that those called Kabaroi from the of-the Khazars
γενεᾶς ὑπῆρχον· καὶ δὴ συμβᾶσάν τινα παρ᾽ αὐτῶν
race were and indeed having-happened some by them
ἀποστασίαν γενέσθαι πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν αὐτῶν, καὶ πολέμου
rebellion to-come-about against the rule their and war
ἐμφυλίου καθιστάντος, ἡ πρώτη ἀρχὴ αὐτῶν ὑπερίσχυσεν,
civil arising the first rule their prevailed
καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀπεσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ ἐξέφυγον
and some indeed of them were-slaughtered others and escaped
καὶ ἦλθον καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων εἰς τὴν
and came and settled with the Turks in the
τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν γῆν, καὶ ἀλλήλοις συνεφιλιώθησαν, καὶ
of-the Pechenegs land and with-each-other made-friends and
Κάβαροί τινες ὠνομάσθησαν. ὅθεν καὶ τὴν τῶν Χαζάρων
Kabaroi some were-named whence also the of-the Khazars
γλῶσσαν αὐτοῖς τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐδίδαξαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ
tongue to-the-very the Turks they-taught and until the
νῦν τὴν αὐτὴν διάλεκτον ἔχουσιν· ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ τὴν τῶν
now the same dialect they-have they-have and also the of-the
Τούρκων ἑτέραν γλῶτταν. διὰ δὲ τὸ εἰς τοὺς πολέμους
Turks other tongue because-of and the in the wars
ἰσχυροτέρους καὶ ἀνδρειοτέρους δείκνυσθαι τῶν ὀκτὼ
stronger and braver to-show-themselves of-the eight

γενεῶν καὶ προεξάρχειν τοῦ πολέμου προεκρίθησαν πρῶται
clans and to-lead of-the war they-were-preferred (the)-first
γενεαί. εἷς δέ ἐστιν ἄρχων ἐν αὐτοῖς, ἤγουν ἐν ταῖς τρισὶ
clans one and is prince among them that-is in the three
γενεαῖς τῶν Καβάρων, ὅστις καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἔστι.
clans of-the Kabaroi who also until the today is

XL · THE CLANS OF THE KABAROI AND TURKS

The clans of the Turks are listed. At Leo's call they crossed the Danube and routed Symeon, but Symeon and the Pechenegs then destroyed their families, and they settled in their present land. Its rivers and landmarks are described, and the gylas and karchas are named as dignities. Arpad's descendants are traced.

περὶ τῶν γενεῶν τῶν Καβάρων καὶ Τούρκων.
concerning the clans of-the Kabaroi and Turks
Πρώτη ἡ παρὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ἀποσπασθεῖσα αὕτη ἡ
first the from the Khazars torn-away this the
προρρηθεῖσα τῶν Καβάρων γενεά, δευτέρα τοῦ Νέκη,
aforesaid of-the Kabaroi clan second — of-Neke
τρίτη τοῦ Μεγέρη, τετάρτη τοῦ Κουρτυγερμάτου, πέμπτη
third — of-Megere fourth — of-Kourtygermatos fifth
τοῦ Ταριάνου, ἕκτη Γενάχ, ἑβδόμη Καρή, ὀγδόη Κασή.
— of-Tarianos sixth Genach seventh Kare eighth Kase
καὶ οὕτως ἀλλήλοις συναφθέντες μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων οἱ
and thus with-each-other having-joined with the Turks the
Κάβαροι εἰς τὴν τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν κατῴκησαν γῆν. μετὰ
Kabaroi in the of-the Pechenegs settled land after
δὲ ταῦτα παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ ἀοιδίμου
and these(-things) by Leo the Christ-loving and celebrated
βασιλέως προσκληθέντες διεπέρασαν, καὶ τὸν Συμεὼν
emperor having-been-summoned they-crossed and — Symeon

πολεμήσαντες κατὰ κράτος αὐτὸν ἥττησαν, καὶ ἐξελάσαντες
having-warred by force him defeated and having-driven(-on)
μέχρι τῆς Πρεσθλάβου διῆλθον ἀποκλείσαντες αὐτὸν εἰς
as-far-as — Preslav went-through having-shut him in
τὸ κάστρον τὸ λεγόμενον Μουνδράγα, καὶ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν
the fortress the(-one) called Moundraga and to the own
χώραν ὑπέστρεψαν· τῷ δὲ τότε καιρῷ τὸν Λιούντινα τὸν
land returned at-the and then time — Liountis the
υἱὸν τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ εἶχον ἄρχοντα. μετὰ δὲ τὸ πάλιν τὸν
son — of-Arpad they-had (as)-prince after and the again —
Συμεὼν μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰρηνεύεσθαι καὶ
Symeon with the emperor of-the Romans to-be-at-peace and
λαβεῖν ἄδειαν, διεπέμψατο πρὸς τοὺς Πατζινακίτας, καὶ μετ'
to-get freedom he-sent to the Pechenegs and with
αὐτῶν ὡμοφώνησε τοῦ καταπολεμῆσαι καὶ ἀφανίσαι τοὺς
them agreed of-the to-war-down and to-destroy the
Τούρκους. καὶ ὅτε οἱ Τοῦρκοι πρὸς ταξείδιον ἀπῆλθον, οἱ
Turks and when the Turks on campaign went-away the
Πατζινακῖται μετὰ τοῦ Συμεὼν ἦλθον κατὰ τῶν Τούρκων,
Pechenegs with — Symeon came against the Turks
καὶ τὰς αὐτῶν φαμιλίας παντελῶς ἐξηφάνισαν, καὶ τοὺς εἰς
and the their households utterly destroyed and the for
φύλαξιν τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν Τούρκους ἀπεκεῖσε κακινκάκως
guarding of-the land their Turks from-there wretchedly
ἀπεδίωξαν. οἱ δὲ Τοῦρκοι ὑποστρέψαντες, καὶ τὴν χώραν
drove-out the and Turks having-returned and the land
αὐτῶν οὕτως εὑρόντες ἔρημον καὶ κατηφανισμένην,
their thus having-found deserted and utterly-destroyed
κατεσκήνωσαν εἰς τὴν γῆν εἰς ἣν καὶ σήμερον κατοικοῦσι,
settled in the land in which also today they-dwell
τὴν ἐπονομαζομένην κατὰ τὴν ἀνωτέρω, ὡς εἴρηται,
the(-one) named according-to the above as has-been-said

τῶν ποταμῶν ἐπωνυμίαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος ἐν ᾧ πρότερον
of-the rivers name the and place in which formerly
οἱ Τοῦρκοι ὑπῆρχον, ὀνομάζεται κατὰ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν
the Turks were is-named according-to the name
τοῦ ἐκεῖσε διερχομένου ποταμοῦ Ἐτὲλ καὶ Κουζού, ἐν ᾧ
of-the there passing-through river Etel and Kouzou in which
ἀρτίως οἱ Πατζινακῖται κατοικοῦσιν. οἱ δὲ Τοῦρκοι παρὰ
now the Pechenegs dwell the and Turks by
τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν διωχθέντες ἦλθον καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν
the Pechenegs having-been-driven-out came and settled
εἰς τὴν γῆν εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν. ἐν αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ τύπῳ
in the land in which now they-dwell in the-very and the place
παλαιά τινα ἔστι γνωρίσματα· καὶ πρῶτον μέν ἐστιν ἡ
ancient some are marks and first indeed is the
τοῦ βασιλέως Τραϊανοῦ γέφυρα κατὰ τὴν τῆς Τουρκίας
of-the emperor Trajan bridge at the — of-Turkey
ἀρχήν, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ Βελάγραδα ἀπὸ τριῶν ἡμερῶν τῆς
beginning then and also Belgrade from three days of-the
αὐτῆς γεφύρας, ἐν ᾗ καὶ ὁ πύργος ἐστὶ τοῦ ἁγίου
same bridge in which also the tower is of-the holy
καὶ μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ βασιλέως· καὶ πάλιν κατὰ
and great Constantine the emperor and again at
τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκδρομήν ἐστι τὸ Σέρμιον ἐκεῖνο τὸ
the of-the river running-out is — Sirmium that the(-one)
λεγόμενον, ἀπὸ τῆς Βελεγράδας ὁδὸν ἔχον ἡμερῶν δύο,
called from — Belgrade (a)-journey having of-days two
καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἡ μεγάλη Μοραβία ἡ ἀβάπτιστος,
and from the there the great Moravia the unbaptized
ἣν καὶ ἐξήλειψαν οἱ Τοῦρκοι, ἧς ἦρχε τὸ πρότερον
which also wiped-out the Turks over-which ruled the formerly
ὁ Σφενδοπλόκος. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἴστρον
— Sphendoplokos these indeed the(-things) along the Ister

ποταμὸν γνωρίσματά τε καὶ ἐπωνυμίαι· τὰ δὲ ἀνώτερα
river marks both and names the and higher-up
τούτων, ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶν ἡ πᾶσα τῆς Τουρκίας κατασκήνωσις,
of-these in which is the whole — of-Turkey settlement
ἀρτίως ὀνομάζουσι κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἐκεῖσε ῥεόντων
now they-name according-to the of-the there flowing
ποταμῶν ἐπωνυμίας. οἱ δὲ ποταμοί εἰσιν οὗτοι, ποταμὸς
rivers names the and rivers are these river
πρῶτος ὁ Τιμήσης, ποταμὸς δεύτερος Τούτης, ποταμὸς
first the Temes river second Toutes river
τρίτος ὁ Μορήσης, τέταρτος ὁ Κρίσος, καὶ πάλιν ἕτερος
third the Moreses fourth the Krisos and again another
ποταμὸς ἡ Τίτζα. πλησιάζουσι δὲ τοῖς Τούρκοις πρὸς
river the Titza border and on-the Turks toward
μὲν τὸ ἀνατολικὸν μέρος οἱ Βούλγαροι, ἐν ᾧ καὶ
indeed the eastern part the Bulgarians in which also
διαχωρίζει αὐτοὺς ὁ Ἴστρος ὁ καὶ Δανούβιος λεγόμενος
divides them the Ister the also Danube called
ποταμός, πρὸς δὲ τὸ βόρειον οἱ Πατζινακῖται, πρὸς δὲ
river toward and the north the Pechenegs toward and
τὸ δυτικώτερον οἱ Φράγγοι, πρὸς δὲ τὸ μεσημβρινὸν οἱ
the more-western the Franks toward and the south the
Χρώβατοι. αἱ δὲ ὀκτὼ γενεαὶ τῶν Τούρκων αὗται πρὸς
Croats the and eight clans of-the Turks these to
τοὺς οἰκείους ἄρχοντας οὐχ ὑπηκούουσιν, ἀλλ᾽ ὁμόνοιαν
the own princes not obey but concord
ἔχουσιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμούς, εἰς οἷον μέρος προβάλλει
have at the rivers to whatever part breaks-out
πόλεμος, συναγωνίζεσθαι μετὰ πάσης φροντίδος τε καὶ
war to-fight-together with all care both and
σπουδῆς. ἔχουσι δὲ κεφαλὴν πρώτην τὸν ἄρχοντα ἀπὸ
zeal they-have and (as)-head first the prince from

τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ κατὰ ἀκολουθίαν, καὶ δύο ἑτέρους,
the family — of-Arpad by succession and two others
τόν τε γυλᾶν καὶ τὸν καρχᾶν, οἵτινες ἔχουσι τάξιν
the both gylas and the karchas who have (the)-rank
κριτοῦ· ἔχει δὲ ἑκάστη γενεὰ ἄρχοντα.
of-judge has and each clan (a)-prince
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ γυλᾶς καὶ ὁ καρχᾶν οὐκ εἰσὶν ὀνόματα
(one)-must-know that the gylas and the karchas not are names
κύρια ἀλλὰ ἀξιώματα.
proper but dignities
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Ἀρπαδὴς ὁ μέγας Τουρκίας ἄρχων
(one)-must-know that — Arpad the great of-Turkey prince
ἐποίησε τέσσαρας υἱούς, πρῶτον τὸν Ταρκατζοῦν, δεύτερον
begot four sons (the)-first — Tarkatzous (the)-second
τὸν Ἰέλεχ, τρίτον τὸν Ἰουτοτζάν, τέταρτον τὸν Ζαλτάν.
— Ielech (the)-third — Ioutotzas (the)-fourth — Zaltas
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ ὁ Ταρκατζοὺς
(one)-must-know that the first son — of-Arpad — Tarkatzous
ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Τεβέλη, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος υἱὸς ὁ Ἰέλεχ
begot (a)-son — Tebeles the and second son — Ielech
ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἐζέλεχ, ὁ δὲ τρίτος υἱὸς ὁ Ἰουτοτζὰς
begot (a)-son — Ezelech the and third son — Ioutotzas
ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Φαλίτζιν τὸν νυνὶ ἄρχοντα, ὁ δὲ
begot (a)-son — Phalitzis the now prince the and
τέταρτος υἱὸς Ζαλτὰς ἐποίησεν υἱὸν Ταξίν.
fourth son Zaltas begot (a)-son Taxis
Ἰστέον ὅτι πάντες οἱ υἱοὶ τοῦ Ἀρπαδᾶ ἐτελεύτησαν,
(one)-must-know that all the sons — of-Arpad died
οἱ δὲ ἔγγονοι αὐτοῦ ὅ τε Φαλῆς καὶ Τασῆς καὶ ὁ
the and grandsons his — both Phales and Tases and the
ἐξάδελφος αὐτῶν ὁ Τάξις ζῶσιν.
cousin their — Taxis live

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Τεβέλης, καὶ ἔστιν ὁ υἱὸς
(one)-must-know that died — Tebeles and is the son
αὐτοῦ ὁ Τερματζούς, ὁ ἀρτίως ἀνελθών, φίλος μετὰ
his — Termatzous the(-one) recently having-come-up (a)-friend with
τοῦ Βουλτζοῦ τοῦ τρίτου ἄρχοντος καὶ καρχᾶ Τουρκίας.
— Boultzous the third prince and karchas of-Turkey
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Βουλτζοὺς ὁ καρχᾶς υἱός ἐστι τοῦ
(one)-must-know that — Boultzous the karchas son is —
Καλὴ τοῦ καρχᾶ, καὶ ὅτι τὸ μὲν Καλή ἐστιν ὄνομα
of-Kales the karchas and that — indeed Kales is (a)-name
κύριον, τὸ δὲ καρχᾶς ἐστὶν ἀξίωμα, ὥσπερ καὶ τὸ γυλᾶς,
proper the and karchas is (a)-dignity as also the gylas
ὅ ἐστι μεῖζον τοῦ καρχᾶ.
which is greater than-the karchas

XLI · MORAVIA

Sphendoplokos divided Moravia among his three sons and showed them that three rods bound together cannot be broken. After his death they quarreled, and the Turks destroyed them.

περὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Μοραβίας.
concerning the land — of-Moravia
Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Μοραβίας ἄρχων ὁ Σφενδοπλόκος
(one)-must-know that the of-Moravia prince — Sphendoplokos
ἀνδρεῖος καὶ φοβερὸς εἰς τὰ πλησιάζοντα αὐτῷ ἔθνη
brave and fearsome to the bordering him nations
γέγονεν· ἔσχε δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς Σφενδοπλόκος τρεῖς υἱούς, καὶ
became had and the same Sphendoplokos three sons and
τελευτῶν διεῖλεν εἰς τρία μέρη τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν, καὶ τοῖς
dying divided into three parts the his-own land and to-the

τρισὶν υἱοῖς αὐτοῦ ἀνὰ μιᾶς μερίδος κατέλιπε, τὸν πρῶτον
three sons his each one share left the first
καταλείψας ἄρχοντα μέγαν, τοὺς δὲ ἑτέρους δύο τοῦ εἶναι
having-left (as)-prince great the and other two of-the to-be
ὑπὸ τὸν λόγον τοῦ πρώτου υἱοῦ. παρῄνεσε δὲ αὐτοὺς τοῦ
under the word of-the first son he-exhorted and them of-the
μὴ εἰς διάστασιν καὶ κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων γενέσθαι, παράδειγμα
not into division and against each-other to-come (an)-example
αὐτοῖς τοιοῦτον ὑποδείξας· ῥάβδους γὰρ τρεῖς ἐνεγκὼν
to-them such having-shown rods for three having-brought
καὶ συνδήσας δέδωκε τῷ πρώτῳ υἱῷ τοῦ ταύτας
and having-bound(-them) he-gave to-the first son of-the them
κλάσαι, τοῦ δὲ μὴ ἰσχύσαντος πάλιν δέδωκε τῷ ἑτέρῳ,
to-break him and not having-been-able again he-gave to-the second
ὡσαύτως καὶ τῷ τρίτῳ· καὶ εἶθ᾽ οὕτω διαιρῶν τὰς τρεῖς
likewise also to-the third and then thus dividing the three
ῥάβδους δέδωκε τοῖς τρισὶ πρὸς μίαν, οἱ δὲ λαβόντες
rods he-gave to-the three by one they and having-taken
καὶ κελευσθέντες ταύτας κλάσαι εὐθέως αὐτὰς κατέκλασαν.
and having-been-ordered them to-break at-once them broke
καὶ διὰ τοιούτου ὑποδείγματος παρῄνεσεν αὐτούς, εἰπὼν
and through such (an)-example he-exhorted them having-said
ὅτι εἰ μὲν διαμένετε ἐν ὁμοψυχίᾳ καὶ ἀγάπῃ ἀδιαίρετοι,
that if indeed you-remain in unanimity and love undivided
ἀκαταγώνιστοι παρὰ τῶν ἐναντίων καὶ ἀνάλωτοι γενήσεσθε·
invincible by the opponents and uncapturable you-will-become
εἰ δὲ ἐν ὑμῖν γένηται ἔρις καὶ φιλονεικία καὶ διαχωρισθῆτε
if and among you arises strife and rivalry and you-are-separated
εἰς τρεῖς ἀρχὰς μὴ ὑποκείμενοι τῷ πρώτῳ ἀδελφῷ, καὶ
into three rules not subject to-the first brother both
ὑπ᾽ ἀλλήλων ἀφανισθήσεσθε καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν πλησιαζόντων
by each-other you-will-be-destroyed and by the bordering

ὑμῖν ἐχθρῶν παντελῶς ἐξολοθρευθήσεσθε. μετὰ δὲ τὴν
you enemies utterly you-will-be-annihilated after and the
τελευτὴν τοῦ αὐτοῦ Σφενδοπλόκου ἕνα χρόνον ἐν εἰρήνῃ
death of-the same Sphendoplokos one year in peace
διατελέσαντες, ἔριδος καὶ στάσεως ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐμπεσούσης,
having-continued strife and sedition among them having-fallen
καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἐμφύλιον πόλεμον ποιήσαντες, ἐλθόντες
and against each-other civil war having-made having-come
οἱ Τοῦρκοι τούτους παντελῶς ἐξωλόθρευσαν, καὶ ἐκράτησαν
the Turks them utterly annihilated and took
τὴν αὐτῶν χώραν, εἰς ἣν καὶ ἀρτίως οἰκοῦσι· καὶ οἱ
the their land in which also now they-dwell and those
ὑπολειφθέντες τοῦ λαοῦ διεσκορπίσθησαν προσφυγόντες
left-behind of-the people were-scattered having-taken-refuge
εἰς τὰ παρακείμενα ἔθνη, εἴς τε τοὺς Βουλγάρους καὶ
with the neighboring nations with both the Bulgarians and
Τούρκους καὶ Χρωβάτους καὶ εἰς τὰ λοιπὰ ἔθνη.
Turks and Croats and with the other nations

XLII · GEOGRAPHY FROM THESSALONIKE TO SARKEL

The chapter gives distances from Thessalonike to the Danube and on to Sarkel. Petronas built Sarkel for the Khazars and then became the first general of Cherson. It then surveys the rivers, the coast, the Maeotis, the Nekropyla, and the lands of Zichia, Papagia, Kasachia, Alania, and Abasgia.

γεωγραφία ἀπὸ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι τοῦ Δανούβεως
geography from Thessalonike as-far-as the Danube
ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ κάστρου Βελεγράδας, Τουρκίας τε καὶ
river and the fortress of-Belgrade of-Turkey both and
Πατζινακίας μέχρι τοῦ Χαζαρικοῦ κάστρου Σάρκελ, τῆς
of-Patzinakia as-far-as the Khazar fortress Sarkel —

Ῥωσίας, καὶ μέχρι τῶν Νεκροπύλων τῶν ὄντων εἰς τὴν
of-Russia and as-far-as the Nekropyla those being in the
τοῦ Πόντου θάλασσαν πλησίον τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ,
of-the Pontus sea near the Dnieper river
καὶ Χερσῶνος ὁμοῦ καὶ Βοσπόρου, ἐν οἷς τὰ κάστρα
and of-Cherson together and of-Bosporus in which the fortresses
τῶν κλιμάτων εἰσίν, εἶτα μέχρι λίμνης Μαιώτιδος τῆς
of-the regions are then as-far-as (the)-lake Maeotis the(-one)
καὶ θαλάσσης διὰ τὸ μέγεθος καλουμένης, καὶ μέχρι
also sea because-of the size called and as-far-as
τοῦ κάστρου τοῦ Μάταρχα λεγομένου, πρὸς τούτοις
the fortress — Tamatarcha called in-addition-to these
δὲ καὶ Ζιχίας καὶ Παπαγίας καὶ Καζαχίας καὶ Ἀλανίας
and also of-Zichia and of-Papagia and of-Kasachia and of-Alania
καὶ Ἀβασγίας, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ κάστρου Σωτηριουπόλεως.
and of-Abasgia and as-far-as the fortress of-Soteriopolis
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἀπὸ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ
(one)-must-know that from Thessalonike as-far-as the river
Δανούβεως, ἐν ᾧ τὸ κάστρον ἐστὶ τὸ Βελέγραδα
Danube on which the fortress is the(-one) Belgrade
ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἔστιν ὁδὸς ἡμερῶν ὀκτώ, εἰ καὶ μὴ
named it-is (a)-journey of-days eight if even not
διὰ τάχους τις ἀλλὰ μετὰ ἀναπαύσεως πορεύηται. καὶ
with speed one but with rest travels and
κατοικοῦσι μὲν οἱ Τοῦρκοι πέραθεν τοῦ Δανούβεως
dwell indeed the Turks beyond the Danube
ποταμοῦ εἰς τὴν τῆς Μοραβίας γῆν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔνθεν
river in the — of-Moravia land but also on-this-side
μέσον τοῦ Δανούβεως καὶ τοῦ Σάβα ποταμοῦ· ἀπὸ δὲ
between the Danube and the Sava river from and
κάτωθεν τῶν μερῶν Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ τῆς Δίστρας
below the parts of-(the)-Danube river — of-Distra

ἀντίπερα ἡ Πατζινακία παρέρχεται, καὶ κατακρατεῖ ἡ
opposite — Patzinakia extends and holds the
κατοικία αὐτῶν μέχρι τοῦ Σάρκελ τοῦ τῶν Χαζάρων
dwelling their as-far-as — Sarkel the of-the Khazars
κάστρου, ἐν ᾧ ταξεῶται καθέζονται τὰ κατὰ χρόνον
fortress in which garrison-men sit the by year
ἐναλλασσόμενοι. ἑρμηνεύεται δὲ παρὰ αὐτοῖς τὸ Σάρκελ
being-changed is-interpreted and among them — Sarkel
ἄσπρον ὁσπίτιον· ὅπερ ἐκτίσθη παρὰ σπαθαροκανδιδάτου
white house which was-built by (the)-spatharocandidatus
Πετρωνᾶ τοῦ ἐπονομαζομένου Καματηροῦ, τὸν βασιλέα
Petronas the(-one) surnamed Kamateros the emperor
Θεόφιλον πρὸς τὸ κτισθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ κάστρον τοῦτο
Theophilos for the to-be-built for-them the fortress this
τῶν Χαζάρων αἰτησαμένων. ὁ γὰρ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος,
the Khazars having-asked the for chagan that
ὁ καὶ πὲχ Χαζαρίας, εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν βασιλέα Θεόφιλον
the(-one) also pech of-Khazaria to the same emperor Theophilos
πρέσβεις ἀποστείλαντες κτισθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ κάστρον
envoys having-sent to-be-built for-them the fortress
τὸ Σάρκελ ᾐτήσαντο· οἷς ὁ βασιλεύς, τῇ τούτων
— Sarkel asked to-whom the emperor by-the their
αἰτήσει πεισθείς, τὸν προρρηθέντα σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον
request having-been-persuaded the aforesaid spatharocandidatus
Πετρωνᾶ μετὰ χελανδίων βασιλικῶν πλωΐμων ἀπέστειλε,
Petronas with warships imperial of-the-fleet sent
καὶ χελάνδια τοῦ κατεπάνω Παφλαγονίας. καὶ δὴ
and warships of-the katepano of-Paphlagonia and indeed
ὁ αὐτὸς Πετρωνᾶς τὴν Χερσῶνα καταλαβὼν τὰ μὲν
the same Petronas — Cherson having-reached the indeed
χελάνδια εὗρεν ἐν Χερσῶνι, τὸν δὲ λαὸν εἰσαγαγὼν εἰς
warships found in Cherson the and people having-put into

καματερὰ καράβια ἀπῆλθεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τοῦ Τανάϊδος
cargo ships went-away to the place of-the Tanais
ποταμοῦ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ κάστρον ἔμελλε κτίσαι·
river on which also the fortress he-was-about to-build
καὶ ἐπειδὴ ὁ τόπος λίθους οὐκ εἶχε πρὸς κτίσιν
and since the place stones not had for (the)-building
τοῦ κάστρου ἐπιτηδείους, καμίνιά τινα ποιησάμενος καὶ
of-the fortress suitable kilns some having-made and
βήσαλον ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐγκαύσας μετ᾽ αὐτῶν τὴν τοῦ κάστρου
brick in them having-burned with them the of-the fortress
κτίσιν ἐποιήσατο, ἐκ μικρῶν τινῶν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
building made from small some the from the river
καχλιδίων ἄσβεστον ἐργασάμενος. οὗτος οὖν ὁ προρρηθεὶς
pebbles lime having-worked this then the aforesaid
σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος Πετρωνᾶς μετὰ τὸ κτίσαι τὸ κάστρον
spatharocandidatus Petronas after the to-build the fortress
τὸ Σάρκελ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Θεόφιλον εἰσελθὼν εἶπεν
— Sarkel to the emperor Theophilos having-entered said
αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ θέλῃς ὅλως τὸ τῆς Χερσῶνος κάστρον καὶ
to-him that if you-wish wholly the — of-Cherson fortress and
τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ τόπους κυρίως ἐξουσιάσαι καὶ τούτους μὴ
the in it places in-lordship to-rule and these not
τῆς σῆς ἐκτὸς γενέσθαι χειρός, προβάλλου στρατηγὸν
of-the your outside to-become hand appoint (a)-general
ἴδιον, καὶ μὴ τοῖς ἐκείνων καταπιστεύσῃς πρωτεύουσί τε
own and not to-the their entrust-(it) chief-men both
καὶ ἄρχουσι· μέχρι γὰρ Θεοφίλου τοῦ βασιλέως οὐκ ἦν
and rulers until for Theophilos the emperor not was
στρατηγὸς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀποστελλόμενος, ἀλλ᾽ ἦν
(a)-general from the(-people) here being-sent but was
ὁ τὰ πάντα διοικῶν ὁ λεγόμενος πρωτεύων μετὰ
the(-one) the all-things administering the(-one) called proteuon with

τῶν ἐπονομαζομένων πατέρων τῆς πόλεως. τοῦ οὖν
the(-ones) named fathers of-the city the then
βασιλέως Θεοφίλου πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσαμένου τὸν ὁδεῖνα
emperor Theophilos at these(-things) having-taken-counsel the so-and-so
ἐξαποστεῖλαι στρατηγὸν ἢ τὸν ὁδεῖνα, ὕστερον ἀποστεῖλαι
to-send-out (as)-general or the so-and-so later to-send
προέκρινε τὸν προρρηθέντα σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον Πετρωνᾶ
preferred the aforesaid spatharocandidatus Petronas
ὡς ἔμπειρον τοῦ τόπου γενόμενον καὶ τῶν πραγμάτων
as experienced of-the place having-become and of-the affairs
οὐκ ἀνεπιστήμονα· ὃν πρωτοσπαθάριον τιμήσας
not ignorant whom (with-the-rank-of)-protospatharius having-honored
προεβάλετο στρατηγὸν καὶ εἰς Χερσῶνα ἐξαπέστειλεν,
he-appointed general and to Cherson sent-out
ὁρίσας τὸν τότε πρωτεύοντα καὶ πάντας ὑπείκειν
having-ordered the then proteuon and all to-obey
αὐτῷ· ἐξ οὗ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐπεκράτησεν ἀπὸ
him from which also until the today has-prevailed from
τῶν ἐντεῦθεν εἰς Χερσῶνα προβάλλεσθαι στρατηγούς.
the(-people) here to Cherson to-be-appointed generals
ἀλλ᾽ αὕτη μὲν ἡ κάστρου Σάρκελ κτίσις καθέστηκεν,
but this indeed the of-(the)-fortress Sarkel building has-been
ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι τοῦ προρρηθέντος
from and the Danube river as-far-as the aforesaid
κάστρου τοῦ Σάρκελ ὁδός ἐστιν ἡμερῶν ξ′. μέσον
fortress — Sarkel (a)-journey it-is of-days 60 in-(the)-middle
δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης γῆς ποταμοὶ μέν εἰσι πολλοί, δύο δὲ
and of-the such land rivers indeed are many two and
μέγιστοι ἐξ αὐτῶν, ὅ τε Δάναστρις καὶ ὁ Δάναπρις.
greatest of them the both Dniester and the Dnieper
εἰσὶ δὲ ἕτεροι ποταμοί, ὅ τε λεγόμενος Συγγοὺλ
there-are and other rivers the(-one) both called Syngoul

καὶ ὁ Ὕβυλ, ὁ Ἀλματαὶ καὶ ὁ Κοῦφις καὶ ὁ Βογοῦ,
and the Hybyl the Almatai and the Kouphis and the Bogou
καὶ ἕτεροι πολλοί. εἰς δὲ τὰ ὑψηλότερα τοῦ Δανάπρεως
and others many in and the higher of-the Dnieper
ποταμοῦ μέρη κατοικοῦσιν οἱ Ῥῶς· δι' οὗ ποταμοῦ
river parts dwell the Rus by which river
ἀποπλέοντες πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ποιοῦνται τὴν ἄφιξιν. ἡ
sailing to (the)-Romans they-make the arrival —
δὲ Πατζινακία πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν τῆς τε Ῥωσίας καὶ
and Patzinakia all the land — both of-Russia and
Βοσπόρου κατακρατεῖ, καὶ μέχρι Χερσῶνος καὶ ἕως τὸ
Bosporus holds and as-far-as Cherson and up-to —
Σαράτ, Βουρὰτ καὶ τῶν λ΄ μερῶν. τὸ δὲ τῆς παραλίας
Sarat Bourat and the 30 parts the and of-the coast
τῆς θαλάσσης ἀπὸ τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ διάστημα
of-the sea from the Danube river distance
μέχρι τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ εἰσὶ μίλια ρκ΄. ἀπὸ δὲ
as-far-as the Dnieper river are miles 120 from and
τοῦ Δανάστρεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ Δανάπρεώς
the Dniester river as-far-as the river Dnieper
εἰσι μίλια π΄, ὁ χρυσὸς λεγόμενος αἰγιαλός. ἀπὸ τὸ
are miles 80 the golden called shore from the
στόμιον ποταμοῦ τοῦ Δανάπρεώς εἰσι τὰ Ἀδαρά, καὶ
mouth of-(the)-river of-the Dnieper are — Adara and
ἐκεῖσε κόλπος ἐστὶ μέγας ὁ λεγόμενος τὰ Νεκρόπυλα,
there (a)-gulf is great the(-one) called the Nekropyla
ἐν ᾧ τις διελθεῖν ἀδυνατεῖ παντελῶς. καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν
in which one to-pass-through is-unable utterly and from indeed
τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι Χερσῶνός εἰσι μίλια
the Dnieper river as-far-as Cherson are miles
τ΄, ἐν τῷ μέσῳ δὲ λίμναι καὶ λιμένες εἰσίν, ἐν αἷς
300 in the middle and lakes and harbors are in which

Χερσωνῖται τὸ ἅλας ἐργάζονται. ἀπὸ δὲ Χερσῶντος
Chersonites the salt work from and Cherson
μέχρι Βοσπόρου εἰσὶ τὰ κάστρα τῶν κλιμάτων, τὸ δὲ
as-far-as Bosporus are the fortresses of-the regions the and
διάστημα μίλια τ΄. καὶ ἀπὸ Βοσπόρου τὸ τῆς Μαιώτιδος
distance miles 300 and from Bosporus the of-the Maeotis
λίμνης στόμιόν ἐστιν, ἥτις καὶ θάλασσα διὰ τὸ μέγεθος
lake mouth is which also sea because-of the size
παρὰ πάντων ὀνομάζεται. εἰς δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν Μαιώτιδα
by all is-named into and the same Maeotis
θάλασσαν εἰσρέουσι ποταμοὶ πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι. πρὸς τὸ
sea flow rivers many and great toward the
ἀρκτῶον αὐτῆς μέρος ὁ Δάναπρις ποταμός, ἐξ οὗ καὶ
northern its part the Dnieper river from which also
οἱ Ῥῶς διέρχονται πρός τε τὴν μαύρην Βουλγαρίαν καὶ
the Rus pass-through to both the black Bulgaria and
Χαζαρίαν καὶ Συρίαν. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς κόλπος τῆς Μαιώτιδος
Khazaria and Syria the and same gulf of-the Maeotis
ἔρχεται ἀντικρὺ τῶν Νεκροπύλων τῶν ὄντων πλησίον
comes opposite the Nekropyla those being near
τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ ὡς ἀπὸ μιλίων δ΄, καὶ μίσγεται,
the Dnieper river as from miles 4 and mingles
ἐν ᾧ καὶ σούδαν οἱ παλαιοὶ ποιησάμενοι διεβίβασαν τὴν
in which also (a)-trench the ancients having-made carried-across the
θάλασσαν, μέσον ἀποκλείσαντες πᾶσαν τὴν Χερσῶνος γῆν
sea between having-shut-off all the of-Cherson land
καὶ τῶν κλιμάτων καὶ τὴν Βοσπόρου γῆν κρατοῦσαν μέχρι
and of-the regions and the of-Bosporus land extending up-to
α΄ μιλίων ἢ καὶ πλειόνων τινῶν· ἐκ δὲ τῶν πολλῶν
1 miles or also more some from and the many
ἐτῶν κατεχώσθη ἡ αὐτὴ σούδα καὶ εἰς δάσος ἐγένετο
years was-silted-up the same trench and into (a)-thicket became

πολύ. καὶ οὐκ εἰσὶν ἐν αὐτῷ πλὴν δύο ὁδοί, ἐν αἷς οἱ
dense and not there-are in it except two roads by which the
Πατζινακῖται διέρχονται πρός τε Χερσῶνα καὶ Βόσπορον
Pechenegs pass-through to both Cherson and Bosporus
καὶ τὰ κλίματα. εἰς δὲ τὸ ἀνατολικώτερον μέρος τῆς
and the regions into and the more-eastern part of-the
Μαιώτιδος λίμνης εἰσέρχονται πολλοί τινες ποταμοί, ὅ τε
Maeotis lake flow-in many some rivers the both
Τάναϊς ποταμός, ὁ ἀπὸ τὸ κάστρον Σάρκελ ἐρχόμενος,
Tanais river the(-one) from the fortress Sarkel coming
καὶ τὸ Χωράκουλ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ βερζήτικον ἁλιεύεται·
and — Chorakoul in which also the berzitikon is-fished
εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἕτεροι ποταμοί, ὁ Βὰλ καὶ ὁ Βουρλίκ, ὁ
there-are and also other rivers the Bal and the Bourlik the
Χαδὴρ καὶ ἄλλοι πλεῖστοι ποταμοί. ἐκ δὲ τῆς Μαιώτιδος
Chader and others very-many rivers from and the Maeotis
λίμνης ἐξέρχεται στόμιον τὸ Βουρλὶκ ἐπονομαζόμενον,
lake goes-out (a)-mouth the(-one) Bourlik named
καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ Πόντου θάλασσαν καταρεῖ, ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶν
and toward the of-the Pontus sea flows-down on which is
ὁ Βόσπορος. ἀντικρὺ δὲ τῆς Βοσπόρου τὸ Ταμάταρχα
— Bosporus opposite and — of-Bosporus — Tamatarcha
λεγόμενον κάστρον ἐστί· τὸ δὲ διάστημα τοῦ περάματος
called fortress is the and distance of-the crossing
τοῦ τοιούτου στομίου ἐστὶ μίλια ιη΄. ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ
of-the such mouth is miles 18 in and the middle
τῶν αὐτῶν ιη΄ μιλίων ἐστὶ νησίον μέγα χαμηλὸν τὸ
of-the same 18 miles is (an)-islet great low the(-one)
λεγόμενον Ἀτέχ. ἀπὸ τὸ Ταμάταρχά ἐστι ποταμὸς ἀπὸ
called Atech from — Tamatarcha is (a)-river from
μιλίων ιη΄ ἢ καὶ κ΄, λεγόμενος Οὐκρούχ, ὁ διαχωρίζων
miles 18 or also 20 called Oukrouch the(-one) separating

τὴν Ζιχίαν καὶ τὸ Ταμάταρχα. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Οὐκροὺχ
— *Zichia and — Tamatarcha from and — Oukrouch*
μέχρι τοῦ Νικόψεως ποταμοῦ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ κάστρον ἐστὶν
as-far-as — Nikopsis river on which also (a)-fortress is
ὁμώνυμον τῷ ποταμῷ, ἔστιν ἡ χώρα τῆς Ζιχίας· τὸ
of-the-same-name with-the river is the land — of-Zichia the
δὲ διάστημά ἐστι μίλια τ΄. ἄνωθεν τῆς Ζιχίας ἐστὶν ἡ
and distance is miles 300 above — Zichia is the
χώρα ἡ λεγομένη Παπαγία, καὶ ἄνωθεν τῆς Παπαγίας
land the(-one) called Papagia and above — Papagia
χώρας ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα ἡ λεγομένη Κασαχία· ἄνωθεν δὲ
land is the land the(-one) called Kasachia above and
τῆς Κασαχίας ὄρη τὰ Καυκάσιά εἰσι, καὶ τῶν ὀρέων
— Kasachia mountains the Caucasian are and of-the mountains
ἄνωθέν ἐστιν ἡ χώρα τῆς Ἀλανίας. ἡ δὲ τῆς Ζιχίας
above is the land — of-Alania the and — of-Zichia
παράλιος ἔχει νησία, τὸ μέγα νησίον καὶ τὰ τρία νησία·
coast has islets the great islet and the three islets
ἔνδοθεν δὲ τούτων εἰσὶ καὶ ἕτερα νησία τὰ ἐπινοηθέντα
inside and of-these are also other islets those devised
καὶ παρὰ τῶν Ζιχῶν κτισθέντα, τό τε Τουργανὴρχ καὶ τὸ
and by the Zichians built — both Tourganerch and —
Τζαρβαγάνι καὶ ἕτερον νησίον, καὶ εἰς τὸν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
Tzarbagani and another islet and in the of-the river
λιμένα ἕτερον νησίον, καὶ εἰς τὰς Πτελέας ἕτερον, ἐν ᾧ
harbor another islet and at the Pteleai another in which
ἐν ταῖς τῶν Ἀλανῶν ἐπιδρομαῖς οἱ Ζιχοὶ καταφεύγουσι.
in the of-the Alans raids the Zichians take-refuge
τὸ δὲ παραθαλάσσιον ἀπὸ τῆς συμπληρώσεως τῆς Ζιχίας
the and coast from the end — of-Zichia

ἤτοι Νικόψεως ποταμοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ τῆς Ἀβασγίας χώρα,
that-is of-(the)-Nikopsis river is the — of-Abasgia land
μέχρι τοῦ κάστρου Σωτηριουπόλεως· εἰσὶ δὲ μίλια τ΄.
as-far-as the fortress of-Soteriopolis are and miles 300

XLIII · TARON

Krikorikios of Taron long played both sides between the emperor and the Saracens. Leo drew him, his son, and his brother to Constantinople with honors, a house, and a yearly stipend. Romanos later cut the stipend after neighboring princes complained. The chapter follows the nephew Tornikios' claim to the house and the estate, the sons' pressure on Tornikios, who left his land to the emperor, and the division of Taron between the two branches.

περὶ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ταρών.
concerning the land — of-Taron
Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν βορείων Σκυθῶν ἱκανῶς σοι
but concerning indeed the northern Scythians sufficiently to-you
δεδήλωται, τέκνον ποθούμενον, ὧν ἡ γνῶσις ἐπωφελής
has-been-shown child desired of-which the knowledge profitable
τε καὶ εὔχρηστος ἐν καιρῷ σοι πάντως γενήσεται· δεῖ
both and useful in season to-you surely will-become must
δέ σε μηδὲ τὰ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ἀγνοεῖν,
and you not-even the(-things) toward rising sun to-be-ignorant-of
ὅθεν ὑπήκοα πάλιν τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐγένετο ἀφ' οὗ
whence subject again to-the Romans they-became from (the-time)-when
τὸ πρῶτον τῆς τούτων ἐπικρατείας ἐξέπεσον. πρῶτος
the first of-the their dominion they-fell-away first
γὰρ ὁ Κρικορίκιος ἐκεῖνος τοῦ Ταρὼν ἄρχων πρὸς
for — Krikorikios that — of-Taron prince to
τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἑαυτὸν ὑπέκλινε καὶ ὑπέταξεν·
the emperor of-(the)-Romans himself bowed and subjected

ἀλλ᾽ ἐξ ἀρχῆς μὲν ἐπαμφοτερίζων ἐφαίνετο, καὶ
but from (the)-beginning indeed playing-both-sides he-appeared and
λόγῳ μὲν τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως φιλίαν προσεποιεῖτο τιμᾶν,
in-word indeed the of-the emperor friendship he-pretended to-honor
ἔργῳ δὲ τῷ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κατάρχοντι τὰ καθ᾽
in-deed and for-the of-the Saracens ruler the(-things) to
ἡδονὴν διεπράττετο, καὶ διαφόρως ἡγεμὼν ἐχρημάτισε
(his)-pleasure he-did and variously leader he-was
τῶν ἀπὸ Συρίας ἐξερχομένων φοσσάτων κατὰ τῶν
of-the from Syria going-out armies against the
ὑπηκόων θεμάτων τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ πάντα
subject themes to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans and all
τὰ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ μελετώμενα κατὰ
the(-things) by-the Romans in secret planned against
τῶν ἀντιπάλων Σαρακηνῶν πρὸς Συρίαν ἀνεμήνυε, καὶ
the opposing Saracens to Syria he-reported and
λάθρα περὶ τῶν παρ᾽ ἡμῖν συμβαινόντων ἀεὶ πρὸς
secretly concerning the(-things) among us happening always to
τὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν διὰ γραμμάτων ἐδηλοποίει, καὶ δοκεῖν
the commander-of-the-faithful by letters he-made-known and to-seem
μὲν ἐβούλετο τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων φρονῶν, εὑρίσκετο
indeed he-wished the(-cause) of-the Romans favoring he-was-found
δὲ μᾶλλον τὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν προκρίνων τε καὶ
and rather the(-cause) of-the Saracens preferring both and
φρονῶν. πλὴν ἀπέστελλεν ἀεὶ δῶρα, ἅπερ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε
favoring however he-sent always gifts which to-the there
βαρβάροις δοκεῖ τίμια, πρὸς τὸν ἐν βασιλεῦσιν ἀοίδιμον
barbarians seem precious to the among emperors celebrated
Λέοντα, καὶ ἀντελάμβανε πλείονά τε καὶ κρείττονα
Leo and received-in-return more both and better
παρὰ τοῦ εὐσεβοῦς βασιλεύοντος, ὃς καὶ πολλάκις αὐτῷ
from the pious reigning(-one) who also often him

προυτρέψατο διὰ γραμμάτων πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
urged by letters to the reigning(-city)
εἰσελθεῖν τὸν βασιλέα θεάσασθαι καὶ τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
to-come-in the emperor to-behold and of-the from him
φιλοφρονήσεων καὶ τιμῶν μετασχεῖν. ὁ δὲ δεδοικὼς μὴ
kindnesses and honors to-partake he and fearing lest
πρὸς λύπην καὶ σκάνδαλον τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ γένηται
to grief and offense of-the commander-of-the-faithful might-become
τοῦτο, προφάσεις ἐπλάττετο, καὶ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι ἑαυτοῦ
this pretexts he-fabricated and the not to-be-able his-own
χώραν ἔρημον τῆς ἐξ αὐτοῦ βοηθείας καταλιπεῖν, ἵνα
land bereft of-the from him help to-leave so-that
μὴ ὑπὸ Σαρακηνῶν καταληϊσθῇ, μάτην ἐσκήπτετο. ὁ δὲ
not by Saracens it-be-plundered vainly he-alleged the and
αὐτὸς ἄρχων τοῦ Ταρὼν κρατήσας ἐν πολέμῳ ποτὲ τοῦ
same prince — of-Taron having-seized in war once —
Ἀρκάϊκα τοὺς παῖδας ἤγουν Κρικορίκη τοῦ πατρικίου τοῦ
of-Arkaïkas the sons that-is of-Krikorikios the patrician the
πατρὸς τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀσωτίου τοὺς ἐξαδέλφους,
father of-the protospatharius Asotios the cousins
εἶχε παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ δεσμίους. περὶ ὧν καὶ Συμβάτιος
held with himself (as)-prisoners concerning whom also Symbatios
ὁ τότε ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων τὸν αὐτὸν μακαριώτατον
the then prince of-the princes the same most-blessed
βασιλέα διὰ γραμμάτων ἠξίωσε τοῦ ἀποστεῖλαι πρὸς
emperor by letters asked of-the to-send to
τὸν Ταρωνίτην καὶ ἀναλαβέσθαι σπουδάσαι τοὺς οἰκείους
the Taronite and to-take-back to-be-eager the own
ἀνεψιούς, οἵτινες ἦσαν υἱοὶ τοῦ εἰρημένου Ἀρκάϊκα, ἵνα
cousins who were sons of-the said Arkaïkas so-that
μὴ πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν ἀποσταλῶσι· συγγενὴς
not to the commander-of-the-faithful they-be-sent kinsman

γὰρ ἦν τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων
for was — of-Symbatios the prince of-the princes
Γρηγόριος ὁ πατρίκιος. ἐπακούσας δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης τοῦ
Gregory the patrician having-heard and the such —
Συμβατίου ἀξιώσεως Λέων ὁ μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς τὸν
of-Symbatios request Leo the most-blessed emperor —
Σινούτην ἐκεῖνον τὸν εὐνοῦχον ἀπέστειλε, χαρτουλάριον
Sinoutes that the eunuch sent chartularius
τηνικαῦτα τοῦ ὀξέος δρόμου τυγχάνοντα, πρός τε τὸν
at-that-time of-the swift course being to both the
ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρὼν τῆς τοιαύτης ἕνεκα ὑποθέσεως
prince — of-Taron of-the such for-the-sake matter
καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἀδρανασὴρ τὸν κουροπαλάτην Ἰβηρίας
and to — Adranase the curopalates of-Iberia
διά τινας ἑτέρας ὑποθέσεις, δοὺς αὐτῷ καὶ
on-account-of some other matters having-given him also
πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ξενάλια τὰ ἁρμόζοντα. διαβληθέντος
for both presents the fitting having-been-slandered
δὲ τοῦ εἰρημένου Σινούτου παρὰ Θεοδώρου τοῦ τῶν
and the said Sinoutes by Theodore the of-the
Ἀρμενίων ἑρμηνευτοῦ πρὸς τὸν εἰρημένον ἀοίδιμον βασιλέα,
Armenians interpreter to the said celebrated emperor
ἐξαπεστάλη βασιλικὸς ἀντ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
was-sent-out (as)-imperial-agent in-place-of him the protospatharius
Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ δομέστικος τῆς ὑπουργίας, ὁ τοῦ
Constantine and domestic of-the service the(-one) —
Λιβός, ὁ νῦν ἀνθύπατος πατρίκιος καὶ μέγας ἑταιρειάρχης,
of-Lips the now proconsul patrician and great hetaereiarch
ἐνταλματικῶς ὁρισθεὶς τοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι τὰ πρὸς
by-mandate having-been-ordered of-the to-take the(-things) to
τὸν ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρὼν τὸν Κρικορίκιον ἀποσταλέντα
the prince — of-Taron — Krikorikios sent

ξενάλια, καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν πρὸς τὸ Ταρὼν εἰσελθεῖν,
presents and he indeed to — Taron to-enter
τὸν δὲ Σινούτην προτρέψασθαι πρὸς τὸν Ἀδρανασὴρ
— and Sinoutes to-urge to — Adranase
τὸν κουροπαλάτην Ἰβηρίας κατὰ τὰ ἐνταλθέντα
the curopalates of-Iberia according-to the(-things) enjoined
αὐτῷ ἀπελθεῖν. καταλαβὼν δὲ τὸ Ταρὼν ὁ εἰρημένος
on-him to-go-away having-reached and — Taron the said
πρωτοσπαθάριος καὶ ἀποδιδοὺς Κρικορικίῳ τὰ πρὸς
protospatharius and having-delivered to-Krikorikios the to
αὐτὸν ἀποσταλέντα τοῦ βασιλέως δῶρα καὶ γράμματα,
him sent of-the emperor gifts and letters
ἀνελάβετο τὸν νόθον τοῦ Ταρωνίτου υἱόν, ὃς Ἀσώτιος
took the bastard of-the Taronite son who Asotios
ὠνομάζετο, καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν·
was-named and brought him to the reigning(-city)
ὃν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τιμήσας ἀξίᾳ
whom the emperor with-the of-the protospatharius having-honored dignity
καὶ ἱκανῶς φιλοφρονησάμενος πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον πατέρα διὰ
and sufficiently having-treated-kindly to the own father through
τοῦ αὐτοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀπέστειλεν. ἀναλαβόμενος οὖν
the same protospatharius sent having-taken then
ὁ αὐτὸς Κωνσταντῖνος ἐκεῖνος Ἀπογάνεμ τὸν ἀδελφὸν τοῦ
the same Constantine that Apoganem the brother —
Κρικορικίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ Ταρὼν εἰσήγαγε πρὸς τὸν
of-Krikorikios the prince — of-Taron brought(-him) to the
μακάριον βασιλέα μετὰ καὶ τῶν δύο υἱῶν Ἀρκάϊκα· ὃν
blessed emperor with also the two sons of-Arkaïkas whom
καὶ τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀξίᾳ τιμήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς
also with-the of-the protospatharius dignity having-honored the emperor
καὶ φιλοφρόνως πολλάκις δεξιωσάμενος ἀπέστειλεν αὖθις
and kindly often having-received sent again

διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κωνσταντίνου εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν
through the same Constantine to the own land
καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον ἀδελφόν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐν Χαλδίᾳ
and to the own brother after and these(-things) in Chaldia
ὁ εἰρημένος Κωνσταντῖνος ἐπὶ χρόνον ἱκανὸν διατρίψας
the said Constantine for time considerable having-spent
ἐπετράπη διὰ κελεύσεως εἰσελθεῖν ἐν τῷ Ταρὼν καὶ
was-charged by order to-enter into — Taron and
ἀναλαβέσθαι Κρικορίκιον τὸν ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρὼν καὶ
to-take Krikorikios the prince — of-Taron and
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰσελθεῖν· ὃ καὶ ἐποίησεν.
to the reigning(-city) to-come which also he-did
εἰσελθόντος δὲ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κρικορικίου ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ
having-come and the same Krikorikios into the God-guarded
πόλει, καὶ τῇ τοῦ μαγίστρου καὶ στρατηγοῦ Ταρὼν
city and with-the of-the magistros and general of-Taron
ἀξίᾳ τιμηθέντος, ἐδόθη αὐτῷ καὶ οἶκος εἰς κατοικίαν
dignity having-been-honored was-given to-him also (a)-house for dwelling
ὁ τοῦ βαρβάρου λεγόμενος, ὁ νῦν Βασιλείου τοῦ
the(-one) of-the barbarian called the now of-Basil the
παρακοιμωμένου οἶκος. ἐτιμήθη δὲ καὶ ἐτησίῳ ῥόγᾳ,
parakoimomenos house he-was-honored and also with-annual stipend
χρυσίου μὲν δέκα λίτρας καὶ μιλιαρισίων ἑτέρας δέκα
of-gold indeed ten pounds and of-miliaresia other ten
λίτρας, ὥστε εἶναι τὸ πᾶν λίτρας εἴκοσι. καὶ ἐπὶ
pounds so-that to-be the whole pounds twenty and for
χρόνον ἐν τῇ βασιλευούσῃ διατρίψας καὶ διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
time in the reigning(-city) having-spent and through the same
πρωτοσπαθαρίου Κωνσταντίνου πάλιν πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν
protospatharius Constantine again to the own
διεσώθη χώραν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα πάλιν εἰσῆλθεν καὶ
came-safely land after and these(-things) again came also

Ἀπογάνεμ πρὸς τὸν μακάριον βασιλέα, καὶ προεβιβάσθη
Apoganem to the blessed emperor and was-promoted
παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ εἰς τὴν πατρικιότητα, ἐπετράπη δὲ καὶ εἰς
by him to the patriciate he-was-permitted and also for
γυναῖκα λαβεῖν τοῦ εἰρημένου Κωνσταντίνου θυγατέρα, καὶ
wife to-take of-the said Constantine (the)-daughter and
ἐπὶ τῇ τοιαύτῃ προφάσει καὶ οἶκον ἐπεζήτησεν, καὶ ἔλαβε
on the such pretext also (a)-house he-sought and took
καὶ αὐτὸς τὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου οἶκον χρυσοβουλλίου χωρίς.
also he the of-the barbarian house (a)-chrysobull without
καὶ φιλοφρονηθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῷ τότε
and having-been-kindly-treated by the emperor at-the then(-time)
μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψε πρὸς τὸ πάλιν
indeed to the own land returned for the again
εἰσελθεῖν καὶ τὰ τοῦ γάμου ἀπαρτίσασθαι· ἅμα δὲ
to-come and the(-things) of-the marriage to-complete together and
τῷ εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν διασωθῆναι μετ᾽ ὀλίγας
with-the to the own land to-have-come-safe after few
ἡμέρας τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο. ὁ δὲ τούτου ἀδελφὸς
days (the)-end of-the life made-use the and his brother
Κρικορίκιος διὰ γραμμάτων αὐτοῦ ἐξητήσατο εἰσέρχεσθαι
Krikorikios by letters his asked to-come
εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν καὶ παρὰ τῶν χειρῶν τοῦ ἁγίου
into the reigning(-city) and from the hands of-the holy
βασιλέως λαμβάνειν τὴν διδομένην ῥόγαν αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐπὶ
emperor to-receive the given stipend his and for
χρόνον τινὰ ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ διατρίβειν πόλει, καὶ ἐπὶ
time some in the God-guarded to-spend city and upon
τούτῳ τὸν τῷ οἰκείῳ ἀδελφῷ προχωρισθέντα οἶκον εἰς
this the to-the own brother previously-assigned house for
κατοίκησιν λαβεῖν ἠξίου, ὃν καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ
dwelling to-receive asked which also gave to-him the

μακάριος βασιλεὺς διά τε τὸ νεωστὶ ὑποταγῆναι καὶ
blessed emperor because-of both the newly to-have-been-subjected and
διὰ τὸ καὶ ἄλλους ἄρχοντας τῆς ἀνατολῆς πρὸς τὸν
because-of the also other princes of-the east to the
ὅμοιον ζῆλον τῆς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ὑποταγῆς ἐκκαλέσασθαι·
like zeal of-the toward (the)-Romans subjection to-call-forth
ἔγγραφον δὲ χρυσοβούλλιον δωρεὰν τοῦ τοιούτου οἴκου
written and chrysobull of-gift of-the such house
πρὸς αὐτὸν οὐκ ἐποίησε. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους ἱκανούς,
to him not he-made after and years considerable
Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως τῶν σκήπτρων τῆς
Romanos the blessed emperor the scepters of-the
βασιλείας Ῥωμαίων ἐπειλημμένου, ἀνήγαγεν ὁ αὐτὸς
empire of-(the)-Romans having-taken-hold referred the same
Κρικορίκιος μὴ ἰσχύειν κρατεῖν τὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου οἶκον
Krikorikios not to-be-able to-hold the of-the barbarian house
ἀλλ' ἠξίου λαβεῖν ἀντ' αὐτοῦ προάστειον ἐν Κελτζηνῇ,
but he-asked to-take in-place-of it (an)-estate in Keltzene
εἴτε τοῦ Πατζάτου εἴτε ἄλλον οἷον κελεύοι ὁ βασιλεύς,
either — of-Patzates or another such-as might-order the emperor
ἵνα ὅτε ἐπιδρομὴ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν κατὰ τῆς χώρας
so-that when (a)-raid of-the Hagarenes against the land
αὐτοῦ γένηται, ἀποστέλλειν ἐκεῖσε ἔχῃ τὴν οἰκείαν
his occurs to-send there he-may-be-able the own
συγγένειαν καὶ ὑπόστασιν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὴν ἀκριβῆ
kin and property the and emperor the exact
γνῶσιν τῶν πραγμάτων μὴ κεκτημένος, ἐλπίζων δὲ ἀπὸ
knowledge of-the affairs not having expecting and from
βασιλικοῦ χρυσοβουλλίου τοῦ μακαρίου Λέοντος ἔχειν τὸν
(an)-imperial chrysobull of-the blessed Leo to-have the
Ταρωνίτην τὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου οἶκον, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ τὸ
Taronite the of-the barbarian house gave to-him the

προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγορᾶ ἐν Κελτζηνῇ, καὶ τὸν οἶκον δῆθεν
estate — of-Gregoras in Keltzene and the house forsooth
ἀντέλαβε, χρυσοβούλλιον δὲ οὐδὲ αὐτὸς πρὸς αὐτὸν
received-in-exchange (a)-chrysobull and not-even he to him
ἐπὶ τῷ προαστείῳ ἐποιήσατο. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἔγραψε
for the estate made after and these(-things) wrote
πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν βασιλέα ὁ Τορνίκης ὁ τοῦ Ταρωνίτου
to the same emperor — Tornikios the of-the Taronite
ἀνεψιός, ὁ τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ ἐκείνου υἱός, ὅτι τὸν οἶκον
nephew the — of-Apoganem that son that the house
τοῦ βαρβάρου ὁ μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς Λέων τῷ ἐμῷ
of-the barbarian the most-blessed emperor Leo to-the my
πατρὶ ἐδωρήσατο· μετὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ πατρός μου θάνατον,
father gave after and the of-the father my death
διὰ τὸ ἔτι ἀνήλικον καὶ ὀρφανὸν τυγχάνειν ἐμέ, κατ᾽
because-of the still under-age and orphan to-be me by
ἐξουσίαν θεῖός μου τὸν τοιοῦτον οἶκον κατεκράτησεν, ἀεὶ
force uncle my the such house took-hold-of always
καθυπισχνούμενός μοι, ὅταν εἰς τὸν τέλειον τῆς ἡλικίας
promising me when to the full of-the age
ἔλθω χρόνον, ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν οἶκον τὸν πατρικόν· καὶ νῦν,
I-come time to-receive the house the paternal and now
ὡς ἔμαθον, δέδωκε τὸν τοιοῦτον οἶκον ὁ ἐμὸς θεῖος
as I-have-learned has-given the such house the my uncle
τῇ βασιλείᾳ σου, καὶ ἔλαβεν εἰς ἀντισήκωσιν αὐτοῦ
to-the majesty your and received in exchange its
τὸ προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγορᾶ ἐν Κελτζηνῇ. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν
the estate — of-Gregoras in Keltzene from and the
τοιούτων βασιλικῶν φιλοτιμιῶν τῶν πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα
such imperial favors the(-ones) to the prince
τοῦ Ταρὼν φθόνος ὑπεφύη καὶ ἐβλάστησε πρὸς αὐτὸν
— of-Taron envy grew-up and sprouted against him

παρά τε τοῦ Κακικίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος Βασπαρακακὰ καὶ
from both — Kakikios the prince of-Vasparakan and
Ἀδρανασὴρ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀσωτικίου
Adranase the curopalates of-Iberia and Asotikios
τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, οἵτινες ἔγραψαν πρὸς τὸν
the prince of-the princes who wrote to the
βασιλέα διαγογγύζοντες δι' ἣν αἰτίαν ὁ Ταρωνίτης μόνος
emperor grumbling for what cause the Taronite alone
ῥόγας ἀπολαύει βασιλικῆς, αὐτῶν ἁπάντων λαμβανόντων
(a)-stipend enjoys imperial they all receiving
οὐδέν. "τίνα γὰρ" ἔλεγον "περισσοτέραν δουλείαν ἡμῶν
nothing what for they-said greater service than-us
ποιεῖται, ἢ τί πλέον ἡμῶν τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἐπωφελεῖ; ὅθεν
does-he-do or what more than-us the Romans does-he-profit whence
χρὴ ἢ καὶ ἡμᾶς ὡς ἐκεῖνον ῥογεύεσθαι, ἢ μηδ' ἐκεῖνον
must either also us like that-one to-be-paid or not-even that-one
ἐντὸς τῆς τοιαύτης τυγχάνειν δωρεᾶς." ὁ δὲ μακάριος
within the such to-be gift the and blessed
Ῥωμανὸς ἀντέγραψε πρὸς αὐτοὺς μὴ παρ' αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπὶ
Romanos wrote-back to them not by him the to
τῷ Ταρωνίτῃ γενέσθαι ῥόγαν, ἵν' ἐπ' αὐτῷ κεῖται καὶ
the Taronite to-have-been-made stipend so-that on him lies also
ἡ ταύτης νῦν ἐκκοπή, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως·
the of-it now cutting-off but by the blessed emperor
καὶ μὴ δίκαιον εἶναι τὰ τῶν προβεβασιλευκότων παρὰ
and not just to-be the(-acts) of-those having-reigned-before by
τῶν ὕστερον ἀνατρέπεσθαι. ἔγραψε δ' ὅμως πρὸς τὸν
those later to-be-overturned he-wrote and nevertheless to the
αὐτὸν Ταρωνίτην, δηλοποιῶν αὐτῷ τὴν τῶν εἰρημένων
same Taronite making-known to-him the of-the said
ἀνδρῶν λύπην καὶ σκάνδαλον. ὁ δὲ ἀνήγαγε μήτε χρυσὸν
men grief and offense he and referred neither gold

μήτε ἄργυρον παρέχειν δύνασθαι, ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ ἔξωθεν
nor silver to-furnish to-be-able he-promised and outside
τῶν κατὰ τύπον ἀποστελλομένων ξενίων διδόναι ἱμάτια
of-the by rule sent gifts to-give garments
καὶ χαλκώματα μέχρι τῶν δέκα λιτρῶν συντιμώμενα·
and bronze-wares up-to the ten pounds valued
ἃ καὶ δέδωκε μέχρι τριῶν ἢ τεσσάρων ἐνιαυτῶν.
which also he-gave up-to three or four years
μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνήγαγε μὴ δύνασθαι παρέχειν τὸ
after and these(-things) he-referred not to-be-able to-furnish the
τοιοῦτον πάκτον· τὴν δὲ ῥόγαν ἢ προῖκα λαμβάνειν
such tribute the and stipend or gift to-receive
ἠξίου καθὼς ἐπὶ τοῦ μακαριωτάτου βασιλέως Λέοντος, ἢ
he-asked as under the most-blessed emperor Leo or
ἐκκοπῆναι αὐτήν. ὅθεν διὰ τὸ μὴ εἰς σκάνδαλον εἶναι
to-be-cut-off it whence because-of the not to offense to-be
τοῦ Κακικίου καὶ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν
— of-Kakikios and the curopalates and the others
ἐξέκοψε ταύτην ὁ εἰρημένος μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς
cut-off it the said most-blessed emperor
Ῥωμανός. παραμυθούμενος δὲ ὥσπερ αὐτόν, μετὰ ταῦτα
Romanos consoling and as-it-were him after these(-things)
τὸν τούτου υἱὸν Ἀσώτιον ἐν τῇ πόλει παραγεγονότα
the his son Asotios in the city having-arrived
εἰς πατρικίους ἐτίμησε καὶ φιλοφρονησάμενος αὐτάρκως
to patricians honored and having-treated-kindly amply
πρὸς τὰ ἴδια ἐξαπέστειλε. τοῦ δὲ μαγίστρου τοῦ
to the own(-lands) sent of-the and magistros —
Κρικορικίου τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντος, ἀνήγαγε Τορνίκιος ὁ
Krikorikios the life having-left referred Tornikios the
τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ υἱὸς ἔρωτα ἔχειν ἐγκάρδιον εἰσελθεῖν καὶ
— of-Apoganem son (a)-love to-have heartfelt to-come and

τὸν βασιλέα θεάσασθαι· ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
the emperor to-see for which the protospatharius
Κρινίτην καὶ ἑρμηνευτὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐξαπέστειλεν, ὃς
Krinites and interpreter the emperor sent who
καὶ εἰσήγαγεν ἐν τῇ πόλει τὸν εἰρημένον Τορνίκιον, καὶ
also brought into the city the said Tornikios and
προήγαγε τὸν αὐτὸν Τορνίκιον ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὴν τῶν
advanced the same Tornikios the emperor to the of-the
πατρικίων τιμήν. προετείνετο δὲ δικαιολογίας ἐπὶ τῷ
patricians honor he-put-forward and claims concerning the
τοῦ βαρβάρου οἴκῳ· καὶ ἀκούσας ὅτι προάστειον λαβὼν
of-the barbarian house and having-heard that (an)-estate having-received
ὁ θεῖος αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ Κελτζηνῇ τὴν τούτου παρεχώρησεν
the uncle his in — Keltzene the its had-ceded
ἐξουσίαν, ἔλεγε μὴ δύνασθαι τὸν θεῖον αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῇ
authority he-said not to-be-able the uncle his over the
πατρικῇ κληρονομίᾳ αὐτοῦ ποιεῖσθαι ἀνταλλαγήν, καὶ
paternal inheritance his to-make exchange and
ἠξίου ἢ τὸν οἶκον λαβεῖν ἢ τὸ προάστειον· εἰ δὲ μή,
he-asked either the house to-receive or the estate if and not
καὶ ἀμφότερα προσεχώρει τῷ βασιλεῖ πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἔχειν
also both he-ceded to-the emperor for the not to-have
αὐτὰ τοὺς ἐξαδέλφους αὐτοῦ. τούτου ἕνεκεν ὁ βασιλεύς,
them the cousins his of-this for-the-sake the emperor
ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ γέρων ὁ Ταρωνίτης ἐτύγχανεν ἀποθανών,
since also the old-man the Taronite happened having-died
ἀνελάβετο τὸ προάστειον καὶ οὐδὲ τὸν οἶκον ἀντέδωκεν,
took the estate and not-even the house gave-in-return
ἐπεὶ μηδὲ χρυσοβούλλιον, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω προείρηται,
since not-even (a)-chrysobull as above has-been-said-before
ἐπί τινι τούτων ἐξετέθη. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα εἰσῆλθε πρὸς
on any of-these was-issued after and these(-things) came to

τὴν βασιλεύουσαν Παγκράτειος ἐκεῖνος ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς
the reigning(-city) Pankratios that the first son
τοῦ μαγίστρου ἐκείνου Κρικορικίου τοῦ Ταρωνίτου, καὶ
of-the magistros that Krikorikios the Taronite and
προεβιβάσθη παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τὸ τῶν πατρικίων
was-promoted by the emperor to the of-the patricians
ἀξίωμα, καὶ γέγονε καὶ στρατηγὸς τοῦ Ταρών. ᾐτήσατο
dignity and became also general — of-Taron he-asked
δὲ γυναῖκα λαβεῖν ἀπὸ τῶν βασιλικῶν συγγενίδων, καὶ
and (a)-wife to-take from the imperial kinswomen and
δέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν τοῦ μαγίστρου Θεοφυλάκτου
gave him the emperor the of-the magistros Theophylaktos
ἀδελφὴν εἰς γυναῖκα. καὶ μετὰ τὸν γάμον διαθήκας
sister for wife and after the marriage (a)-will
ἐξέθετο, ἐν αἷς ἐδήλου ὅτι ἐάν μοι γένωνται παῖδες
he-set-out in which he-declared that if to-me there-be children
ἀπὸ τῆς τοιαύτης γυναικός, ἵνα ἔχωσι τὴν ἅπασάν μου
from the such wife that they-have the whole my
χώραν εἰς κλῆρον προγονικόν. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ᾐτήσατο
land for (an)-ancestral inheritance and upon this he-asked
βασιλέα δοθῆναι αὐτῷ τὸ προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγορᾶ
(the)-emperor to-be-given him the estate — of-Gregoras
πρὸς τὸ ἐν αὐτῷ τὴν πατρικίαν τὴν τούτου γυναῖκα
for the in it the patrician-lady the his wife
καθέζεσθαι· μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοιαύτης ἀποβίωσιν εἶναι πάλιν
to-live after and the of-such decease to-be again
τὸ τοιοῦτον προάστειον τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ. καὶ ἐπένευσε
the such estate of-the majesty his and assented
καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ πολλαῖς φιλοτιμίαις αὐτὸν
also to this the emperor and with-many favors him
δεξιωσάμενος μετὰ τῆς ἰδίας γυναικὸς ἐξαπέστειλεν εἰς τὴν
having-received with the own wife sent to the

χώραν αὐτοῦ. οἱ δὲ υἱοὶ τοῦ μαγίστρου Κρικορικίου, ὅ τε
land his the and sons of-the magistros Krikorikios the both
αὐτὸς Παγκράτειος ὁ πατρίκιος καὶ Ἀσώτιος ὁ πατρίκιος,
same Pankratios the patrician and Asotios the patrician
μεγάλως παρελύπουν καὶ ἐβιάζοντο τὸν οἰκεῖον αὐτῶν
greatly vexed and oppressed the own their
ἐξάδελφον Τορνίκιον τὸν πατρίκιον· ὃς μὴ ὑποφέρων τὴν
cousin Tornikios the patrician who not enduring the
ἀπὸ τούτων ἐπίθεσιν ἔγραψε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀποστεῖλαι
from these attack wrote to the emperor to-send
πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον καὶ παραλαβεῖν τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ,
(a)-trustworthy man and to-take-over the land his
αὐτὸν δὲ καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὸ παιδίον αὐτῶν πρὸς
him and also the wife and the child their to
τὸν βασιλέα εἰσαγαγεῖν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀπέστειλε τὸν
the emperor to-bring the and emperor sent the
πρωτοσπαθάριον Κρινίτην καὶ ἑρμηνέα πρὸς τὸ κατὰ
protospatharius Krinites and interpreter for the according-to
τὴν ἀξίωσιν αὐτοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι καὶ εἰσαγαγεῖν αὐτὸν
the request his to-take and to-bring him
ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ πόλει. ὅτε δὲ τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν
into the God-guarded city when and the such land
ὁ Κρινίτης κατέλαβεν, εὗρεν αὐτὸν ἤδη τὸν βίον
— Krinites reached he-found him already the life
ἀπολιπόντα, διαταξάμενον πρὸ τῆς τελευτῆς εἶναι πᾶσαν
having-left having-ordered before the end to-be all
τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ ὑποκειμένην τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων,
the land his subject to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans
τὴν δὲ γυναῖκα καὶ τὸ παιδίον αὐτοῦ εἰσελθεῖν πρὸς τὸν
the and wife and the child his to-come to the
βασιλέα· ᾧ καὶ δέδωκεν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς κατοίκησιν
emperor to-whom also gave the emperor for dwelling

εἰσελθούσης τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Μιχαὴλ τοῦ ποτὲ
(her)-having-come-in of-the protospatharius Michael the(-one) once
γεγονότος κομμερκιαρίου Χαλδίας καὶ Ψωμαθέως τὴν
having-been kommerkiarios of-Chaldia and of-Psomatheus the
μονήν. καὶ πάλιν ἀπεστάλη ὁ εἰρημένος Κρινίτης παρὰ τοῦ
monastery and again was-sent the said Krinites by the
βασιλέως πρὸς τὸ παραλαβεῖν τὴν χώραν τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ
emperor for the to-take-over the land — of-Apoganem
ἤτοι τὸ μέρος τοῦ πατρικίου Τορνικίου. ἀνταπέστειλαν δὲ
that-is the part of-the patrician Tornikios sent-back and
ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ταρωνίτου υἱοὶ οἱ τοῦ ἀποθανόντος ἐξάδελφοι,
from-there of-the Taronite sons the of-the deceased cousins
ἀξιοῦντες δοῦναι τὸ Οὐλνούτην καὶ ἔχειν τὴν χώραν
asking to-give — Oulnoute and to-have the land
τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν· μὴ γὰρ δύνασθαι ὅλως αὐτοὺς
of-the cousin their not for to-be-able at-all them
ζῆν, εἰ τὴν τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν χώραν ὡς οἰκείαν
to-live if the of-the cousin their land as own
κατάσχῃ ὁ βασιλεύς. οἰκείᾳ δὲ ἀγαθότητι ὑπείξας ὁ
should-hold the emperor by-own and goodness having-yielded the
βασιλεὺς τὴν αἴτησιν αὐτῶν ἐξεπλήρωσε, καὶ δέδωκεν
emperor the request their fulfilled and gave
αὐτοῖς μὲν τὴν χώραν τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου
to-them indeed the land — of-Apoganem the cousin
αὐτῶν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνελάβετο τὸ Οὐλνούτην μετὰ πάσης
their he and took — Oulnoute with all
τῆς περιχώρου αὐτοῦ. ἡ δὲ ὅλη τοῦ Ταρὼν χώρα εἰς
the surrounding-country its the and whole — of-Taron land into
δύο διανεμηθεῖσα ἐτύγχανεν· καὶ τὸ μὲν ἥμισυ οἱ τοῦ
two divided happened-to-be and the indeed half those of-the

μαγίστρου Κρικορικίου εἶχον υἱοί, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ οἱ τοῦ
magistros Krikorikios held sons the and half those —
Ἀπογάνεμ τοῦ πατρικίου, οἱ τούτων ἐξάδελφοι.
of-Apoganem the patrician the their cousins

XLIV · APACHOUNES AND MANZIKERT

Manzikert, Perkri, Chliat, Arzes, and their lands were held under the prince of princes of Armenia, until the emir Aposebatas and his brothers took them. These emirs submitted and paid tribute to the emperor. The succession of emirs is traced down to Apelbart, who killed Achamet by treachery and took his three fortresses, and Constantine argues that these fortresses belong to the emperor and block the way from Persia.

περὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τοῦ κάστρου τοῦ
concerning the land — of-Apachounes and the fortress —
Μαντζικίερτ καὶ τοῦ Περκρὶ καὶ τοῦ Χλιὰτ καὶ τοῦ
of-Manzikert and — of-Perkri and — of-Chliat and —
Χαλιὰτ καὶ τοῦ Ἄρζες καὶ τοῦ Τιβῆ καὶ τοῦ Χὲρτ καὶ
of-Chliat and — of-Arzes and — of-Tibe and — of-Chert and
τοῦ Σαλαμᾶς καὶ τοῦ Τζερματζοῦ.
— of-Salamas and — of-Tzermatzou
Ἰστέον ὅτι πρὸ τοῦ Ἀσωτίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν
(one)-must-know that before — Asotios the prince of-the
ἀρχόντων, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος
princes the father — of-Symbatios the prince
τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὃν ἀπεκεφάλισεν ὁ ἀμηρᾶς Περσίδος
of-the princes whom beheaded the emir of-Persia
ὁ Ἀποσάτας, ὃς καὶ ἐποίησε δύο υἱούς, τόν τε Ἀσώτιον
— Aposatas who also begot two sons — both Asotios
τὸν μετ᾽ αὐτὸν γενόμενον ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ
the(-one) after him having-become prince of-the princes and

Ἀπασάκιον τὸν μετὰ ταῦτα μάγιστρον τιμηθέντα, τὰ
Apasakios the(-one) after these(-things) (with)-magistros honored the
τρία ταῦτα κάστρα, τό τε Περκρὶ καὶ τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ
three these fortresses — both Perkri and — Chliat and
τὸ Ἄρσες, ὑπὸ τὴν τῆς Περσίδος ἐπικράτειαν ἐτύγχανον.
— Arzes under the — of-Persia dominion were
Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων ἐκαθέζετο τῶν ἀρχόντων εἰς τὴν μεγάλην
that the prince sat of-the princes in the great
Ἀρμενίαν, εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κάρς, καὶ ἐπεῖχε καὶ τὰ
Armenia in the fortress — Kars and held also the
τρία τὰ προγεγραμμένα κάστρα, τό τε Περκρί, τὸ Χαλιὰτ
three the above-written fortresses — both Perkri — Chliat
καὶ τὸ Ἄρζες, καὶ τὸ Τιβὴ καὶ τὸ Χὲρτ καὶ τὸ Σαλαμάς.
and — Arzes and — Tibe and — Chert and — Salamas
Ὅτι Ἀπελκὰρτ ἐκράτει τὸ Μαντζικίερτ, καὶ ἦν ὑπὸ τὴν
that Apelbart held — Manzikert and was under the
ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ
authority of-the prince of-the princes the father —
Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων. δέδωκε δὲ αὐτῷ
of-Symbatios the prince of-the princes gave and to-him
Ἀπελβὰρτ ὁ αὐτὸς Ἀσώτιος ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ
Apelbart the same Asotios the prince of-the princes also
τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ Περκρί· ὁ γὰρ
the fortress — Chliat and — Arzes and — Perkri the for
προρρηθεὶς Ἀσώτιος ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ
aforesaid Asotios the prince of-the princes the father —
Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, κατεῖχε πάσας τὰς
of-Symbatios the prince of-the princes held all the
τῆς ἀνατολῆς χώρας. τελευτήσαντος δὲ Ἀπελβάρτ, κατέσχε
of-the east lands having-died and Apelbart held
τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ ὁ ἴδιος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀβελχαμίτ, τοῦ
the authority his the own son his — Abelchamit —

δὲ Ἀβελχαμὶτ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησε τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ
and Abelchamit having-died held the authority his
ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀποσεβατάς. τοῦ δὲ Συμβατίου τοῦ
the first son his Aposebatas — and Symbatios the
ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων παρὰ τοῦ Ἀποσάτα τοῦ ἀμηρᾶ
prince of-the princes by — Aposatas the emir
Περσίδος ἀναιρεθέντος, ἐκράτησεν αὐθεντῶς καὶ κυρίως ὡς
of-Persia having-been-slain held in-own-right and in-lordship as
δεσπότης καὶ αὐτοκέφαλος τό τε κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικίερτ
master and independent the both fortress — Manzikert
καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα καὶ τὰς χώρας· ὅστις καὶ ὑπετάγη
and the other fortresses and the lands who also was-subjected
τῷ βασιλεῖ μετὰ τῶν ἑτέρων δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ τοῦ
to-the emperor with the other two brothers his —
Ἀπολεσφούετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη διὰ τὸ διαφόρως
Apolesphouet and — Aposelmes because-of the variously
καταπολεμηθῆναι τά τε κάστρα καὶ πραιδευθῆναι καὶ
to-have-been-warred-down the both fortresses and to-have-been-plundered and
ἀφανισθῆναι καὶ τὰς χώρας αὐτῶν παρὰ τοῦ δομεστίκου
to-have-been-destroyed also the lands their by the domestic
τῶν σχολῶν, παρέχοντος τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων καὶ
of-the scholae furnishing the emperor of-(the)-Romans also
πάκτα ὑπὲρ τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν. ἀπὸ δὲ
tributes for the fortresses and the districts their from and
τοῦ προρρηθέντος Ἀσωτίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων,
the aforesaid Asotios the prince of-the princes
τοῦ πατρὸς μὲν τοῦ Συμβατίου πάππου δὲ τοῦ δευτέρου
the father indeed — of-Symbatios grandfather and of-the second
Ἀσωτίου καὶ τοῦ μαγίστρου Ἀπασακίου, μέχρι ζωῆς τοῦ
Asotios and the magistros Apasakios until (the)-life of-the
δευτέρου Ἀσωτίου ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων ὑπῆρχον τὰ
second Asotios prince of-the princes were the

τοιαῦτα τρία κάστρα ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν
such three fortresses under the authority of-the prince of-the
ἀρχόντων, καὶ ἐλάμβανεν ἐξ αὐτῶν πάκτα ὁ ἄρχων
princes and received from them tributes the prince
τῶν ἀρχόντων. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Μαντζικίερτ,
of-the princes but also the fortress — of-Manzikert
μετὰ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τοῦ Χαρκὰ καὶ
with the land — of-Apachounes and — of-Charka and
τοῦ Κορή, ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν καὶ ἐπικράτειαν τοῦ αὐτοῦ
— of-Kore under the authority and dominion of-the same
ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων ὑπῆρχεν, ἕως ὅτου Ἀποσεβατὰς
prince of-the princes was until when Aposebatas
ὁ ἀμηρᾶς τοῦ Μαντζικίερτ μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ
the emir — of-Manzikert with the two brothers his
τοῦ τε Ἀπολεσφούετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη ὑπετάγησαν τῷ
— both Apolesphouet and — Aposelmes were-subjected to-the
βασιλεῖ, διδόντες καὶ πάκτα ὑπέρ τε τῶν κάστρων καὶ
emperor giving also tributes for both the fortresses and
τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν· ἐπεὶ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων δοῦλος
the districts their since the prince of-the princes (a)-servant
τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων τυγχάνει ὡς παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
of-the emperor of-the Romans is as by him
προβαλλόμενος καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δεχόμενος ἀξίωμα, δηλονότι
being-appointed and the such receiving dignity evidently
καὶ τὰ ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ δεσποζόμενα κάστρα καὶ πολιτεῖαι καὶ
also the by him ruled fortresses and cities and
χωρία τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων τυγχάνουσιν.
districts of-the emperor of-the Romans are
Ὅτι τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων τῆς
that — Symbatios the prince of-the princes of-the
μεγάλης Ἀρμενίας κρατηθέντος παρὰ τοῦ Ἀποσάτα
great Armenia having-been-seized by — Aposatas

τοῦ ἀμηρᾶ Περσίδος καὶ ἀποκεφαλισθέντος παρ' αὐτοῦ,
the emir of-Persia and having-been-beheaded by him
ἐκράτησεν ὁ Ἀποσεβατάς, ὁ καθεζόμενος εἰς τὸ
held — Aposebatas the(-one) sitting in the
κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικίερτ, τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ τὸ
fortress — Manzikert the fortress — Chliat and the
κάστρον τὸ Περκρὶ καὶ τὴν πολιτείαν τοῦ Ἄρζες.
fortress — Perkri and the city — of-Arzes
Ὅτι ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ
that the second brother — of-Aposebatas — Apolesphouet
καὶ ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁ προγονὸς ὁ Ἀχμὲτ ἐκράτησαν
and the nephew his and the stepson — Achamet held
τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ
the fortress — Chliat and the fortress — Arzes and the
κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζίκε, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑπετάγησαν τῷ Ῥωμαίων
fortress — Altzike and they were-subjected to-the of-(the)-Romans
βασιλεῖ καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ καὶ παρεῖχον
emperor and became under the authority his and furnished
καὶ πάκτα καθὼς καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀποσεβατὰς
also tributes as also the brother his Aposebatas
ὑπέρ τε τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν.
for both the fortresses and the districts their
Ὅτι ὁ τρίτος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ
that the third brother — of-Aposebatas and — of-Apolesphouet
ὁ Ἀποσέλμης ἐκράτει τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Τζερματζοῦ μετὰ καὶ
— Aposelmes held the fortress — of-Tzermatzou with also
τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ, καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπετάγη τῷ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
the districts its and he was-subjected to-the of-the Romans
βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐδίδου πάκτα καθὼς καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ
emperor and gave tributes as also the brother his —
Ἀποσεβατὰς καὶ ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ.
Aposebatas and the second brother his — Apolesphouet

Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησε τὸ Μαντζικίερτ
that — Aposebatas having-died held — Manzikert
μετὰ τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς ἐπικρατείας αὐτοῦ πάσης ὁ
with the districts its and the dominion its all —
Ἀβδηραχεὶμ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ· τελευτήσαντος δὲ τοῦ
Abderachim the son — of-Aposebatas having-died and —
Ἀβδηραχεὶμ ἐκράτησεν ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς
Abderachim held — Apolesphouet the second brother
τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, θεῖος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδηραχείμ, τὸ κάστρον
— of-Aposebatas uncle and — of-Abderachim the fortress
τὸ Μαντζικίερτ καὶ πάσας τὰς προρρηθείσας χώρας· καὶ
— Manzikert and all the aforesaid lands and
αὐτοῦ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησεν ὁ τρίτος ἀδελφός, ἤγουν
him having-died held the third brother that-is
τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ, ὁ Ἀποσέλμης τό
— of-Aposebatas and — of-Apolesphouet — Aposelmes —
τε Μαντζικίερτ καὶ πάσας τὰς προρρηθείσας χώρας.
both Manzikert and all the aforesaid lands
Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσεβατὰς εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀβδηραχεὶμ καὶ τὸν
that — Aposebatas had (a)-son — Abderachim and —
Ἀπελμουζέ.
Apelmouze
Ὅτι ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ εἶχε προγονὸν καὶ ἀνεψιὸν τὸν
that — Apolesphouet had (a)-stepson and nephew —
Ἀχάμετ· υἱὸν γὰρ οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλὰ τὸν Ἀχάμετ τὸν
Achamet son for not he-had but — Achamet the
προγονὸν καὶ ἀνεψιὸν αὐτοῦ εἶχεν ἀντὶ υἱοῦ.
stepson and nephew his he-had in-place-of (a)-son
Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσέλμης εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀπελβάρτ, τὸν
that — Aposelmes had (a)-son — Apelbart the(-one)
ἀρτίως κρατοῦντα τὸ Μαντζικίερτ.
now holding — Manzikert

Ὅτι ἀποθανόντος τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ κατέλιπε τὸν Ἀβδηραχεὶμ
that having-died — Aposebatas he-left — Abderachim
τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ἀμηρᾶν· ὁ δὲ ἕτερος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ
the son his (as)-emir the and other son his —
Ἀπελμουζὲ ἦν νήπιος πάνυ, διὸ καὶ κατεφρονήθη ἐλθεῖν
Apelmouze was (an)-infant very therefore also he-was-slighted to-come
πρὸς τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐξουσίαν.
to the of-the father and of-the brother his authority
Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσεβατὰς ὁ πρῶτος ἀδελφὸς ἐκαθέζετο εἰς
that — Aposebatas the first brother sat in
τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικίερτ, καὶ ἐκράτει, καθὼς εἴρηται,
the fortress — Manzikert and held as has-been-said
ταύτας τὰς χώρας, τό τε Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τὸ Κορὴ
these the lands — both Apachounes and — Kore
καὶ τὸ Χάρκα, καὶ ἐδίδου τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν πάκτα τῷ
and — Charka and gave the for them tributes to-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ· καὶ τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησεν
of-(the)-Romans emperor and him having-died held
ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀβδηραχείμ, καὶ ἐδίδου καὶ αὐτὸς τὰ
the son his — Abderachim and gave also he the
προρρηθέντα πάκτα διὰ τὸ εἶναι, καθὼς προείρηται,
aforesaid tributes because-of the to-be as has-been-said-before
νήπιον παντελῶς τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν Ἀπελμουζέ.
(an)-infant utterly the brother his — Apelmouze
Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀβδηραχεὶμ τελευτήσαντος καὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ
that — Abderachim having-died and the brother his
Ἀπελμουζὲ ὡς νηπίου καταφρονηθέντος, ἐκράτησε τὸ
Apelmouze as (an)-infant having-been-slighted held the
κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικίερτ καὶ τὰς ὑπ᾽ αὐτῷ προρρηθείσας
fortress — Manzikert and the under it aforesaid
χώρας ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ὁ προρρηθεὶς
lands the second brother — of-Aposebatas the aforesaid

Ἀπολεσφούετ, θεῖος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδηραχεὶμ καὶ τοῦ διὰ τὴν
Apolesphouet uncle and — of-Abderachim and of-the because-of the
νηπιότητα καταφρονηθέντος ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀπελμουζέ.
infancy slighted brother his — Apelmouze
Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησεν ὁ τρίτος
that — Apolesphouet having-died held the third
ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ἤγουν ὁ Ἀποσέλμης, τὸ κάστρον
brother — of-Aposebatas that-is — Aposelmes the fortress
τὸ Μαντζικίερτ μετὰ τῶν χωρίων τῶν προρρηθέντων. ὁ
— Manzikert with the districts the aforesaid the
δὲ προρρηθεὶς Ἀχάμετ, ὁ καὶ ἀνεψιὸς καὶ προγονὸς
and aforesaid Achamet the(-one) both nephew and stepson
τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ, ἐκράτει εἰδήσει καὶ βουλήσει
— of-Apolesphouet held with-the-knowledge and will
τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ τό τε Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ
— of-Apolesphouet — both Chliat and — Arzes and —
Περκρί· καὶ γὰρ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ υἱὸν μὴ ἔχων, καθὼς
Perkri and for — Apolesphouet (a)-son not having as
προείρηται, τοῦτον τὸν Ἀχάμετ τόν τε ἀνεψιὸν καὶ
has-been-said-before this — Achamet the both nephew and
προγονὸν αὐτοῦ εἶχε κληρονόμον πάσης αὐτοῦ τῆς
stepson his had (as)-heir of-all his the
ὑποστάσεως καὶ τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ.
substance and the fortresses and the districts his
Ὅτι τελευτήσαντος τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη ἐκράτησε τὸ κάστρον
that having-died — Aposelmes held the fortress
τὸ Μαντζικίερτ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀπελβὰρτ μετὰ καὶ
— Manzikert the son his — Apelbart with also
τῆς περιχώρου αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ Ἀχάμετ ἐκράτησε τὰ τρία
the surrounding-country its — and Achamet held the three

κάστρα, τό τε κάστρον τὸ Χλιάτ, τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἄρζες
fortresses the both fortress — Chliat the fortress — Arzes
καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζίκε.
and the fortress — Altzike
Ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἀχάμετ δοῦλος ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως, καθὰ
that also he — Achamet (a)-servant was of-the emperor as
καὶ προείρηται, παρέχων καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ
also has-been-said-before furnishing both the for himself and the for
τοῦ θείου αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ πάκτα. ὁ δὲ Ἀπελβὰρτ
the uncle his — Apolesphouet tributes — and Apelbart
μετὰ δόλου καὶ χλεύης αὐτὸν ἔσφαξε, καὶ ἀνελάβετο τὰ τρία
with guile and mockery him slaughtered and took the three
αὐτοῦ κάστρα, τό τε κάστρον τὸ Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ κάστρον
his fortresses the both fortress — Chliat and the fortress
τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζίκε· καὶ ταῦτα ὀφείλει
— Arzes and the fortress — Altzike and these ought
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀναλαβέσθαι ὡς ἴδια αὐτοῦ τυγχάνοντα, ὅτι
the emperor to-take-back as own his being because
ταῦτα πάντα τὰ προρρηθέντα κάστρα καὶ αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι
these all the aforesaid fortresses and the aforesaid
χῶραι οὐδέποτε γεγόνασιν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῆς Περσίδος
lands never have-been under the authority — of-Persia
ἢ ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ, ἀλλ' ὑπῆρχον,
or under the authority of-the commander-of-the-faithful but were
καθὼς εἴρηται, ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ κυροῦ Λέοντος
as has-been-said in the days of-the lord Leo
βασιλέως ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος
emperor under the authority — of-Symbatios the prince
τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
of-the princes and after these(-things) came under the authority
τῶν τριῶν ἀδελφῶν τῶν προρρηθέντων ἀμηράδων, τοῦ τε
of-the three brothers the aforesaid emirs — both

Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη, καὶ
Aposebatas and — Apolesphouet and — Aposelmes and
ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτῶν καὶ ἐδουλώθησαν καὶ ἐπακτώθησαν
in the days their both were-made-servants and were-made-tributary
καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῶν βασιλέων Ῥωμαίων.
and came under the authority of-the emperors of-(the)-Romans
Ὅτι τὰ τρία ταῦτα κάστρα, τό τε Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ
that the three these fortresses — both Chliat and —
Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ Περκρί, εἰ κρατεῖ ὁ βασιλεύς, Περσικὸν
Arzes and — Perkri if holds the emperor (a)-Persian
φοσσάτον κατὰ Ῥωμανίας ἐξελθεῖν οὐ δύναται, ἐπειδὴ
army against Romania to-go-out not is-able since
μέσον τυγχάνουσι τῆς τε Ῥωμανίας καὶ Ἀρμενίας, καὶ
between they-are — both of-Romania and Armenia and
εἰσὶ φραγμὸς καὶ ἄπληκτα τῶν φοσσάτων.
are (a)-barrier and camps of-the armies

XLV · THE IBERIANS

The Iberians claim descent from David through the wife of Uriah, and an origin in Jerusalem. Spandiates, whom no sword could wound except in the heart, defeated the Persians. The chapter traces their princes, recounts the emperors' campaigns in Phasiane and the Iberians' refusal to give up Ketzeon, and rejects the curopalates' claim, under the chrysobulls, to Phasiane, Abnikon, and Mastaton. It sets the river Erax as the boundary between Iberian and imperial land.

περὶ τῶν Ἰβήρων.
concerning the Iberians
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἑαυτοὺς σεμνύνοντες οἱ Ἴβηρες, ἤγουν οἱ
(one)-must-know that themselves glorifying the Iberians that-is those
τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, λέγουσιν ἑαυτοὺς κατάγεσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς
of-the curopalates say themselves to-be-descended from the

γυναικὸς Οὐρίου τῆς παρὰ τοῦ Δαβὶδ τοῦ προφήτου
wife of-Uriah the(-one) by — David the prophet
καὶ βασιλέως μοιχευθείσης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν ἐξ αὐτῆς
and king seduced from for the from her
τεχθέντων παίδων τῷ Δαβὶδ ἑαυτοὺς λέγουσι κατάγεσθαι,
born children — to-David themselves they-say to-be-descended
καὶ συγγενεῖς εἶναι Δαβὶδ τοῦ προφήτου καὶ βασιλέως καὶ
and kinsmen to-be of-David the prophet and king and
ὡς ἐκ τούτου καὶ τῆς ὑπεραγίας θεοτόκου, διὰ τὸ ἐκ
as from this also of-the all-holy God-bearer because-of the from
τοῦ σπέρματος Δαβὶδ ταύτην κατάγεσθαι. διὰ τοῦτο
the seed of-David her to-be-descended because-of this
καὶ οἱ μεγιστᾶνες τῶν Ἰβήρων ἀκωλύτως τὰς συγγενίδας
also the grandees of-the Iberians without-hindrance the kinswomen
αὐτῶν πρὸς γάμον ἄγουσι, τὴν παλαιὰν οἰόμενοι φυλάττειν
their for marriage take the ancient supposing to-keep
νομοθεσίαν· ἐξ Ἱερουσαλήμ τε λέγουσιν εἶναι τὴν γένησιν
legislation from Jerusalem and they-say to-be the origin
αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε κατ᾽ ὄναρ μετελθεῖν καὶ
their and from the there by (a)-dream to-have-migrated and
κατοικῆσαι πρὸς τὰ μέρη Περσίδος ἤγουν εἰς τὴν χώραν
to-have-settled toward the parts of-Persia that-is in the land
εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν. οἱ δὲ χρηματισθέντες καὶ
in which now they-dwell those and having-been-commanded-by-oracle and
ἐξελθόντες ἐκ τῆς Ἱερουσαλὴμ ὑπῆρχον ὅ τε Δαβὶδ ἐκεῖνος
having-gone-out from — Jerusalem were — both David that
καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Σπανδιάτης, ὅστις Σπανδιάτης ἦν
and the brother his Spandiates who Spandiates was
ἐκ θεοῦ λαβὼν χάρισμα, ὡς αὐτοὶ φάσκουσι, τοῦ μὴ
from God having-received (a)-gift as they say of-the not
ἐν πολέμῳ ἅπτεσθαι αὐτοῦ ξίφος εἰς οἷον δήποτε μέλος
in war to-touch him (a)-sword on whatever soever limb

τοῦ σώματος αὐτοῦ ἄνευ τῆς καρδίας, ἣν καὶ διά τινος
of-the body his except the heart which also by some
περισκεπάσματος ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις περιεφρούρει. διὰ
covering in the wars he-guarded because-of
τοῦτο καὶ ἐπτοοῦντο τοῦτον καὶ ἐδεδίεισαν οἱ Πέρσαι· ὁ
this also feared him and dreaded the Persians he
δὲ νενίκηκεν αὐτοὺς καὶ αὐτῶν κατεκράτησε, καὶ τοὺς
and conquered them and over-them prevailed and the
συγγενεῖς ἐνῴκισεν Ἴβηρας εἰς τὰς δυσκολίας τὰς νῦν παρ᾽
kinsmen settled Iberians in the difficult-places those now by
αὐτῶν κρατουμένας, ἐξ ὧν κατ᾽ ὀλίγον ἐπλατύνθησαν
them held from which by little they-spread-out
καὶ ηὐξάνθησαν καὶ εἰς μέγα ἔθνος ἐγένοντο. εἶθ᾽ οὕτω
and increased and into (a)-great nation became then thus
τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου κατὰ Περσίδος ἐκστρατεύσαντος
the emperor Heraclius against Persia having-marched
ἡνώθησαν καὶ συνεταξίδευσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἔκτοτε ὑπέταξαν
they-united and campaigned-with him and from-then they-subjected
τῷ φόβῳ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων μᾶλλον
by-the fear of-Heraclius the emperor of-(the)-Romans rather
ἤπερ τῇ ἑαυτῶν ἰσχύϊ καὶ δυνάμει πόλεις καὶ χώρας
than by-the their-own strength and power cities and lands
ἱκανὰς τῶν Περσῶν· ἅπαξ γὰρ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου
considerable of-the Persians once for the emperor Heraclius
τοὺς Πέρσας τροπωσαμένου καὶ εἰς τὸ μηκέτι εἶναι τὴν
the Persians having-routed and to the no-longer to-be the
τούτων ἀρχὴν παραστήσαντος, εὐάλωτοι καὶ εὐχείρωτοι
their rule having-brought easily-taken and easily-subdued
οὐ μόνον τοῖς Ἴβηρσιν ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς οἱ
not only to-the Iberians but also to-the Saracens the
Πέρσαι γεγόνασι. διὰ δὲ τὸ κατάγεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς
Persians became because-of and the to-be-descended them as

αὐτοὶ λέγουσιν, ἐκ τῆς Ἱερουσαλήμ, διὰ τὸ μεγάλην
they say from — Jerusalem because-of the great
πίστιν ἔχειν ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐν τῷ τάφῳ τοῦ κυρίου
faith to-have in them and in the tomb of-the Lord
ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, καὶ κατά τινας καιροὺς ἀφθόνως
our Jesus Christ and at certain times abundantly
ἀποστέλλουσι χρήματα τῷ πατριάρχῃ τῆς ἁγίας πόλεως
they-send monies to-the patriarch of-the holy city
καὶ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε Χριστιανοῖς. ὁ δὲ προρρηθεὶς Δαβίδ, ὁ
and to-the there Christians the and aforesaid David the
τοῦ Σπανδιάτου ἀδελφός, ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Παγκράτειον,
— of-Spandiates brother begot (a)-son — Pankratios
καὶ ὁ Παγκράτειος ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀσώτιον, καὶ
and — Pankratios begot (a)-son — Asotios and
ὁ Ἀσώτιος ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀδρανασὴ τὸν καὶ
— Asotios begot (a)-son — Adranase the(-one) also
κουροπαλάτην τιμηθέντα παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
(with)-curopalates honored by Leo the Christ-loving
βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων. ὁ δὲ Σπανδιάτης ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ
emperor of-(the)-Romans — and Spandiates the brother of-the
προρρηθέντος Δαβὶδ ἐτελεύτησεν ἄτεκνος. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐξ
aforesaid David died childless from and the from
Ἱερουσαλὴμ μετοικήσεως αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν νῦν οἰκουμένην
Jerusalem migration their to the now inhabited
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν χώραν ἔτη υ΄ ἢ καὶ φ΄ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον,
by them land years 400 or also 500 until the today
ἥτις ἐστὶν ἰνδικτιὼν ι΄, ἔτη ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ͵ςυξ΄,
which is (the)-indiction 10 years from (the)-creation of-(the)-world 6460
ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Κωνσταντίνου καὶ Ῥωμανοῦ τῶν
under the reign of-Constantine and Romanos the
φιλοχρίστων καὶ πορφυρογεννήτων βασιλέων Ῥωμαίων.
Christ-loving and porphyrogennetos emperors of-(the)-Romans

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ φιλόχριστος καὶ πορφυρογέννητος καὶ
(one)-must-know that the Christ-loving and porphyrogennetos and
ἀοίδιμος βασιλεὺς Λέων ἀκούσας ὅτι εἰς τόπον τὸν
celebrated emperor Leo having-heard that to (the)-place the(-one)
λεγόμενον Φασιανὴν ἐλθόντες οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ τὰς ἐκεῖσε
called Phasiane having-come the Saracens the there
ἐκκλησίας ἐποίησαν κάστρα, ἀπέστειλε τὸν πατρίκιον καὶ
churches made fortresses sent the patrician and
στρατηγὸν τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν τὸν Λαλάκωνα μετὰ τοῦ
general of-the Armeniakoi — Lalakon with the
στρατηγοῦ Κωλωνείας καὶ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Μεσοποταμίας
general of-Koloneia and the general of-Mesopotamia
καὶ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Χαλδίας, καὶ κατέστρεψαν τὰ τοιαῦτα
and the general of-Chaldia and they-destroyed the such
κάστρα, τὰς ἐκκλησίας ἐλευθερώσαντες, ληϊσάμενοι καὶ
fortresses the churches having-freed having-plundered also
πᾶσαν τὴν Φασιανὴν τῷ τότε καιρῷ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν
all — Phasiane at-the then time by the Saracens
κρατουμένην. καὶ εἶθ' οὕτω πάλιν ἀπέστειλεν τὸν μάγιστρον
held and then thus again he-sent the magistros
Κατακαλὸν καὶ δομέστικον τῶν σχολῶν, ὃς ἐλθὼν ἐν
Katakalon and domestic of-the scholae who having-come to
τῷ κάστρῳ Θεοδοσιουπόλεως καὶ τὰ πέριξ αὐτῆς
the fortress of-Theodosiopolis and the(-parts) around it
ληϊσάμενος καὶ τὴν χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς καὶ τὰ περὶ
having-plundered and the land — of-Phasiane and the around
αὐτὴν κάστρα τῷ ὁμοίῳ ὀλέθρῳ παραδοὺς ὑπέστρεψε,
it fortresses to-the like destruction having-handed-over returned
μεγάλην πληγὴν ἐν τούτῳ δοὺς τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς. ἐπὶ
great (a)-blow in this having-given to-the Saracens under
δὲ τῆς βασιλείας κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ βασιλέως ὁ μάγιστρος
and the reign of-lord Romanos (the)-emperor the magistros

Ἰωάννης ὁ Κουρκούας ἀπερχόμενος κατὰ τοῦ κάστρου
John the Kourkouas going-away against the fortress
Τιβίου εἰς τὴν δίοδον αὐτοῦ ἠφάνισε τὴν πᾶσαν χώραν
of-Tibion on the passage his destroyed the whole land
τῆς Φασιανῆς ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κρατουμένην. ἀλλὰ
— of-Phasiane as by the Saracens held but
καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος Θεόφιλος ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος
also the patrician Theophilos the brother of-the aforesaid
μαγίστρου Ἰωάννου, τὸ πρῶτον αὐτοῦ στρατηγεύοντος ἐν
magistros John the first(-time) him being-general in
Χαλδίᾳ, ἐπραίδευσε τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς ὡς
Chaldia plundered the such land — of-Phasiane as
καὶ τότε ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν δεσποζομένην. μέχρι γὰρ
also then by the Saracens ruled until for
τοῦ γεγονέναι τὸν λόγον μετὰ τοὺς Θεοδοσιουπολίτας
the to-have-been-made the agreement with the Theodosiopolitans
εἰς τὴν χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς χωρίον οὐ συνέστη, οὐδὲ εἰς
in the land — of-Phasiane (a)-village not was-founded nor in
τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου· καὶ οἱ Ἴβηρες πάντοτε εἶχον
the fortress — of-Abnikon and the Iberians always had
ἀγάπην καὶ φιλίαν μετὰ τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν καὶ τῶν
love and friendship with the Theodosiopolitans and the
Ἀβνικιωτῶν καὶ μετὰ τῶν Μαντζικιερτῶν καὶ μετὰ πᾶσαν
Abnikiotes and with the Manzikertians and with all
τὴν Περσίδα, ἀλλ' ἐν Φασιανῇ οὐδέποτε ἐπεκτήσαντο χωρία.
— Persia but in Phasiane never they-acquired villages
Ὅτι πολλάκις ὁ κῦρις Λέων ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ ὁ
that often the lord Leo the emperor and the
κῦρις Ῥωμανὸς καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ βασιλεία ἡμῶν ἐπεζήτησε
lord Romanos and itself the majesty our sought
τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κετζέον τοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι αὐτὸ καὶ
the fortress — Ketzeon of-the to-take it and

εἰσαγαγεῖν ταξάτους, πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἐκεῖθεν σιταρχεῖσθαι
to-put-in garrison-troops for the not from-there to-be-provisioned
τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἐξασφαλιζόμενοι πρός τε τὸν
— Theodosiopolis making-sure with both the
κουροπαλάτην καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς αὐτοῦ τοῦ μετὰ τὸ
curopalates and the brothers his of-the after the
παραληφθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν ἀναλαβέσθαι αὐτοὺς τὸ
to-be-taken — Theodosiopolis to-take-back them the
τοιοῦτον κάστρον. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἠνέσχοντο οἱ Ἴβηρες τοῦτο
such fortress but not endured the Iberians this
ποιῆσαι διὰ τὴν ἀγάπην τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν καὶ
to-do because-of the love of-the Theodosiopolitans and
διὰ τὸ μὴ πορθηθῆναι τὸ κάστρον Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλ᾽
because-of the not to-be-sacked the fortress Theodosiopolis but
ἀντεδήλωσαν τὸν κῦριν Ῥωμανὸν καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν,
replied-to the lord Romanos and the majesty our
λέγοντες ὅτι εἰ τοῦτο ποιήσομεν, ἀτιμία ἔχομεν γενέσθαι
saying that if this we-shall-do dishonor we-are-bound to-come-to
εἰς τοὺς γείτονας ἡμῶν, οἷον εἰς τὸν μάγιστρον καὶ εἰς
among the neighbors our such-as to the magistros and to
τὸν ἐξουσιαστὴν Ἀβασγίας καὶ εἰς τὸν Βασπαρακανίτην
the exousiastes of-Abasgia and to the Vasparakanite
καὶ εἰς τοὺς ὑπερεξάρχοντας τῶν Ἀρμενίων, καὶ εἰπεῖν
and to the chief-princes of-the Armenians and to-say
ἔχουσιν ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπίστους ἔχει τοὺς Ἴβηρας, τόν
they-will-have that the emperor faithless holds the Iberians the
τε κουροπαλάτην καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς αὐτοῦ, καὶ οὐ πιστεύει
both curopalates and the brothers his and not trusts
αὐτοῖς, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀνελάβετο τὸ κάστρον ἐξ αὐτῶν.
them and because-of this took the fortress from them
ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἂς ἀποστείλῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς τουρμάρχην ἢ
but rather let send the emperor (a)-tourmarch or

βασιλικόν τινα, καὶ ἂς καθέζηται εἰς κάστρον τοῦ
(an)-imperial-agent some and let him-sit in (the)-fortress —
Κετζέου, καὶ ἂς θεωρῇ. καὶ ἐδέξαντο διὰ κελεύσεως ὅτι
of-Ketzeon and let him-observe and they-received by order that
τί ὄφελος ἢ τουρμάρχην ἢ βασιλικὸν ἀποστεῖλαι;
what profit either (a)-tourmarch or (an)-imperial-agent to-send
πάντως ἐὰν εἰσέλθῃ εἴτε τουρμάρχης εἴτε βασιλικός,
at-all if enters either (a)-tourmarch or (an)-imperial-agent
μετὰ δέκα ἢ δώδεκα ἀνθρώπων ἔχει εἰσελθεῖν, καὶ
with ten or twelve men he-will-have to-enter and
καθέζεσθαι ἔχει εἰς τὸ ἄπληκτον ὃ παρ᾽ ὑμῖν λάβῃ·
to-sit he-will-have in the quarters which from you he-takes
καὶ ἐπεὶ πολλαί εἰσιν ὁδοὶ αἱ εἰσάγουσαι εἰς τὸ κάστρον
and since many are roads those leading into the fortress
Θεοδοσιουπόλεως, οὐ δύναται ἀπὸ τοῦ κάστρου βλέπειν τὰ
of-Theodosiopolis not is-able from the fortress to-see the
εἰσερχόμενα καρβάνια εἰς τὸ κάστρον Θεοδοσιουπόλεως·
entering caravans into the fortress of-Theodosiopolis
δύνανται δὲ εἰσέρχεσθαι καρβάνια ἐν Θεοδοσιουπόλει
are-able and to-enter caravans into Theodosiopolis
τῇ νυκτὶ ἐκείνων μηδὲν νοούντων. ἀλλ᾽ οὖν διὰ τὸ
by-the night they nothing perceiving but then because-of the
μὴ θέλειν τοὺς Ἴβηρας πορθηθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν
not to-wish the Iberians to-be-sacked — Theodosiopolis
ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον σιταρχεῖσθαι, τούτου ἕνεκα οὐχ ὑπήκουσαν
but rather to-be-provisioned of-this for-the-sake not they-obeyed
καὶ δέδωκαν τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κετζέον, καίτοι καὶ ὅρκον
and gave the fortress — Ketzeon although even (an)-oath
ἔγγραφον δεχόμενοι τοῦ μετὰ τὸ παραληφθῆναι τὴν
written receiving of-the after the to-be-taken —
Θεοδοσιούπολιν ἀποστραφῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον.
Theodosiopolis to-be-returned to-them the such fortress

Ὅτι οὐδέποτε ἐβουλήθησαν οἱ Ἴβηρες πραιδεῦσαι ἢ
that never wished the Iberians to-plunder or
αἰχμαλωτίσαι τὰ πέριξ τοῦ κάστρου Θεοδοσιουπόλεως
to-take-captive the(-parts) around the fortress of-Theodosiopolis
ἢ τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ, ἢ εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου ἢ
or the villages its or at the fortress — of-Abnikon or
τὰ περὶ αὐτὸ χωρία, ἢ εἰς τὸ κάστρον Μαντζικίερτ καὶ
the around it villages or at the fortress Manzikert and
εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπικράτειαν.
in the its dominion
Ὅτι καθὼς ἐνίσταται ὁ κουροπαλάτης περὶ τῶν
that as insists the curopalates concerning the
χωρίων τῆς Φασιανῆς ἐπιζητῶν ὅλην τὴν Φασιανὴν καὶ
villages — of-Phasiane seeking whole — Phasiane and
τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου, προσφασιζόμενος χρυσοβούλλια
the fortress — of-Abnikon alleging chrysobulls
ἔχειν τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ καὶ τῆς
to-have of-the blessed emperor the lord Romanos and of-the
ἡμετέρας βασιλείας, ὧν καὶ τὰ ἴσα πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀπέστειλε
our majesty of-which also the copies to us he-sent
διὰ τοῦ Ζουρβανέλη πρωτοσπαθαρίου τοῦ ἀζάτου αὐτοῦ,
through — Zourbanele protospatharius the azat his
ταῦτα ἐπισκεψάμενοι εὕρομεν αὐτὸν μηδεμίαν βοήθειαν
these having-examined we-found him no help
ἔχοντα. τὸ μὲν γὰρ χρυσοβούλλιον τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἡμῶν
having the indeed for chrysobull of-the father-in-law our
περιέχει ὑποσχέσθαι τὸν αὐτὸν κουροπαλάτην, ὡς δι᾽ ὅρκου
contains to-have-promised the same curopalates as by oath
ἐβεβαίωσεν αὐτὸν οἰκείᾳ χειρὶ ἐγγραψάμενος, τοῦ διαμεῖναι
confirmed it with-own hand having-written of-the to-remain
ἐν τῇ πίστει τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐχθροῖς
in the faith of-the our majesty and the indeed enemies

ἡμῶν ἀντιμάχεσθαι τοῖς δὲ φίλοις ὑπερασπίζεσθαι, καὶ
our to-fight-against the and friends to-defend and
τὴν ἀνατολὴν ὑπόσπονδον ποιῆσαι τῇ βασιλείᾳ ἡμῶν, καὶ
the east tributary to-make to-the majesty our and
κάστρα χειρώσασθαι, καὶ μεγάλα πρὸς θεράπειαν ἡμῶν
fortresses to-subdue and great for service our
ἔργα ποιήσασθαι· καὶ ὑπεσχέθη αὐτοῖς παρὰ τοῦ πενθεροῦ
works to-do and it-was-promised to-them by the father-in-law
ἡμῶν ἵνα ἐὰν φυλάξῃ τὴν τοιαύτην πίστιν δούλωσιν καὶ
our that if he-keep the such faith servitude and
εὐγνωμοσύνην, διαμείνῃ ἀμετασάλευτος καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ
loyalty he-will-remain unmoved both he and those
τοῦ γένους αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ τούτου ἀρχῇ καὶ ἐξουσίᾳ, καὶ οὐ
of-the family his in the his rule and authority and not
μεταστήσει τὰ ὅρια τῶν τόπων αὐτοῦ ἀλλὰ κατὰ τῶν
will-move the boundaries of-the places his but according-to the
πρώην βασιλέων τὰ σύμφωνα στέρξει καὶ περαιτέρω
former emperors the agreements will-be-content-with and further
μὴ ὑπερβήσεται, καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲ κωλύσει αὐτὸν καταστρέψαι
not will-overstep and that not-even will-hinder him to-destroy
τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα τῶν ἐχθρῶν,
— Theodosiopolis and the other fortresses of-the enemies
κἄν τε διὰ αὐτοῦ μόνου πολιορκηθήσονται κἄν τε δι᾽
whether — through him alone they-be-besieged or — through
αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἡμῶν. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κεφάλαια
the-very the army our these indeed the heads
περιέχουσι τὰ χρυσοβούλλια, ἐξ ὧν οὐδεμίαν βοήθειαν
contain the chrysobulls from which no help
ὁ κουροπαλάτης ἔχει· τὸ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἡμῶν
the curopalates has the indeed for of-the father-in-law our
διαγορεύει ὅτι οὐ παρασαλεύομεν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῶν παλαιῶν
declares that not we-dislodge him from the ancient

ὁρίων τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὅτι, ἐὰν δυνηθῇ, εἴτε καὶ
boundaries of-the land his and that if he-be-able whether even
μόνος εἴτε καὶ μετὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἡμῶν, πολιορκήσει
alone or even with the army our he-will-besiege
καὶ καταστρέψει τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα
and will-destroy — Theodosiopolis and the other fortresses
τῶν ἐχθρῶν, οὐχὶ δὲ κατασχεῖν αὐτὰ εἰς τελείαν δεσποτείαν
of-the enemies not and to-hold them in complete mastery
καὶ κυριότητα· τὸ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν περιέχει ἵνα,
and lordship the and of-the majesty our contains that
ὅσους ἂν τόπους δυνηθῇ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ
as-many — places he-be-able both he and the nephew his
ὁ μάγιστρος Ἀδρανασὴ ἐξ οἰκείας δυνάμεως καθυποτάξαι
the magistros Adranase by own power to-subject
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ νῦν καθυποτάξει, κατέχῃ ἐπὶ
of-the Hagarenes or from the now he-shall-subject he-may-hold in
δεσποτείᾳ καὶ κυριότητι. καὶ ἐπεὶ οὔτε ἐξ οἰκείας δυνάμεως
mastery and lordship and since neither by own power
τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν κατεστρέψατο οὔτε τὸ Ἀβνίκον οὔτε τὸ
— Theodosiopolis he-destroyed nor — Abnikon nor —
Μαστάτον, οὐκ ὀφείλει ταῦτα κατέχειν ὡς ὄντα ἔνθεν τοῦ
Mastaton not he-ought these to-hold as being on-this-side of-the
Ἔραξ ποταμοῦ ἤτοι τοῦ Φάσιδος, διότι τὸ μὲν κάστρον τοῦ
Erax river that-is of-the Phasis because the indeed fortress —
Ἀβνίκου μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἦν αὐτεξούσιον καὶ αὐτοδέσποτον,
of-Abnikon until the now was independent and self-ruled
ἔχον ἴδιον ἀμηρᾶν, καὶ πολλάκις ὁ λαὸς τῆς βασιλείας
having own emir and often the people of-the majesty
ἡμῶν ἐπραίδευσεν αὐτό· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
our plundered it but also the protospatharius
Ἰωάννης καὶ στρατηγὸς ὁ Ἀρραβωνίτης, καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος
John and general — Arrabonites and the patrician

Θεόφιλος καὶ ἀρτίως στρατηγὸς Θεοδοσιουπόλεως, καὶ
Theophilos and now general of-Theodosiopolis and
οἱ λοιποὶ στρατηγοὶ μεγάλην πραΐδαν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν
the other generals great plunder and captivity
εἰς αὐτὸ εἰργάσαντο, κατακαύσαντες τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ,
on it worked having-burned the villages its
μηδέποτε τοῦ κουροπαλάτου πραιδεύσαντος αὐτό. καὶ ἡνίκα
never the curopalates having-plundered it and when
ἠφανίσθησαν τὰ τούτου χωρία παρὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν,
were-destroyed the its villages by the majesty our
ὑπεισῆλθον οἱ Ἴβηρες καὶ κατεκράτησαν αὐτά, πειρώμενοι
crept-in the Iberians and took-hold-of them trying
ἐκ τούτου τὸ κάστρον κρατῆσαι. ὁ δὲ ἀμηρᾶς πολλάκις
from this the fortress to-hold the and emir often
μηνυθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Θεοφίλου καὶ στρατηγοῦ,
having-been-warned by the patrician Theophilos and general
καὶ ἰδὼν ὅτι οὐδαμῶς ἔχει ἐλπίδα ζωῆς, ὑπετάγη
and having-seen that in-no-way he-has hope of-life was-subjected
καὶ κατένευσε δοῦλος γενέσθαι τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν,
and consented (a)-servant to-become of-the majesty our
δοὺς τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ὄψιδα. τὸ δὲ Μαστάτον ὑπῆρχε
having-given the son his (as)-hostage — and Mastaton belonged
τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν· καὶ ἡνίκα ὁ μάγιστρος Ἰωάννης
to-the Theodosiopolitans and when the magistros John
ἐπολιόρκησε τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν ἑπτὰ μῆνας διὰ τὸ μὴ
besieged — Theodosiopolis seven months because-of the not
δύνασθαι παραλαβεῖν αὐτήν, ἀποστείλας λαὸν παρέλαβε
to-be-able to-take it having-sent people he-took
τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον τὸ Μασάτον καὶ εἰσήγαγεν ἐν αὐτῷ τὸν
the same fortress — Mastaton and put in it the
πρωτοσπαθάριον Πετρωνὰν τὸν Βοΐλαν, τὸν τότε ὄντα
protospatharius Petronas the Boïlas the(-one) then being

κατεπάνω Νικοπόλεως. ὁ δὲ μάγιστρος Παγκράτειος
katepano of-Nikopolis the and magistros Pankratios
συνταξιδεύσας τῷ αὐτῷ μαγίστρῳ ἐν Θεοδοσιουπόλει,
having-campaigned-with the same magistros at Theodosiopolis
ἡνίκα ἔμελλεν ἀναχωρεῖν, παρεκάλεσεν ἵνα δώσῃ αὐτῷ τὸ
when he-was-about to-withdraw begged that he-give him the
τοιοῦτον κάστρον, ποιήσας ἔγγραφον ὅρκον πρὸς αὐτὸν
such fortress having-made (a)-written oath to him
τοῦ ἐπικρατεῖν αὐτὸ καὶ μηδέποτε τοῦτο τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς
of-the to-hold it and never it to-the Saracens
ἐπιδοῦναι. καὶ διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν καὶ Χριστιανὸν καὶ
to-hand-over and because-of the to-be him both (a)-Christian and
δοῦλον τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν, πιστεύσας τῷ ὅρκῳ αὐτοῦ
(a)-servant of-the majesty our having-trusted the oath his
δέδωκεν αὐτὸ τῷ εἰρημένῳ Παγκρατείῳ· ὁ δὲ πάλιν
he-gave it to-the said Pankratios he and again
ἀπεχαρίσατο αὐτὸ τοῖς Θεοδοσιουπολίταις· καὶ ἡνίκα
gave it to-the Theodosiopolitans and when
παρελήφθη ἡ Θεοδοσιούπολις, ὑπεισελθόντες οἱ Ἴβηρες
was-taken — Theodosiopolis having-crept-in the Iberians
ἐκράτησαν αὐτό. διότι οὔτε τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου τοῦ
held it because neither of-the such fortress —
Μαστάτου οὔτε τοῦ Ἀβνίκου ἔχουσιν ἐξουσίαν ἐπιζητεῖν,
of-Mastaton nor — of-Abnikon have-they authority to-lay-claim
ἀλλ᾽ ἐπειδὴ ὁ κουροπαλάτης πιστὸς καὶ ὀρθὸς δοῦλος
but since the curopalates (a)-faithful and upright servant
καὶ φίλος ἡμῶν ἐστί, διὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ παράκλησιν, ἵνα
and friend our is because-of the his entreaty that
γένηται σύνορον τῆς Φασιανῆς ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Ἔραξ
become (the)-boundary — of-Phasiane the river the Erax
ἤτοι ὁ Φᾶσις, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀριστερὰ μέρη τὰ πρὸς
that-is the Phasis and the indeed left parts the(-ones) toward

τὴν Ἰλλυρίαν κατέχωσιν οἱ Ἴβηρες, τὰ δὲ δεξιὰ ὅσα
— Illyria may-hold the Iberians the and right as-many-as
εἰσὶ πρὸς τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, κἄν τε κάστρα κἄν
are toward — Theodosiopolis whether — fortresses or
τε χωρία εἰσίν, ὦσιν ὑπὸ τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν, τοῦ
— villages they-are may-be under the majesty our the
ποταμοῦ δηλονότι σύνορον ἀμφοτέρων ὑπάρχοντος, καθὼς
river evidently boundary of-both being as
καὶ ζῶν ὁ μακάριος Ἰωάννης Κουρκούας περὶ τούτου
also living the blessed John Kourkouas about this
ἐρωτηθεὶς ἐξεῖπε συμφέρον εἶναι τὸν ποταμὸν σύνορον.
having-been-asked declared advantageous to-be the river (a)-boundary
τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀκριβὲς δίκαιον οὐδεμίαν ἐξουσίαν παρέχει
the indeed for exact justice no authority furnishes
τῷ κουροπαλάτῃ εἴτε εἰς τὰ ἔνθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
to-the curopalates either over the(-parts) on-this-side of-the river
εἴτε εἰς τὰ ἐκεῖθεν διακράτησιν ἔχειν, διότι τὰ τοιαῦτα
or over the(-parts) beyond possession to-have because the such
πάντα χωρία τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν τὰ στρατεύματα
all villages of-the Theodosiopolitans the armies
τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν ἠχμαλώτισαν καὶ ἐπυρπόλησαν, καὶ
of-the majesty our took-captive and burned and
οὐδέποτε χωρὶς ἡμετέρου λαοῦ Ἴβηρες ἐξῆλθον καὶ
never without our people (the)-Iberians went-out and
ἐπραΐδευσαν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ φίλους εἶχον αὐτοὺς
plundered Theodosiopolis but always friends they-held them
καὶ ἐπραγματεύοντο μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τῷ μὲν στόματι
and traded with them and with-the indeed mouth
ἤθελον πορθηθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, τῇ δὲ καρδίᾳ
they-wished to-be-sacked — Theodosiopolis with-the but heart
οὐδαμῶς ἐβούλοντο παραληφθῆναι αὐτήν. ἀλλ' ἡ βασιλεία
in-no-way they-wished to-be-taken it but the majesty

ἡμῶν, ὡς εἴρηται, διὰ τὴν πρὸς τὸν κουροπαλάτην
our as has-been-said because-of the toward the curopalates
ἀγάπην ἠθέλησε γενέσθαι τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἔραξ ἤτοι
love wished to-become the river the Erax that-is
τὸν Φᾶσιν σύνορον ἀμφοτέρων, καὶ ὀφείλουσιν ἀρκεῖσθαι
the Phasis (the)-boundary of-both and they-ought to-be-content
εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην διακράτησιν καὶ μηδὲν πλέον ἐπιζητεῖν.
with the such possession and nothing more to-seek

XLVI · THE IBERIANS AND ADRANOUTZION

The descent of the Iberian princes is given, and how Adranoutzion, a fortress rich in trade, passed among them. Asotios Kiskases, at odds with his son-in-law Kourkenios, offered it to the emperor through the monk Agapios, and Constans raised the imperial pennon over it. The Iberian princes threatened to go over to the Saracens, so Romanos disowned the act, ordered Constans out, and had young Asotios, son of Adranase, brought to the city and made curopalates. The chapter closes by turning to the past dealings between the Romans and other nations.

περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τῶν Ἰβήρων, καὶ τοῦ κάστρου
concerning the genealogy of-the Iberians and the fortress
Ἀδρανουτζίου.
of-Adranoutzion

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Παγκράτειος καὶ ὁ Δαβὶδ καὶ ὁ
(one)-must-know that — Pankratios and — David and —
Μάμπαλις ὃ ἑρμηνεύεται πανάγιος, ὑπῆρχον υἱοὶ τοῦ
Mampalis which is-interpreted all-holy were sons of-the
μεγάλου Συμβατίου τοῦ Ἴβηρος. καὶ ἔλαχε τὸ Ἀδρανούτζη
great Symbatios the Iberian and fell — Adranoutzion
εἰς κληρονομίαν τῷ Παγκρατείῳ, τῷ δὲ Δαβὶδ ἔλαχεν
for inheritance — to-Pankratios — and to-David fell

ἑτέρα χώρα. ὁ δὲ Παγκράτειος ἐποίησεν υἱοὺς τρεῖς, τὸν
another land — and Pankratios begot sons three —
Ἀδρανασέρ, τὸν Κουρκένιον καὶ τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον
Adranase — Kourkenios and the patrician Asotios
τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην, καὶ διεμέρισεν αὐτοῖς τὴν χώραν
the(-one) also Kiskases and divided to-them the land
αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔλαχε τὸ Ἀδρανούτζη τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ Κουρκενίῳ,
his and fell — Adranoutzion to-the son his Kourkenios
κἀκείνου τελευτήσαντος ἀτέκνου εἴασεν αὐτὸ τῷ ἀδελφῷ
and-he having-died childless left it to-the brother
αὐτοῦ Ἀσωτίῳ τῷ καὶ Κισκάσῃ. ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος
his Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases the and patrician Asotios
ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης ἐπῆρε γαμβρὸν εἰς θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ
the(-one) also Kiskases took (as)-son-in-law for (a)-daughter his
τὸν Κουρκένην ἐκεῖνον τὸν μάγιστρον, ὅστις δυναστεύσας
— Kourkenios that the magistros who having-grown-powerful
ἀφείλετο ἐκ τοῦ πενθεροῦ αὐτοῦ Ἀσωτίου τὸ Ἀδρανούτζη
took-away from the father-in-law his Asotios — Adranoutzion
κατὰ τυραννίδα, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ εἰς ἀντισήκωσιν τό τε
by tyranny and gave him in exchange — both
Τυρόκαστρον καὶ τὴν ποταμίαν τοῦ Ἀτζαρά, τὴν οὖσαν
Tyrokastron and the river-land — of-Atzara the(-one) being
σύνορον τῆς Ῥωμανίας εἰς Κώλωριν. εἶχε δὲ γυναῖκα ὁ
(the)-boundary — of-Romania at Kolorin had and (as)-wife the
πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης τὴν ἀδελφὴν τοῦ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases the sister of-the
μαγίστρου Γεωργίου καὶ ἐξουσιαστοῦ Ἀβασγίας· καὶ ὅτε
magistros George and exousiastes of-Abasgia and when
ἐγένοντο κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων ὅ τε μάγιστρος Κουρκένιος καὶ
became against each-other the both magistros Kourkenios and
ὁ μάγιστρος Γεώργιος καὶ ἐξουσιαστὴς Ἀβασγίας διὰ
the magistros George and exousiastes of-Abasgia because-of

τὸ συναγωνίζεσθαι τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τοῦ ἐξουσιαστοῦ
the to-fight-alongside the patrician Asotios of-the exousiastes
Ἀβασγίας, δυνηθεὶς ὁ Κουρκένιος ἀφείλετο καὶ τὴν
of-Abasgia having-prevailed — Kourkenios took-away also the
ἀντισήκωσιν ἣν δέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὑπὲρ τοῦ Ἀδρανουτζίου, καὶ
exchange which he-had-given him for — Adranoutzion and
ἐδίωξεν αὐτόν, καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Ἀβασγίαν. τελευτήσαντος
drove-out him and he-went-away to Abasgia having-died
δὲ τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου κατελείφθη τὸ Ἀδρανούτζη
and the magistros Kourkenios was-left — Adranoutzion
τῇ γυναικὶ αὐτοῦ τῇ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ Κισκάση
to-the wife his the of-the patrician Asotios — Kiskases
θυγατρὶ ὡς πατρικὸν αὐτῆς. ὅτε δὲ διεμέριζον τὴν
daughter as paternal(-property) her when and they-were-dividing the
χώραν τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου μεθ' ὅπλων ὅ τε
land of-the magistros Kourkenios with arms — both
Ἀσώτιος ὁ κουροπαλάτης καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Γεώργιος
Asotios the curopalates and the magistros George
ὁ ἐξουσιαστὴς Ἀβασγίας καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Παγκράτειος
the exousiastes of-Abasgia and the magistros Pankratios
ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος κουροπαλάτου, ἦλθον εἰς
the brother of-the aforesaid curopalates they-came to
συμβίβασιν καὶ ἐπῆρεν ἕκαστος τὸ πλησιάζον αὐτῷ.
agreement and took each the(-part) bordering him
τὸ δὲ Ἀδρανούτζιν ἐπλησίαζε τῷ Συμβατίῳ τῷ τοῦ
— and Adranoutzion bordered — on-Symbatios the of-the
προρρηθέντος Δαβὶδ υἱῷ. τότε ἐκράτησαν πάντες τὴν
aforesaid David son then seized all the
γυναῖκα τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου ἤγουν τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ
wife of-the magistros Kourkenios that-is the daughter of-the
πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση, λέγοντες ὅτι σὺ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases saying that you

γυνὴ οὖσα οὐ δύνασαι κρατεῖν τὸ κάστρον. τότε δέδωκεν
(a)-woman being not are-able to-hold the fortress then gave
ὁ Συμβάτιος εἰς συνάντησιν τοῦ κάστρου χωρία τῇ
— Symbatios in exchange of-the fortress villages to-the
γυναικί, καὶ ἀνελάβετο τὸ τοιοῦτο κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν.
woman and took the such fortress — Adranoutzion
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ συγγένεια τῶν τοιούτων Ἰβήρων τοῦτον
(one)-must-know that the kinship of-the such Iberians this
ἔχει τὸν τρόπον. τοῦ Δαβὶδ ἡ μητὴρ καὶ τοῦ Ἀδρανασὴ
has the manner — of-David the mother and — of-Adranase
τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἀρτίως Ἀσωτίου
the curopalates the father of-the now Asotios
τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, ὑπῆρχον δύο ἀδελφῶν παιδία ἤγουν
the curopalates were of-two sisters children that-is
ἐξάδελφαι. εἶχε δὲ Συμβάτιος ὁ τοῦ Δαβὶδ υἱὸς γυναῖκα
cousins had and Symbatios the — of-David son (as)-wife
τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ μαγίστρου Παγκρατείου τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ
the daughter of-the magistros Pankratios the father —
Ἀδρανασὴ τοῦ ἀρτίως μαγίστρου· καὶ τελευτησάσης ἔλαβεν
of-Adranase the now magistros and she-having-died took
ὁ Ἀδρανασὴ τὴν ἀδελφὴν τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ Δαβίδ.
— Adranase the sister — of-Symbatios the son — of-David
Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν ὀχυρόν ἐστι πάνυ, ἔχει δὲ
that the fortress — Adranoutzion strong is very it-has and
καὶ ῥαπάτιν μέγα ὡς χωρόπολιν· καὶ αἱ πραγματεῖαι τῆς τε
also (a)-suburb great as (a)-country-town and the merchandises — both
Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ τῆς Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀβασγίας καὶ ἀπὸ πάσης
of-Trebizond and — of-Iberia and Abasgia and from all
τῆς χώρας τῆς Ἀρμενίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας ἐκεῖσε ἀφικνοῦνται·
the land — of-Armenia and — of-Syria there arrive
ἔχει δὲ καὶ κομμέρκιον ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων πραγματειῶν
it-has and also customs-dues from the such merchandises

ἄπειρον. ἡ δὲ χώρα τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου ἤτοι τὸ
boundless the and land of-the fortress Adranoutzion that-is —
Ἀρζήν ἐστι καὶ πολλὴ καὶ εὔφορος, καὶ ὑπάρχει κλειδὶν
Arzen is both large and fertile and is (the)-key
τῆς τε Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀβασγίας καὶ τῶν Μισχιῶν.
— both of-Iberia and Abasgia and of-the Mischians
Ὅτι ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς ὁ κῦρις Ῥωμανὸς ἀπέστειλε τὸν
that the blessed emperor the lord Romanos sent the
πατρίκιον Κώνσταντα καὶ δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου, τῷ
patrician Constans and drungarius of-the fleet at-the
τότε καιρῷ πρωτοσπαθαρίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου τυγχάνοντος,
then time protospatharius and manglabites being
δεδωκὼς αὐτῷ καὶ ἱμάτιον μαγιστράτου πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι
having-given him also (a)-robe of-magistracy for the to-make
τὸν Κουρκένιον τὸν Ἴβηρα μάγιστρον. μετὰ δὲ τὸ
— Kourkenios the Iberian magistros after and the
ἐξελθεῖν τὸν πατρίκιον Κώνσταντα καὶ δρουγγάριον τοῦ
to-go-out the patrician Constans and drungarius of-the
πλωΐμου μέχρι Νικομηδείας εἰσῆλθεν ὁ μοναχὸς Ἀγάπιος
fleet as-far-as Nicomedia came the monk Agapios
ὁ τοῦ Κυμηνᾶ, ὃς ἦν τῷ τότε χρόνῳ εἰς τὴν ἁγίαν
the(-one) — of-Kymenas who was at-the then time in the holy
πόλιν εὐχῆς ἕνεκα· καὶ διερχομένου αὐτοῦ τὴν Ἰβηρίαν
city of-prayer for-the-sake and passing him — Iberia
κατήντησεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν. καὶ εἶχεν ὁ
arrived at the fortress — Adranoutzion and had the
πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης καλούμενος ἔχθραν
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases called enmity
μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Κουρκένη, καὶ ἐλάλησεν
with the son-in-law his — Kourkenios and he-spoke
εἰς τὸν μοναχὸν Ἀγάπιον ὅτι ἐνορκῶ σε εἰς τὸν θεὸν
to the monk Agapios that I-adjure you by — God

καὶ εἰς τὴν δύναμιν τοῦ τιμίου καὶ ζωοποιοῦ σταυροῦ
and by the power of-the precious and life-giving cross
ἵνα ἀπέλθῃς ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ εἰπῇς τὸν βασιλέα, ἵνα
that you-go-away to the city and tell the emperor that
ἀποστείλῃ καὶ παραλάβῃ τὸ κάστρον μου καὶ ἔχῃ ὑπὸ
he-send and take-over the fortress my and have(-it) under
τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ μοναχὸς Ἀγάπιος εἰσελθὼν ἐν
the authority his the and monk Agapios having-come to
τῇ πόλει διηγήσατο τὸν βασιλέα ὅσα ἐλάλησε πρὸς
the city related-to the emperor (the-things)-which spoke to
αὐτὸν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης. τοῦ
him the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases the
δὲ προρρηθέντος πατρικίου Κώνσταντος καὶ δρουγγαρίου
and aforesaid patrician Constans and drungarius
τοῦ πλωΐμου ἐν Νικομηδείᾳ τυγχάνοντος διὰ τὴν
of-the fleet in Nicomedia being because-of the
προρρηθεῖσαν τῆς προβολῆς τοῦ μαγίστρου τοῦ Κουρκένη
aforesaid of-the promotion of-the magistros — Kourkenios
Ἴβηρος ὑπόθεσιν, ἐκ προστάξεως τοῦ βασιλέως ἔλαβε τὸ
(the)-Iberian matter by command of-the emperor received the
πιττάκιον τοῦ πατρικίου Συμεὼν τοῦ ἀσηκρῆτις, ὡς ὅτι
note of-the patrician Symeon the asekretis as that
κελεύει ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡμῶν ὁ ἅγιος καταλιπεῖν σε πᾶσας
orders the emperor our the holy to-leave you all
σου τὰς δουλείας, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ἐν συντομίᾳ πρὸς τὸν
your the services and to-go-away in haste to the
πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην λεγόμενον, καὶ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases called and
παραλαβεῖν τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν, ἐπειδὴ
to-take-over the fortress his — Adranoutzion since
διὰ τοῦ μοναχοῦ Ἀγαπίου ἐδηλοποίησε τὸν βασιλέα
through the monk Agapios he-made-known-to the emperor

ἡμῶν τὸν ἅγιον τοῦ ἀποστεῖλαι πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον καὶ
our the holy of-the to-send (a)-faithful man and
οἰκεῖον τοῦ παραλαβεῖν τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν.
own of-the to-take-over the fortress his — Adranoutzion
καὶ ἀπερχομένου σου ἐν Χαλδίᾳ ἀναλαβοῦ ἄρχοντας
and going-away you to Chaldia take officers
χρησίμους, οὓς ἐπίστασαι εἶναι ἠνδρειωμένους καὶ πιστούς,
useful whom you-know to-be brave and faithful
καὶ εἴσελθε καὶ κράτησον τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον. τοῦ δὲ
and enter and hold the such fortress the and
πατρικίου Κώνσταντος καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου
patrician Constans and drungarius of-the fleet
ἀπελθόντος ἐν Χαλδίᾳ, καὶ ἀναλαβομένου τουρμάρχας
having-gone-away to Chaldia and having-taken tourmarchs
χρησίμους καὶ ἄρχοντας καὶ λαὸν μέχρι τ΄, εἰσῆλθεν
useful and officers and people up-to 300 entered
ἐν Ἰβηρίᾳ, καὶ ἐκράτησεν αὐτὸν ὁ μακάριος Δαβὶδ ὁ
into Iberia and held him the blessed David the
ἀδελφὸς Ἀσωτίου τοῦ ἀρτίως κουροπαλάτου, λέγων πρὸς
brother of-Asotios the now curopalates saying to
αὐτὸν "ποῦ ἀπεστάλης παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ τίνα
him where were-you-sent by the emperor and what
δουλείαν ὀφείλεις ἐκτελέσαι, ὅτι τοσοῦτον λαὸν ἐπιφέρῃ
service do-you-owe to-perform that so-much people you-bring
μετὰ σεαυτοῦ"; ἐσκέπτοντο γὰρ διὰ τὸ ἀποθανεῖν
with yourself they-were-considering for because-of the to-have-died
Ἀδρανασὲ τὸν καὶ κουροπαλάτην, ὅτι μήπως ὁ βασιλεὺς
Adranase the(-one) also curopalates that perhaps the emperor
τὸν Κουρκένιον ὀφείλῃ τιμῆσαι κουροπαλάτην, ἐπειδὴ
— Kourkenios ought to-honor (as)-curopalates since
ἀναμεταξὺ οἱ τοῦ Ἀδρανασὲ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου παῖδες τοῦ
meanwhile the — of-Adranase the curopalates children the

πατρὸς αὐτῶν τελευτήσαντος φιλονεικείας τινὰς ἔσχον μετὰ
father their having-died rivalries some had with
τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν. διὰ τὸ καὶ τὸν πρῶτον ἄνθρωπον
the cousin their because-of the also the first man
ἀποστεῖλαι μετὰ μεγάλου κανισκίου τὸν Κουρκένιον πρὸς
to-send with (a)-great gift-basket — Kourkenios to
τὸν βασιλέα, ἐξαιτούμενον τὸ κουροπαλατίκιν ἢ τὸ
the emperor asking-for the curopalatate or the
μαγιστράτον, ὑπέλαβον οἱ τέσσαρες ἀδελφοί, ἤγουν τοῦ
magistracy supposed the four brothers that-is —
Ἀδρανασὲ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου οἱ παῖδες, ὅτι διὰ τὸ
of-Adranase the curopalates the children that because-of the
ποιῆσαι τὸν Κουρκένιον κουροπαλάτην ἀπέρχεται ἐκεῖσε. ὁ
to-make — Kourkenios curopalates goes there the
δὲ πατρίκιος Κώνστας ἀπελογήσατο ὅτι διὰ τὸ μέλλειν
and patrician Constans answered that because-of the to-be-about
με τιμῆσαι τὸν Κουρκένιον μάγιστρον ἐπιφέρομαι καὶ τὸν
me to-honor — Kourkenios (as)-magistros I-bring also the
τοσοῦτον λαόν, καὶ ἀποχαιρετίσας αὐτὸν ὅτι ἀπέρχομαι
so-great people and having-taken-leave-of him that I-am-going
εἰς τὸν Δαβὶδ τὸν μάγιστρον. εἶχε δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς πατρίκιος
to — David the magistros had and the same patrician
Κώνστας καὶ πρὸς τὸν Δαβὶδ κέλευσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως
Constans also to — David (an)-order from the emperor
καὶ ξένια. καὶ ἀπελθόντος τοῦ αὐτοῦ πατρικίου Κώνσταντος
and gifts and having-gone-away the same patrician Constans
εἰς τὴν χώραν τοῦ Κουρκενίου ἐτίμησεν αὐτὸν μάγιστρον,
to the land — of-Kourkenios honored him (as)-magistros
καὶ εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ
and entered into the fortress of-the patrician Asotios the(-one)
καὶ Κισκάση, εἰς τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ τὴν
also Kiskases into — Adranoutzion and gave him the

πρὸς αὐτὸν τοῦ βασιλέως κέλευσιν, οὐ περὶ τοῦ κάστρου
to him of-the emperor order not concerning the fortress
Ἀδρανουτζίου περιέχουσάν τι, ἀλλὰ περὶ ἑτέρων
of-Adranoutzion containing anything but concerning other
ὑποθέσεων. εἶπε δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν ὁ πατρίκιος Κώνστας ὅτι
matters said and to him the patrician Constans that
κἂν μὲν ἡ κέλευσις οὐδὲν περιέχει περὶ τοῦ κάστρου
even-if indeed the order nothing contains concerning the fortress
Ἀδρανουτζίου, ἀλλ' οὖν τοῦ μοναχοῦ Ἀγαπίου πρὸς τὸν
of-Adranoutzion but then the monk Agapios to the
βασιλέα εἰσελθόντος καὶ ἀναγγείλαντος αὐτὸν ὅσα
emperor having-come and having-reported-to him (the-things)-which
καὶ παρήγγειλας αὐτὸν περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου,
also you-charged him concerning the fortress of-Adranoutzion
διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἀπέστειλέ με ὅπως παραλάβω τὸ κάστρον
because-of this also he-sent me so-that I-take-over the fortress
καὶ εἰσαγάγω ἐν αὐτῷ ὅνπερ περιφέρομαι λαόν, καὶ ἐπειδή,
and put in it which I-bring-along people and since
καθὰ προείρηται, εἶχεν ἔχθραν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ
as has-been-said-before had enmity the patrician Asotios the(-one)
καὶ Κισκάσης μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Κουρκένη,
also Kiskases with the son-in-law his — Kourkenios
προεθυμήθη δοῦναι τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον τὸν βασιλέα,
he-was-eager to-give the fortress his rather to-the emperor
ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Κώνστας εἶχε παρ' ἑαυτῷ φλάμουλα, καὶ
the and patrician Constans had with himself pennons and
ἐπιδέδωκε τῷ πατρικίῳ Ἀσωτίῳ τῷ καὶ Κισκάσῃ· ὁ
handed(-them)-over to-the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases he
δὲ λαβὼν αὐτὸ εἰς κοντάριον περιέθηκε, καὶ ἐπιδέδωκε
and having-taken it on (a)-spear put(-it)-round and handed(-it)-over
τῷ πατρικίῳ Κώνσταντι εἰπὼν ὅτι ἐπίστησον αὐτὸ
to-the patrician Constans having-said that set it

ἄνωθεν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος, ἵνα γνῶσι πάντες τοῦ βασιλέως
above on the wall so-that may-know all of-the emperor
εἶναι ἀπὸ τῆς σήμερον ἡμέρας τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον. καὶ
to-be from the today day the such fortress and
τοῦτο ποιήσας ὁ πατρίκιος Κώνστας καὶ τὸ φλάμουλον
this having-done the patrician Constans and the pennon
ἐπιστήσας ἄνωθεν τοῦ τείχους, καὶ τοὺς βασιλεῖς τῶν
having-set above the wall and the emperors of-the
Ῥωμαίων κατὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς εὐφημήσας, πᾶσιν ἐγένετο
Romans according-to the custom having-acclaimed to-all it-became
γνωστὸν ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν ἀπεχαρίσατο ὁ
known that the fortress — Adranoutzion had-given the
πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης τὸν βασιλέα. ὁ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases to-the emperor — the
οὖν Δαβὶδ ὁ μέγας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν οὐκ ἐδίδου τὸν
then David the great the his-own land not gave to-the
βασιλέα, κἂν τάχα συνορῇ τὴν τούρμαν τοῦ Ἀκαμψῆ καὶ
emperor although perhaps it-borders-on the tourma — of-Akampses and
τῇ Μουργούλῃ. ὁ οὖν πατρίκιος Κώνστας ἀνήγαγε πρὸς
— on-Mourgoule the then patrician Constans referred to
τὸν βασιλέα ἐξαποστείλας δύο ἀναφοράς, τὴν μὲν μίαν
the emperor having-sent two reports the indeed one
περιέχουσαν ὅπως ἐτίμησε τὸν Κουρκένιον μάγιστρον
containing how he-had-honored — Kourkenios (as)-magistros
καὶ ὅπως ὁ Κουρκένιος ἀπεδέξατο τὸ μαγιστράτον καὶ
and how — Kourkenios accepted the magistracy and
εὐφήμησε τὸν βασιλέα, τὴν δὲ ἑτέραν περιέχουσαν περὶ
acclaimed the emperor the and other containing concerning
τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου, καὶ ὅπως τοῦτο παρέλαβε
the fortress of-Adranoutzion and how this he-took-over
παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση, καὶ ὅτι
from the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases and that

μεγάλην διαφορὰν καὶ ἔχθραν ἔχουσι πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὅ
great difference and enmity they-have toward each-other the
τε πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ μαγίστρου
both patrician Asotios with the son-in-law his (the)-magistros
Κουρκενίου, καὶ ἵνα ἀποστείλῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς βοήθειαν τοῦ
Kourkenios and that send the emperor help of-the
ταξατεῦσαι τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, καὶ ὅτι, εἰ ἐνδέχεται,
to-garrison the such fortress and that if it-is-possible
ἔλθῃ καὶ ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν. ταῦτα ἰδόντες οἱ
come also the domestic of-the scholae these(-things) having-seen the
Ἴβηρες, ὅ τε μάγιστρος Κουρκένιος καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος
Iberians the both magistros Kourkenios and the magistros
Δαβὶδ καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Ἀσωτίου,
David and the brother of-the curopalates Asotios
ἔγραψαν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ὅτι εἰ τοῦτο καταδέξηται ἡ
wrote to the emperor that if this accept the
βασιλεία σου καὶ εἰσέλθῃ μέσον τῆς χώρας ἡμῶν,
majesty your and enter into-(the)-middle of-the land our
ἐξερχόμεθα τῆς δουλώσεως τῆς βασιλείας σου καὶ γινόμεθα
we-go-out-from the servitude of-the majesty your and we-become
μετὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, ἐπειδὴ ἔχειν ἔχομεν μετὰ τῶν
with the Saracens since to-have we-are-bound with the
Ῥωμαίων μάχας καὶ πολέμια, καὶ βιαζόμενοι κινῆσαι
Romans battles and wars and being-forced to-move
ἔχομεν φοσσάτον κατά τε τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου
we-are-bound (an)-army against both the fortress of-Adranoutzion
καὶ τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς Ῥωμανίας. ταῦτα
and the land their and itself — Romania these(-things)
καὶ διὰ τῶν γραμμάτων τῶν προρρηθέντων ἀρχόντων
both through the letters of-the aforesaid princes
ἀναμαθὼν καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἀποσταλέντων παρ᾽ αὐτῶν
having-learned and from the sent by them

ἀνθρώπων ἀκηκοώς, καὶ πτοηθεὶς μήπως γένωνται
men having-heard and having-been-frightened lest they-become
μετὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καὶ ἐξαγάγωσι τὰ τῆς Περσίας
with the Saracens and bring-out the — of-Persia
φοσσάτα κατὰ Ῥωμανίας, ἠρνήσατο λέγων ὅτι οὐκ
armies against Romania he-denied saying that not
ἔγραψα τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον Κώνσταντα τὸν μαγγλαβίτην
I-wrote-to the protospatharius Constans the manglabites
περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου καὶ τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ τοῦ
concerning the such fortress and the land its of-the
παραλαβεῖν αὐτήν, ἀλλ' ἐξ οἰκείας ὡς εἰπεῖν ἀφροσύνης
to-take-over it but from own so to-speak folly
τοῦτο ἐποίησε. καὶ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τελείως
this he-did and these(-things) said the emperor completely
ἀποθεραπεῦσαι τούτους βουλόμενος· καὶ ἐδέξατο ὁ αὐτὸς
to-appease them wishing and received the same
πρωτοσπαθάριος Κώνστας καὶ μαγγλαβίτης κέλευσιν μετὰ
protospatharius Constans and manglabites (an)-order with
ὕβρεων καὶ ἀπειλῶν περιέχουσαν "τίς διωρίσατό σοι
insults and threats containing who ordained to-you
τοῦτο ποιῆσαι; ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἔξελθε ἐκ τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ
this to-do but rather go-out from the fortress and
ἀναλαβοῦ Ἀσώτιον τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ τετελευτηκότος Ἀδρανασὲ
take Asotios the son of-the deceased Adranase
τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, καὶ εἰσάγαγε αὐτὸν ἐνταῦθα, ὅπως
the curopalates and bring him here so-that
τιμήσωμεν αὐτὸν τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ ἀξίαν τοῦ
we-may-honor him (with)-the of-the father his dignity of-the
κουροπαλάτου." ταῦτα δεξάμενος ὁ πατρίκιος Κώνστας
curopalates these(-things) having-received the patrician Constans
κατέλιπε τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην εἰς
left the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases in

τὸ ἑαυτοῦ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν, κἀκεῖνος ἐξελθὼν
the his-own fortress — Adranoutzion and-he having-gone-out
ἀπῄει πρὸς τὸν Δαβὶδ τὸν μέγαν, καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν αὐτῷ
went to — David the great and handed(-over) to-him
ἣν περιεῖχε πρὸς αὐτὸν κέλευσιν, καὶ ὑπέστρεψε,
which he-had-with(-him) for him order and returned
καὶ εἰσῆλθεν εἰς Ἰβηρίαν, καὶ εὗρεν ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτὸ
and entered into Iberia and found at the same(-place)
συνηθροισμένους τόν τε μάγιστρον Κουρκένιον καὶ τὸν
gathered the both magistros Kourkenios and the
μάγιστρον Δαβὶδ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀσωτίου τοῦ κουροπαλάτου.
magistros David the brother of-Asotios the curopalates
καὶ ἤρξαντο φιλονεικεῖν καὶ κατονειδίζειν τὸν πατρίκιον
and they-began to-quarrel and to-reproach the patrician
Κώνσταντα, λέγοντες ὅτι κρυπτὸς ἄνθρωπος καὶ κακὸς
Constans saying that (a)-secretive man and bad
τυγχάνεις, ὅτι οὐκ ἐφανέρωσας ἡμᾶς περὶ τοῦ κάστρου
you-are because not you-revealed-to us concerning the fortress
Ἀδρανουτζίου ὅτι μέλλεις τοῦτο κρατῆσαι καὶ ὅτι
of-Adranoutzion that you-are-about this to-hold and that
συμφέρει τοῦτο κρατεῖσθαι παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως· ἡμεῖς
it-is-advantageous this to-be-held by the emperor we
γὰρ καὶ περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης ὑποθέσεως ἀνηγάγομεν πρὸς
for also concerning the such matter referred to
τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ ἐδεξάμεθα μηδαμῶς γινώσκειν τὸν βασιλέα
the emperor and we-received in-no-way to-know the emperor
περὶ τῆς ὑποθέσεως ταύτης, ἀλλὰ σὲ τοῦτο ποιῆσαι διὰ
about the matter this but you this to-have-done because-of
τὴν ἀγάπην τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση.
the love of-the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases
ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Κώνστας προσαπολογησάμενος τούτοις
the and patrician Constans having-answered-further to-these

τὰ εἰκότα ἀνελάβετο Ἀσώτιον τὸν υἱὸν Ἀδρανασῆ
the(-things) fitting took Asotios the son of-Adranase
τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ πόλει, καὶ
the curopalates and brought him into the city and
ἐτιμήθη παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κουροπαλάτης.
he-was-honored by the emperor (as)-curopalates
Ἴσθι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἔν τισι καιροῖς μεταξὺ
know and also concerning the(-things) at certain times between
Ῥωμαίων καὶ διαφόρων ἐθνῶν συμβεβηκότων· ἄξιον γάρ,
(the)-Romans and various nations having-happened worthy for
φίλτατε υἱέ, μηδὲ περὶ τὴν τούτων μνήμην διαφυγεῖν
dearest son not-even concerning the of-these memory to-escape
σε, ἵν' ἐν ὁμοίοις καιροῖς τῶν αὐτῶν προσπιπτόντων
you so-that in like times the same befalling
εἴη σοι εὐχερὴς ἡ ἐπανόρθωσις διὰ τῆς προγνώσεως.
may-be to-you easy the correction through the foreknowledge

XLVII · THE CYPRIOTS' MIGRATION

When the Saracens took Cyprus, Justinian gave its archbishop and people Cyzicus. Seven years later, at his request, the caliph returned the Cypriots in Syria, and the emperor brought home those settled in Romania.

περὶ τῆς τῶν Κυπρίων μεταναστάσεως ἔχει ἡ ἱστορία
concerning the of-the Cypriots migration has the history
τάδε.
the-following
Τῆς νήσου ἁλωθείσης ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καὶ ἐπὶ
the island having-been-taken by the Saracens and for
ἑπτὰ ἔτεσιν ἀοικήτου μεινάσης, καὶ τοῦ ἀρχιεπισκόπου
seven years uninhabited having-remained and the archbishop

Ἰωάννου μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
John with the people his to the reigning(-city)
καταλαβόντος, ἐγένετο οἰκονομία παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
having-arrived was-made (a)-dispensation by the emperor
Ἰουστινιανοῦ ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ ἕκτῃ συνόδῳ τοῦ τὴν Κύζικον
Justinian in the holy sixth council of-the — Cyzicus
παραλαβεῖν μετὰ τῶν ἐπισκόπων αὐτοῦ καὶ τοῦ λαοῦ
to-take-over with the bishops his and the people
τῆς νήσου, καὶ ποιεῖσθαι καὶ χειροτονίας ἡνίκα ἂν λείψῃ
of-the island and to-make also ordinations when — is-wanting
ἐπίσκοπος, πρὸς τὸ μὴ διαπεσεῖν τὴν αὐθεντίαν καὶ τὰ
(a)-bishop for the not to-fall-away the authority and the
δίκαια τῆς Κύπρου (καὶ γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἰουστινιανὸς
rights — of-Cyprus and for also himself — Justinian
βασιλεὺς Κύπριος ἦν, καθὼς καὶ παρὰ τῶν παλαιῶν
emperor (a)-Cypriot was as also from the old
Κυπρίων ὁ λόγος μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐπεκράτησεν), ὥστε
Cypriots the account until the today has-prevailed so-that
καὶ ὡρίσθη ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ ἕκτῃ συνόδῳ χειροτονεῖν τὸν
also it-was-decreed in the holy sixth council to-ordain the
ἀρχιεπίσκοπον Κύπρου τὸν τῆς Κυζίκου πρόεδρον, καθὼς
archbishop of-Cyprus the — of-Cyzicus president as
ἐν τῷ λθ′ κεφαλαίῳ τῆς αὐτῆς ἁγίας ἕκτης συνόδου
in the 39 chapter of-the same holy sixth council
ἀναγέγραπται. μετὰ δὲ ἑπτὰ ἔτη θελήσει θεοῦ ἐκινήθη
is-recorded after and seven years by-(the)-will of-God was-moved
ὁ βασιλεὺς πάλιν οἰκίσαι τὴν Κύπρον, καὶ ἀπέστειλε
the emperor again to-settle — Cyprus and sent
πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν τοῦ Βαγδὰδ τρεῖς τῶν ἐνδόξων
to the commander-of-the-faithful — of-Baghdad three of-the notable
Κυπρίων, αὐτόχθονας τῆς αὐτῆς νήσου τυγχάνοντας,
Cypriots natives of-the same island being

τοὺς λεγομένους Φαγγουμεῖς, μετὰ καὶ βασιλικοῦ τινὸς
those called Phangoumeis with also (an)-imperial-agent certain
ἀγχίνου τε καὶ ἐνδόξου, γράψας τῷ ἀμερμουμνῇ
shrewd both and notable having-written to-the commander-of-the-faithful
ἵνα τὸν Συρίᾳ ὄντα λαὸν τῆς νήσου Κύπρου ἀπολύσῃ
that the in-Syria being people of-the island Cyprus he-release
εἰς τὸν ἴδιον τόπον. καὶ ὑπακούσας ὁ ἀμερμουμνῆς
to the own place and having-obeyed the commander-of-the-faithful
τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως γραφῇ ἀπέστειλε κατὰ πάσης τῆς
the of-the emperor letter sent throughout all —
Συρίας ἐνδόξους Σαρακηνοὺς καὶ ἐπεσώρευσε πάντας τοὺς
Syria notable Saracens and heaped-together all the
Κυπρίους καὶ διεπέρασεν εἰς τὸν ἴδιον τόπον. ἀπέστειλε
Cypriots and carried(-them)-across to the own place sent
δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς βασιλικόν, καὶ διεπέρασε καὶ τοὺς ἐν
and also the emperor (an)-imperial-agent and carried-across also those in
Ῥωμανίᾳ οἰκήσαντας ἤγουν ἔν τε τῇ Κυζίκῳ καὶ τῷ
Romania having-settled that-is in both — Cyzicus and the(-theme)
Κιβυρραιωτῶν καὶ τῷ Θρακησίῳ, καὶ ἐνῳκίσθη ἡ νῆσος.
of-the-Kibyrrhaiotai and — Thrakesion and was-resettled the island

XLVIII · CANON 39 OF THE SIXTH COUNCIL; GREEK FIRE

The council confirmed the rights of the Cypriot archbishop in New Justinianopolis. Constantine turns to the innovations in the state: Kallinikos of Heliopolis brought liquid fire to the Romans, who burned the Saracen fleet with it at Cyzicus.

Κεφάλαιον λθ′ τῆς ἁγίας ἕκτης συνόδου, τῆς ἐν τῷ
chapter 39 of-the holy sixth council the(-one) in the
Τρούλλῳ τοῦ μεγάλου παλατίου γενομένης.
Troullos of-the great palace having-been-held

Τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ καὶ συλλειτουργοῦ ἡμῶν Ἰωάννου τοῦ τῆς
the brother and fellow-minister our John the —
Κύπρου νήσου προέδρου ἅμα τῷ οἰκείῳ λαῷ ἐπὶ
of-Cyprus island president together-with the own people to
τὴν Ἑλλησπόντιον ἐπαρχίαν, διά τε τὰς βαρβαρικὰς
the Hellespontine province because-of both the barbarian
ἐφόδους διά τε τὸ τῆς ἐθνικῆς ἐλευθερωθῆναι δουλείας
incursions because-of and the from-the heathen to-be-freed servitude
καὶ καθαρῶς τοῖς σκήπτροις τοῦ χριστιανικωτάτου
and purely to-the scepters of-the most-Christian
κράτους ὑποταγῆναι, τῆς εἰρημένης μεταναστάντος
empire to-be-subjected from-the said having-migrated
νήσου προνοίᾳ τοῦ φιλανθρώπου θεοῦ καὶ μόχθῳ
island by-(the)-providence of-the man-loving God and by-(the)-toil
τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ εὐσεβοῦς ἡμῶν βασιλέως, συνορῶμεν
of-the Christ-loving and pious our emperor we-decide
ὥστε ἀκαινοτόμητα διαφυλαχθῆναι τὰ παρὰ τῶν ἐν
that unaltered be-kept the by the in
Ἐφέσῳ τὸ πρότερον συνελθόντων θεοφόρων πατέρων
Ephesus the formerly having-assembled God-bearing fathers
τῷ θρόνῳ τοῦ προγεγραμμένου ἀνδρὸς παρασχεθέντα
to-the throne of-the above-written man granted
προνόμια, ὥστε τὴν νέαν Ἰουστινιανούπολιν τὸ δίκαιον
privileges so-that the new Justinianopolis the right
ἔχειν τῆς Κωνσταντινέων πόλεως, καὶ τὸν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ
have of-the of-(the)-Constantians city and the over it
καθιστάμενον θεοφιλέστατον ἐπίσκοπον πάντων προεδρεύειν
being-appointed most-God-loving bishop over-all preside
τῶν τῆς Ἑλλησποντίων ἐπαρχίας καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκείων
the(-bishops) of-the of-(the)-Hellespontines province and by the own
ἐπισκόπων χειροτονεῖσθαι κατὰ τὴν ἀρχαίαν συνήθειαν
bishops be-ordained according-to the ancient custom

(τὰ γὰρ ἐν ἑκάστῃ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἔθη καὶ οἱ θεοφόροι
the for in each church customs also the God-bearing
ἡμῶν πατέρες παραφυλάττεσθαι διεγνώκασι), τοῦ τῆς
our fathers to-be-observed determined the of-the
Κυζικηνῶν πόλεως ἐπισκόπου ὑποκειμένου τῷ προέδρῳ
of-(the)-Cyzicenes city bishop being-subject to-the president
τῆς εἰρημένης Ἰουστινιανουπόλεως, μιμήσει τῶν λοιπῶν
of-the said Justinianopolis in-imitation of-the other
ἁπάντων ἐπισκόπων τῶν ὑπὸ τὸν λεχθέντα θεοφιλέστατον
all bishops those under the said most-God-loving
πρόεδρον Ἰωάννην· ἀφ' οὗ χρείας καλούσης καὶ ὁ τῆς
president John by whom need calling also the of-the
αὐτῆς Κυζικηνῶν πόλεως ἐπίσκοπος χειροτονηθήσεται.
same of-(the)-Cyzicenes city bishop will-be-ordained
Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὰ περὶ ἐθνῶν οὕτως ἀκριβῶς σοι
since and also the(-things) concerning nations so exactly to-you
διετυπώσαμεν καὶ προεξεθέμεθα, δίκαιον μὴ μόνον περὶ
we-have-delineated and set-forth-before (it-is)-just not only concerning
τῶν ἐν τῇ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτείᾳ ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ
the(-things) in the among us polity but also concerning
πάσης τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς κατά τινας χρόνους
all the of-the Romans rule at certain times
καινοτομηθέντων σαφῆ κεκτῆσθαί σε τὴν εἴδησιν, ὡς ἂν ἡ
innovated clear to-have you the knowledge so-that — the
περὶ τῶν ἐγγυτέρω καὶ οἰκείων γνώσις πλέον τῶν ἄλλων
about the nearer and own knowledge more than-the others
ἐν σοὶ διαμένουσα ποθεινότερον ἀναδείξῃ πρὸς τὸ ὑπήκοον.
in you remaining more-beloved may-show(-you) to the subject(-people)
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Κωνσταντίνου υἱοῦ Κωνσταντίου
(one)-must-know that under Constantine son of-Constantius
τοῦ καὶ Πωγωνάτου καλουμένου Καλλίνικός τις
the(-one) also Pogonatos called Kallinikos (a)-certain

ἀπὸ Ἡλιουπόλεως Ῥωμαίοις προσφυγὼν τὸ διὰ τῶν
from Heliopolis to-(the)-Romans having-fled the through the
σιφώνων ἐκφερόμενον πῦρ ὑγρὸν κατεσκεύασε, δι᾽ οὗ
siphons discharged fire liquid made by which
καὶ τὸν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν στόλον ἐν Κυζίκῳ Ῥωμαῖοι
also the of-the Saracens fleet at Cyzicus (the)-Romans
καταφλέξαντες τὴν νίκην ἤραντο.
having-burned-up the victory won

XLIX · THE SLAVS OF PATRAS

Under Nikephoros the Slavs of the Peloponnese besieged Patras. When a horse stumbled and lowered the signal pennon, the townsmen sallied out and saw St. Andrew routing the barbarians. The emperor assigned the defeated Slavs to the church of Patras, where they still feed visiting officials and envoys.

ὁ ζητῶν ὅπως τῇ τῶν Πατρῶν ἐκκλησίᾳ οἱ Σκλαβοὶ
the(-one) seeking how to-the of-the Patras church the Slavs
δουλεύειν καὶ ὑποκεῖσθαι ἐτάχθησαν, ἐκ τῆς παρούσης
to-serve and to-be-subject were-assigned from the present
μανθανέτω γραφῆς.
let-him-learn writing
Νικηφόρος τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα ἐκράτει, καὶ οὗτοι
Nikephoros the of-the Romans scepters held and these
ἐν τῷ θέματι ὄντες Πελοποννήσου ἀπόστασιν ἐννοήσαντες
in the theme being of-Peloponnese rebellion having-thought-of
πρῶτον μὲν τὰς τῶν γειτόνων οἰκίας τῶν Γραικῶν
first indeed the of-the neighbors houses of-the Greeks
ἐξεπόρθουν καὶ εἰς ἁρπαγὴν ἐτίθεντο, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ
they-sacked and to plunder they-put then and also
κατὰ τῶν οἰκητόρων τῆς τῶν Πατρῶν ὁρμήσαντες
against the inhabitants of-the of-the Patras having-rushed

πόλεως τὰ πρὸ τοῦ τείχους πεδία κατεστρέφοντο καὶ
city the before the wall plains they-laid-waste and
ταύτην ἐπολιόρκουν, μεθ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες καὶ Ἀφρικοὺς
it besieged with themselves having also Africans
καὶ Σαρακηνούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ χρόνος ἱκανὸς διῆλθε καὶ
and Saracens since and time considerable passed and
σπάνις τῶν ἀναγκαίων τοῖς ἔνδοθεν τοῦ τείχους γίνεσθαι
scarcity of-the necessities to-those inside the wall to-arise
ἤρξατο, ὕδατός τε καὶ τροφῶν, βουλὴν βουλεύονται
began of-water both and of-foods (a)-counsel they-counsel
εἰς συμβιβάσεις τε ἐλθεῖν καὶ λόγους ἀπαθείας λαβεῖν
to agreements both to-come and words of-immunity to-receive
καὶ τηνικαῦτα τὴν πόλιν ὑποτάξαι αὐτοῖς. ἐπεὶ οὖν
and then the city to-surrender to-them since then
ὁ τηνικαῦτα στρατηγὸς ὑπῆρχε πρὸς τὴν ἄκραν τοῦ
the then general was at the extremity of-the
θέματος ἐν κάστρῳ Κορίνθου, καὶ προσδοκία ἦν τοῦ
theme in (the)-fortress of-Corinth and expectation was of-the
παραγενέσθαι αὐτὸν καὶ καταπολεμῆσαι τὸ ἔθνος τῶν
to-come him and to-war-down the nation of-the
Σκλαβηνῶν, ὡς καὶ πρώην καταμηνυθέντος αὐτοῦ περὶ
Slavs as also formerly informed him concerning
τῆς καταδρομῆς αὐτῶν παρὰ τῶν ἀρχόντων, ἐβουλεύσαντο
the incursion their by the officers resolved
οἱ τοῦ κάστρου οἰκήτορες πρότερον ἀποσταλῆναι σκοπὸν
the of-the fortress inhabitants first to-be-sent (a)-lookout
εἰς τὰ ἀνατολικώτερα τῶν ὀρέων καὶ ἀποσκοπεῦσαι καὶ
to the more-eastern(-parts) of-the mountains and to-watch and
γνῶναι εἰ ἄρα παραγίνεται ὁ στρατηγός, παραγγείλαντες
to-know if then is-coming the general having-charged
καὶ σημεῖον δεδωκότες τῷ ἀπεσταλμένῳ ἵνα, εἰ μὲν
also (a)-signal having-given to-the sent(-man) that if indeed

ἴδοι ἐρχόμενον τὸν στρατηγόν, ἐν τῇ ὑποστροφῇ
he-should-see coming the general on the return
αὐτοῦ κλίνῃ τὸ φλάμουλον, ὅπως γνῶσι τὴν
his he-should-lower the pennon so-that they-may-know the
ἔλευσιν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, εἰ δὲ μή γε, κατέχειν ὀρθὸν
coming of-the general if and not at-least to-hold upright
τὸ φλάμουλον πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἔχειν αὐτοὺς προσδοκίαν τοῦ
the pennon for the not to-have them expectation for-the
λοιποῦ παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν. τοῦ οὖν σκοποῦ
rest(-of-time) to-come the general the then lookout
ἀπελθόντος καὶ μαθόντος μὴ παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν,
having-gone-away and having-learned not to-be-coming the general
ὑπέστρεφεν ὀρθὸν κατέχων τὸ φλάμουλον. καὶ δὴ τοῦ
he-was-returning upright holding the pennon and indeed —
θεοῦ εὐδοκήσαντος διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ ἁγίου ἀποστόλου
God having-been-pleased through (the)-intercessions of-the holy apostle
Ἀνδρέου, τοῦ ἵππου ὀλισθήσαντος καὶ τοῦ ἐπιβάτου
Andrew the horse having-slipped and the rider
ὑποπεπτωκότος ἔκλινε τὸ φλάμουλον, καὶ οἱ τοῦ κάστρου
having-fallen-down lowered the pennon and the of-the fortress
οἰκήτορες ἰδόντες τὸ γεγονὸς σημεῖον, καὶ νομίσαντες ἐξ
inhabitants having-seen the having-happened signal and having-supposed by
ἅπαντος παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν, ἤνοιξαν τὰς πύλας
all(-means) to-be-coming the general opened the gates
τοῦ κάστρου καὶ ἐξῆλθον θαρσαλέοι κατὰ τῶν Σκλαβηνῶν,
of-the fortress and went-out bold against the Slavs
καὶ εἶδον τὸν πρωτόκλητον ἀπόστολον ὀφθαλμοφανῶς
and saw the first-called apostle visibly
ἵππῳ ἐπικαθήμενον καὶ δρόμῳ ἐπερχόμενον κατὰ τῶν
on-(a)-horse seated and at-(a)-run coming-on against the
βαρβάρων· καὶ δὴ τρέψας τούτους κατὰ κράτος, καὶ
barbarians and indeed having-routed them by force and

διασκορπίσας καὶ ἀπελάσας πόρρω τοῦ κάστρου φυγάδας
having-scattered and having-driven far from-the fortress fugitives
ἐποίησεν. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἰδόντες καὶ καταπλαγέντες,
he-made the and barbarians having-seen and having-been-astounded
ἔκθαμβοι γεγονότες ἐπὶ τῇ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν κραταιᾷ ἐπελεύσει
amazed having-become at the against them mighty onset
τοῦ ἀηττήτου καὶ ἀκαταγωνίστου ὁπλίτου καὶ στρατηγοῦ
of-the unconquered and invincible man-at-arms and general
καὶ ταξιάρχου καὶ τροπαιούχου καὶ νικηφόρου πρωτοκλήτου
and taxiarch and trophy-bearer and victory-bearer first-called
ἀποστόλου Ἀνδρέου, ἐταράχθησαν, ἐσαλεύθησαν, τρόμος
apostle Andrew were-troubled were-shaken trembling
ἐπελάβετο αὐτούς, καὶ προσέφυγον εἰς τὸν πάνσεπτον
seized them and they-fled to the all-venerable
ναὸν αὐτοῦ. τοῦ οὖν στρατηγοῦ μετὰ τὸ τρόπαιον ἐν τῇ
temple his the then general after the trophy on the
τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταλαβόντος καὶ τὴν νίκην τοῦ ἀποστόλου
third day having-arrived and the victory of-the apostle
μαθόντος, κατεμήνυσε τῷ βασιλεῖ Νικηφόρῳ τήν τε
having-learned reported to-the emperor Nikephoros the both
ἔφοδον τῶν Σκλαβηνῶν καὶ τὴν προνομὴν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν
attack of-the Slavs and the foraging and captivity
καὶ ἀφανισμὸν καὶ τὴν λεηλασίαν καὶ τἆλλα δεινὰ
and destruction and the plundering and the-other terrible-things
ὅσα καταδραμόντες ἐποίησαν εἰς τὰ μέρη τῆς Ἀχαίας,
which having-overrun they-did in the parts — of-Achaia
ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὴν πολυήμερον πολιορκίαν καὶ τὴν κατὰ τῶν
yet and also the many-days siege and the against the
οἰκητόρων τοῦ κάστρου διηνεκῆ ἐπίθεσιν, ὡσαύτως καὶ
inhabitants of-the fortress continual attack likewise also
τὴν ἐπισκοπὴν καὶ συμμαχίαν καὶ τρόπαιον καὶ τὴν κατὰ
the watchfulness and alliance and trophy and the by

κράτος νίκην τὴν γενομένην παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καὶ
force victory the(-one) having-come-about from the apostle and
ὡς ὀφθαλμοφανῶς ὡράθη ἐπιτρέχων καὶ διώκων τοὺς
how visibly he-was-seen running-on and pursuing the
πολεμίους κατὰ νῶτον καὶ τροπούμενος αὐτούς, ὥστε καὶ
enemies in (the)-back and routing them so-that also
αὐτοὺς τοὺς βαρβάρους αἰσθέσθαι τὴν τοῦ ἀποστόλου πρὸς
the-very the barbarians to-perceive the of-the apostle toward
ἡμᾶς ἐπισκοπὴν καὶ συμμαχίαν καὶ διὰ τοῦτο προσφυγεῖν
us watchfulness and alliance and because-of this to-take-refuge
αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸν σεβάσμιον αὐτοῦ ναόν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
them in the venerable his temple the and emperor
ταῦτα ἀναμαθὼν παρεκελεύσατο οὕτως "ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ
these(-things) having-learned commanded thus since also the
τρόπαιον καὶ ἡ κατὰ κράτος νίκη παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστόλου
trophy and the by force victory from the apostle
γέγονεν, ὀφειλόμενον καθέστηκε πᾶσαν τὴν ἐκστρατείαν τῶν
came-about owed it-is all the force of-the
πολεμίων καὶ τὰ λάφυρα καὶ τὰ σκῦλα αὐτῷ ἀποδοθῆναι."
enemies and the booty and the spoils to-him to-be-given
καὶ διωρίσατο αὐτούς τε τοὺς πολεμίους μετὰ πάσης τῆς
and he-ordained them both the enemies with all the
φαμιλίας καὶ συγγενείας καὶ πάντων τῶν προσηκόντων
household and kin and all those belonging
αὐτοῖς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ πάσης τῆς ὑπάρξεως αὐτῶν, ἀφορισθῆναι
to-them yet and also all the substance their to-be-assigned
εἰς τὸν ναὸν τοῦ ἀποστόλου ἐν τῇ μητροπόλει Πατρῶν,
to the temple of-the apostle in the metropolis of-Patras
ἐν ᾗ ὁ πρωτόκλητος καὶ μαθητὴς τοῦ Χριστοῦ τὸν
in which the first-called and disciple — of-Christ the
τῆς ἀθλήσεως διήνυσεν ἀγῶνα, δεδωκὼς περὶ αὐτῶν καὶ
of-the contest completed struggle having-given about them also

σιγίλλον ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ μητροπόλει. ταῦτα οἱ πρεσβύτεροι
(a)-sigillion in the same metropolis these(-things) the elders
καὶ ἀρχαιότεροι ἀνήγγειλαν παραδόντες ἀγράφως χρόνῳ
and more-ancient reported having-handed-down unwritten by-time
τε καὶ βίῳ τοῖς ὕστερον, ὅπως ἂν κατὰ τὸν προφήτην
both and life to-those later so-that — according-to the prophet
γνῷ γενεὰ ἡ ἐρχομένη τὸ γεγονὸς θαῦμα
may-know (the)-generation the(-one) coming the having-happened miracle
διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καὶ ἀναστήσονται καὶ
through intercessions of-the apostle and they-will-arise and
ἀπαγγελοῦσιν αὐτὸ τοῖς υἱοῖς αὐτῶν, ἵνα μὴ ἐπιλάθωνται
will-declare it to-the sons their so-that not they-forget
τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν ὧν ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς διὰ πρεσβειῶν
the benefactions which did — God through intercessions
τοῦ ἀποστόλου. ἔκτοτε δὲ οἱ ἀφορισθέντες Σκλαβηνοὶ ἐν
of-the apostle from-then and the assigned Slavs in
τῇ μητροπόλει καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς βασιλικοὺς
the metropolis both the generals and the imperial-agents
καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἐξ ἐθνῶν ἀποστελλομένους πρέσβεις ὡς
and all the from nations sent envoys as
ὁμήρους διατρέφουσιν, ἔχοντες ἰδίους καὶ τραπεζοποιοὺς
hostages maintain having own both table-servants
καὶ μαγείρους καὶ πάντας τοὺς παρασκευάζοντας τὰ
and cooks and all those preparing the
τῆς τραπέζης βρώματα, τῆς μητροπόλεως εἰς ταῦτα
of-the table foods the metropolis in these
μηδὲν καινοτομουμένης, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ οἱ Σκλαβηνοὶ ἀπὸ
nothing being-innovated but themselves the Slavs from
διανομῆς καὶ συνδοσίας τῆς ὁμάδος αὐτῶν ἐπισυνάγουσι
distribution and joint-contribution of-the company their collect
τὰς τοιαύτας χρείας. ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ σιγίλλιον Λέων ὁ
the such needs made and also (a)-sigillion Leo the

ἀείμνηστος καὶ ἀοίδιμος βασιλεὺς λεπτομερῶς περιέχον
ever-memorable and celebrated emperor in-detail containing
τὸ τί ὀφείλουσι παρέχειν οἱ αὐτοὶ ἐναπογραφόμενοι τῷ
the what they-ought to-furnish the same being-registered to-the
μητροπολίτῃ, καὶ μὴ ἀπαργυρίζεσθαι παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἢ
metropolitan and not to-be-commuted-into-money by him or
ἄλλως πως κατ᾽ ἐπίνοιαν ἄδικον ζημιοῦσθαι αὐτούς.
otherwise in-any-way by contrivance unjust to-be-penalized them

L · THE SLAVS OF THE PELOPONNESE; THEMES AND OFFICES

The Milingoi and Ezeritai were subdued and taxed by Theoktistos. Krinites raised their tribute after they revolted, and Romanos restored the old rate. The people of Maina are descendants of the old Romans. The chapter traces how various themes and districts were created or transferred, Staurakios' quarrel with Eustathios over the Mardaites of Attaleia, the list of parakoimomenoi, and how the cleric Ktenas bought the rank of protospatharius.

περὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ θέματι Πελοποννήσου Σκλάβων, τῶν
concerning the in the theme of-Peloponnese Slavs the
τε Μιληγγῶν καὶ Ἐζεριτῶν, καὶ περὶ τῶν τελουμένων
both Milingoi and Ezeritai and concerning the paid
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν πάκτων. ὁμοίως καὶ περὶ τῶν οἰκητόρων
by them tributes likewise also concerning the inhabitants
τοῦ κάστρου τοῦ Μαϊνῆς, καὶ τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτῶν τελουμένων
of-the fortress — of-Maina and the by them paid
πάκτων.
tributes

Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ τοῦ θέματος Πελοποννήσου Σκλάβοι ἐν
(one)-must-know that the of-the theme of-Peloponnese Slavs in
ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοφίλου καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ
the days of-the emperor Theophilos and of-the son his

Μιχαὴλ ἀποστατήσαντες γεγόνασιν ἰδιόρυθμοι, λεηλασίας
Michael having-revolted became independent plunderings
καὶ ἀνδραποδισμοὺς καὶ πραίδας καὶ ἐμπρησμοὺς καὶ
and enslavings and raids and burnings and
κλοπὰς ἐργαζόμενοι. ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαὴλ τοῦ
thefts working under and the reign of-Michael the
υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου ἀπεστάλη ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Θεόκτιστος,
son of-Theophilos was-sent the protospatharius Theoktistos
οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην ὁ τῶν Βροιενίων, στρατηγὸς ἐν τῷ
whose the surname the(-one) of-the Bryennioi (as)-general to the
θέματι Πελοποννήσου μετὰ δυνάμεως καὶ ἰσχύος πολλῆς,
theme of-Peloponnese with power and strength much
ἤγουν Θρᾳκῶν καὶ Μακεδόνων καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν δυτικῶν
that-is of-Thracians and Macedonians and of-the other western
θεμάτων, τοῦ πολεμῆσαι καὶ καθυποτάξαι αὐτούς. καὶ
themes of-the to-war-upon and to-subject them and
πάντας μὲν τοὺς Σκλάβους καὶ λοιποὺς ἀνυποτάκτους
all indeed the Slavs and other unsubdued
τοῦ θέματος Πελοποννήσου ὑπέταξε καὶ ἐχειρώσατο· μόνοι
of-the theme of-Peloponnese he-subjected and mastered only
δὲ οἱ Ἐζερῖται καὶ οἱ Μιληγγοὶ κατελείφθησαν ὑπὸ τὴν
and the Ezeritai and the Milingoi were-left near —
Λακεδαιμονίαν καὶ τὸ Ἕλος. καὶ ἐπειδὴ ὄρος ἐστὶν
Lacedaemonia and — Helos and since (a)-mountain is
ἐκεῖσε μέγα καὶ ὑψηλότατον, καλούμενον Πενταδάκτυλος,
there great and very-high called Pentadaktylos
καὶ εἰσέρχεται ὥσπερ τράχηλος εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἕως
and it-runs like (a)-neck into the sea for
πολλοῦ διαστήματος, διὰ τὸ εἶναι τὸν τόπον δύσκολον
(a)-long distance because-of the to-be the place difficult
κατῴκησαν εἰς τὰς πλευρὰς τοῦ αὐτοῦ ὄρους, ἐν μὲν
they-settled on the flanks of-the same mountain on indeed

τῷ ἑνὶ μέρει οἱ Μιληγγοὶ ἐν δὲ τῷ ἑτέρῳ οἱ Ἐζερῖται.
the one side the Milingoi on and the other the Ezeritai
καὶ ὁ μὲν προρρηθεὶς πρωτοσπάθαριος Θεόκτιστος
and the indeed aforesaid protospatharius Theoktistos
καὶ στρατηγὸς Πελοποννήσου δυνηθεὶς καὶ τούτους
and general of-Peloponnese having-been-able also these
καθυποτάξαι, ἐπέθετο τοῖς μὲν Μιληγγοῖς νομίσματα ξ΄
to-subject imposed on-the indeed Milingoi nomismata 60
τοῖς δὲ Ἐζερίταις νομίσματα τ΄, ἅτινα καὶ ἐτέλουν αὐτοῦ
on-the and Ezeritai nomismata 300 which also they-paid him
στρατηγοῦντος, καθὼς παρὰ τῶν ἐντοπίων διασώζεται
being-general as by the locals is-preserved
μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἡ τοιαύτη φήμη, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς
until the today the such report under and the
βασιλείας τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως στρατηγῶν
reign of-the lord Romanos the emperor being-general
ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Ἰωάννης ὁ Πρωτεύων ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
the protospatharius John the Proteuon in the same
θέματι ἀνήγαγε πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν κῦριν Ῥωμανὸν περί
theme referred to the same lord Romanos concerning
τε τῶν Μιληγγῶν καὶ τῶν Ἐζεριτῶν, ὅτι ἀποστατήσαντες
both the Milingoi and the Ezeritai that having-revolted
οὐ πείθονται οὔτε τῷ στρατηγῷ οὔτε βασιλικῇ κελεύσει
not they-obey neither the general nor (an)-imperial order
ὑπείκουσιν, ἀλλ᾽ εἰσὶν ὥσπερ αὐτόνομοι καὶ αὐτοδέσποτοι
yield but they-are as-it-were independent and self-ruled
καὶ οὔτε παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ δέχονται ἄρχοντα οὔτε
and neither from the general they-receive (a)-headman nor
συνταξιδεύειν αὐτῷ ὑπείκουσιν οὔτε ἄλλην τοῦ δημοσίου
to-campaign-with him yield nor other of-the public
δουλείαν ἐκτελεῖν πείθονται. καὶ μέχρι τοῦ ἀνελθεῖν τὴν
service to-perform obey and until the to-go-up the

ἀναφορὰν αὐτοῦ συνέβη προβληθῆναι τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
report his it-happened to-be-appointed the protospatharius
Κρινίτην τὸν Ἀροτρᾶν στρατηγὸν ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ· τῆς δὲ
Krinites the Arotras (as)-general in Peloponnese of-the and
ἀναφορᾶς τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου καὶ στρατηγοῦ
report of-the protospatharius John and general
Πελοποννήσου τοῦ πρωτεύοντος καταλαβούσης καὶ κατ᾽
of-Peloponnese the Proteuon having-arrived and in
ἐνώπιον τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ἀναγνωσθείσης,
(the)-presence of-the emperor the lord Romanos having-been-read
καὶ περιεχούσης τὴν ἀποστασίαν τῶν προρρηθέντων
and containing the revolt of-the aforesaid
Σκλάβων καὶ πρὸς τὰς βασιλικὰς προστάξεις δυσπείθειαν
Slavs and toward the imperial commands reluctance
ἢ μᾶλλον ἀπείθειαν, ἐδέξατο ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάριος
or rather disobedience received the same protospatharius
Κρινίτης ἵνα, ἐπεὶ εἰς τοσαύτην ἤλασαν ἀποστασίαν καὶ
Krinites that since to so-great they-drove revolt and
ἀπείθειαν, ἐκστρατεύσῃ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ καταπολεμήσῃ καὶ
disobedience he-march against them and war-down and
ὑποτάξῃ καὶ ἐξολοθρεύσῃ αὐτούς. ἀρξάμενος οὖν πολεμεῖν
subject and destroy them having-begun then to-war-upon
αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ μηνὸς Μαρτίου, καὶ κατακαύσας τὰ θέρη
them from (the)-month of-March and having-burned the harvests
αὐτῶν καὶ ληϊσάμενος πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν, ἔσχεν αὐτοὺς
their and having-plundered all the land their he-had them
ἀνθισταμένους καὶ ἀντέχοντας μέχρι μηνὸς Νοεμβρίου·
resisting and holding-out until (the)-month of-November
ἀπὸ τότε δὲ ἰδόντες τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐξολόθρευσιν ᾐτήσαντο
from then and having-seen the their-own destruction they-asked
λόγον τοῦ ὑποταγῆναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τυχεῖν συμπαθείας
(a)-promise of-the to-be-subjected to-them and to-obtain compassion

ὑπὲρ ὧν πρώην ἐπλημμέλησαν. ὁ οὖν προρρηθεὶς
for (the-things)-which formerly they-had-offended the then aforesaid
πρωτοσπαθάριος καὶ στρατηγὸς ὁ Κρινίτης ἐξέθετο αὐτοῖς
protospatharius and general — Krinites set-out-for them
πάκτα πλείονα ὧν ἐτέλουν, τοῖς μὲν Μιληγγοῖς ἀπὸ
tributes greater than-what they-paid on-the indeed Milingoi beyond
τῶν ξ΄ νομισμάτων ὧν πρότερον ἐτέλουν, νομίσματα φμ΄,
the 60 nomismata which formerly they-paid nomismata 540
ὡς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν πάκτον αὐτῶν νομίσματα χ΄, τοῖς δὲ
so-that to-be the whole tribute their nomismata 600 on-the and
Ἐζερίταις ἀπὸ τῶν τ΄ νομισμάτων ὧν πρότερον ἐτέλουν,
Ezeritai beyond the 300 nomismata which formerly they-paid
ἕτερα νομίσματα τ΄, ὡς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν πάκτον αὐτῶν
other nomismata 300 so-that to-be the whole tribute their
νομίσματα χ΄, ἅτινα καὶ ἀπῄτησε καὶ εἰσεκόμισεν ὁ αὐτὸς
nomismata 600 which also exacted and brought-in the same
πρωτοσπαθάριος Κρινίτης ἐν τῷ θεοφυλάκτῳ κοιτῶνι. τοῦ
protospatharius Krinites into the God-guarded bedchamber the
δὲ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Κρινίτου ἐν τῷ θέματι μετατεθέντος
and protospatharius Krinites to the theme having-been-transferred
Ἑλλάδος, καὶ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Βάρδα τοῦ Πλατυπόδη
of-Hellas and the protospatharius Bardas the Platypodes
προβληθέντος στρατηγοῦ ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ, καὶ τῆς ἀταξίας
having-been-appointed general in Peloponnese and the disorder
γενομένης καὶ στάσεως παρὰ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
having-arisen and sedition by the-very the protospatharius
Βάρδα τοῦ Πλατυπόδη καὶ τῶν ὁμοφρόνων αὐτοῦ
Bardas the Platypodes and the like-minded his
πρωτοσπαθαρίων καὶ ἀρχόντων, καὶ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
protospatharii and officers and the protospatharius
Λέοντα τὸν Ἀγέλαστον ἀποδιωξάντων ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος,
Leo the Agelastos having-driven-out from the theme

καὶ εὐθέως γενομένης καὶ τῆς τῶν Σκλαβησιανῶν
and at-once having-come-about also the of-the Sklabesianoi
ἐπιθέσεως κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ θέματος, ἀπέστειλαν οἱ αὐτοὶ
attack against the same theme sent the same
Σκλάβοι, οἵ τε Μιληγγοὶ καὶ οἱ Ἐζερῖται, πρὸς τὸν κῦριν
Slavs the both Milingoi and the Ezeritai to the lord
Ῥωμανὸν τὸν βασιλέα, ἐξαιτούμενοι καὶ παρακαλοῦντες
Romanos the emperor asking and begging
τοῦ συμπαθηθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὰς προσθήκας τῶν πάκτων
of-the to-be-remitted to-them the additions of-the tributes
καὶ τελεῖν αὐτοὺς καθὼς καὶ πρότερον ἐτέλουν. ἐπεὶ δέ,
and to-pay them as also before they-paid since and
καθὼς προείρηται, εἰσῆλθον οἱ Σκλαβησιανοὶ ἐν τῷ
as has-been-said-before came the Sklabesianoi into the
θέματι Πελοποννήσου, δεδιὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἵνα μὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ
theme of-Peloponnese fearing the emperor that not also they
προστεθέντες τοῖς Σκλάβοις παντελῆ ἐξολόθρευσιν τοῦ
having-been-added to-the Slavs complete destruction of-the
αὐτοῦ θέματος ἐργάσωνται, ἐποίησεν αὐτοῖς χρυσοβούλλιον
same theme bring-about made for-them (a)-chrysobull
ἵνα τελῶσι τὰ πάκτα ὡς καὶ πρότερον, τοὺς μὲν
that they-pay the tributes as also before the indeed
Μιληγγοὺς ξ′ νομίσματα, τοὺς δὲ Ἐζερίτας νομίσματα τ′.
Milingoi 60 nomismata the and Ezeritai nomismata 300
αὕτη οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ αἰτία τῆς προσθήκης καὶ τῆς ἐκκοπῆς
this then is the cause of-the addition and of-the cutting-off
τῶν πάκτων τῶν Μιληγγῶν καὶ τῶν Ἐζεριτῶν.
of-the tributes of-the Milingoi and of-the Ezeritai
Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Μαΐνης οἰκήτορες οὐκ εἰσὶν
(one)-must-know that the of-the fortress of-Maina inhabitants not are
ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς τῶν προρρηθέντων Σκλάβων, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ
from the race of-the aforesaid Slavs but from

τῶν παλαιοτέρων Ῥωμαίων, οἳ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν παρὰ
the older Romans who also until the now by
τῶν ἐντοπίων Ἕλληνες προσαγορεύονται διὰ τὸ ἐν τοῖς
the locals Hellenes are-called because-of the in the
προπαλαιοῖς χρόνοις εἰδωλολάτρας εἶναι καὶ προσκυνητὰς
very-ancient times idolaters to-be and worshipers
τῶν εἰδώλων κατὰ τοὺς παλαιοὺς Ἕλληνας· οἵτινες
of-the idols like the ancient Hellenes who
ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ ἀοιδίμου Βασιλείου βαπτισθέντες
under the reign of-the celebrated Basil having-been-baptized
Χριστιανοὶ γεγόνασιν. ὁ δὲ τόπος ἐν ᾧ οἰκοῦσίν ἐστιν
Christians became the and place in which they-dwell is
ἄνυδρος καὶ ἀπρόσοδος ἐλαιοφόρος δέ· ὅθεν καὶ τὴν
waterless and inaccessible olive-bearing but whence also the
παραμυθίαν ἔχουσι. διάκειται δὲ ὁ τοιοῦτος τόπος εἰς
consolation they-have lies and the such place on
ἄκραν τοῦ Μαλέα, ἤγουν ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ἐζεροῦ πρὸς
(the)-point — of-Malea that-is beyond — of-Ezeron toward
παραθαλασσίαν. διὰ δὲ τὸ τελείως ὑποτεταγμένους εἶναι
(the)-coast because-of and the completely subjected to-be
αὐτοὺς καὶ ἄρχοντα παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ δέχεσθαι καὶ
them and (a)-headman from the general to-receive and
πειθαρχεῖν καὶ ὑπείκειν ταῖς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ προστάξεσιν,
to-obey and to-yield to-the of-the general commands
παρέχουσι πάκτον ἐκ παλαιτάτου χρόνου νομίσματα υ΄.
they-furnish (a)-tribute from most-ancient time nomismata 400
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ τῆς Καππαδοκίας στρατηγὶς τὸ
(one)-must-know that the — of-Cappadocia command in-the
παλαιὸν τοῦρμα ἦν τῆς τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν στρατηγίδος.
old(-days) (a)-tourma was of-the of-the Anatolikoi command

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Κεφαληνίας στρατηγὶς ἤγουν τὰ νησία
(one)-must-know that the of-Kephalenia command that-is the islets
τοῦρμα ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν τῆς στρατηγίδος Λογουβαρδίας· ἐπὶ
(a)-tourma was in-the old(-days) of-the command of-Lombardy under
δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου γέγονε στρατηγίς.
and Leo the Christ-loving lord became (a)-command
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Καλαβρίας στρατηγὶς δουκάτον ἦν τὸ
(one)-must-know that the of-Calabria command (a)-duchy was in-the
παλαιὸν τῆς στρατηγίδος Σικελίας.
old(-days) of-the command of-Sicily
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ στρατηγὶς τοῦρμα ἦν
(one)-must-know that the — of-Charsianon command (a)-tourma was
τὸ παλαιὸν τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν στρατηγίδος.
in-the old(-days) of-the of-the Armeniakoi command
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving lord
ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων εἰς τὸ Καππαδοκῶν
from the theme of-the Boukellarioi to the of-Cappadocians
θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἤτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία
theme were-transferred these the banda that-is the topoteresia
Βάρετας, ἡ τοποτηρησία Βαλβαδῶνος, ἡ τοποτηρησία
of-Bareta the topoteresia of-Balbadon the topoteresia
Ἀσπονας καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Ἀκαρκοῦς· καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ
of-Aspona and the topoteresia of-Akarkous and from the
θέματος τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν εἰς τὸ Καππαδοκῶν θέμα
theme of-the Anatolikoi to the of-Cappadocians theme
μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἤτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία τῆς
were-transferred these the banda that-is the topoteresia —
Εὐδοκιάδος, ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ ἁγίου Ἀγαπητοῦ, ἡ
of-Eudokias the topoteresia of-the holy Agapetos the
τοποτηρησία Ἀφραζείας· καὶ ἐγένοντο ταῦτα τὰ ἑπτὰ
topoteresia of-Aphrazeia and became these the seven

βάνδα, ἤτοι τὰ τῶν Βουκελλαρίων τέσσαρα καὶ τρία τῶν
banda that-is the of-the Boukellarioi four and three of-the
Ἀνατολικῶν, τοῦρμα μία ἡ νῦν τὰ Κόμματα λεγομένη.
Anatolikoi tourma one the(-one) now the Kommata called
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου ἀπὸ
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving lord from
τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων εἰς τὸ θέμα Χαρσιανοῦ
the theme of-the Boukellarioi to the theme of-Charsianon
μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἤτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ
were-transferred these the banda that-is the topoteresia —
Μυριοκεφάλου, ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ τιμίου Σταυροῦ καὶ ἡ
of-Myriokephalon the topoteresia of-the precious Cross and the
τοποτηρησία Βερινουπόλεως, καὶ ἐγένοντο τοῦρμα ἡ νῦν
topoteresia of-Berinoupolis and became (a)-tourma the(-one) now
Σανιάνα λεγομένη. καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν εἰς
Saniana called and from the theme of-the Armeniakoi to
τὸ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἤτοι ἡ
the — of-Charsianon theme were-transferred these the banda that-is the
τοῦ Κομοδρόμου τοποτηρησία, ἡ τοποτηρησία Ταβίας, καὶ
— of-Komodromos topoteresia the topoteresia of-Tabia and
εἰς τὴν τοῦρμαν τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ τὴν εἰρημένην προσετέθησαν.
to the tourma — of-Charsianon the said were-added
ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Καππαδοκῶν εἰς τὸ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ θέμα ταῦτα
from and the of-Cappadocians to the — of-Charsianon theme these
τὰ βάνδα μετετέθησαν, ἤτοι ἡ τοῦρμα Κασῆς ἐξ ὑλοκλήρου
the banda were-transferred that-is the tourma of-Kase in entirety
καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Νύσσης μετὰ τῆς Καισαρείας.
and the topoteresia of-Nyssa with — Caesarea
Ἰστέον ὅτι τοῖς παρελθοῦσι χρόνοις τὸ τοῦ Χοζάνου
(one)-must-know that in-the past times the — of-Chozanon
θέμα ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἦν. ὁμοίως καὶ τὸ τοῦ
theme under the Saracens was likewise also the —

Ἀσμοσάτου θέμα καὶ αὐτὸ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἦν. τὸ δὲ
of-Asmosaton theme also it under the Saracens was — and
Χανζὶτ καὶ ἡ Ῥωμανόπολις κλεισοῦρα τῶν Μελιτηνιατῶν
Chanzit and — Romanopolis (the)-clisura of-the Melitenians
ὑπῆρχον, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ Φατιλάνου πάντα τὰ
were and from the mountain — of-Phatilanos all the(-parts)
ἐκεῖθεν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ὑπῆρχεν, τὸ δὲ Τεκῆς ἦν τοῦ
beyond of-the Saracens were — and Tekes was —
Μανουήλ. ἡ δὲ Κάμαχα ἡ τοῦρμα ἄκρα Κολωνίας
of-Manuel — and Kamacha the tourma (the)-extremity of-Koloneia
ἦν, ἡ δὲ τῆς Κελτζινῆς τοῦρμα ὑπὸ τὴν Χαλδίαν ἦν. ἡ
was the and — of-Keltzene tourma under — Chaldia was —
δὲ Μεσοποταμία τῷ τότε καιρῷ θέμα οὐκ ἦν. Λέων δὲ
and Mesopotamia at-the then time (a)-theme not was Leo and
ὁ φιλόχριστος καὶ ἀοίδιμος βασιλεὺς τὸν Μανουὴλ ἐκεῖνον
the Christ-loving and celebrated emperor — Manuel that
ἀπὸ τοῦ Τεκῆς μετὰ λόγου ἐξήγαγεν, καὶ ἐν τῇ πόλει
from — Tekes with (a)-promise brought-out and into the city
αὐτὸν εἰσήγαγε καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον πεποίηκεν. ἔχει δὲ ὁ
him brought and protospatharius made(-him) has and the
αὐτὸς Μανουὴλ υἱοὺς τέσσαρας, τὸν Παγκρατούκαν, τὸν
same Manuel sons four — Pankratoukas —
Ἰαχνούκαν, τὸν Μουδάφαρ καὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην· καὶ τὸν μὲν
Iachnoukas — Moudaphar and — John and — indeed
Παγκρατούκαν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἱκανάτον πεποίηκε καὶ μετὰ
Pankratoukas the emperor hikanatos made and after
τοῦτο στρατηγὸν εἰς τοὺς βουκελλαρίους, τὸν δὲ Ἰαχνούκαν
this general for the Boukellarioi — and Iachnoukas
εἰς Νικόπολιν στρατηγὸν ἐποίησε, τὸν δὲ Μουδάφαρ καὶ τὸν
at Nikopolis general he-made — and Moudaphar and —
Ἰωάννην ἐν Τραπεζοῦντι δέδωκε γῆν βασιλικήν, ἅπαντας
John in Trebizond he-gave land imperial all

ἀξιώμασι τιμήσας καὶ δοὺς αὐτοῖς εὐεργεσίας πολλάς.
with-dignities having-honored and having-given them benefactions many
καὶ ἐποίησε θέμα τὴν Μεσοποταμίαν, καὶ τὸν Ὀρέστην
and he-made (a)-theme — Mesopotamia and — Orestes
ἐκεῖνον τὸν Χαρσιανίτην στρατηγὸν προεβάλετο, καὶ τότε
that the Charsianite (as)-general he-appointed and then
δέδωκε τὴν τῆς Καμάχας τοῦρμαν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα εἶναι
gave the — of-Kamacha tourma under the theme to-be
τῆς Μεσοποταμίας· εἶθ' οὕτως καὶ τὴν Κελτζινῆς τοῦρμαν
— of-Mesopotamia then thus also the of-Keltzene tourma
ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα καὶ αὐτὴν τῆς Μεσοποταμίας ἐποίησεν.
under the theme also it — of-Mesopotamia made
ἀρτίως δὲ ταῦτα πάντα γεγονότα ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
now and these all having-come under the authority
τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰς τὸ Μεσοποταμίας θέμα ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ
of-the Romans to the of-Mesopotamia theme under Romanos
δεσπότου προσετέθη ἥ τε Ῥωμανόπολις καὶ τὸ Χανζίτ.
(the)-lord was-added — both Romanopolis and — Chanzit
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου ἡ
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving lord —
Λάρισσα τοῦρμα τῆς Σεβαστείας ἦν, τὸ δὲ Κυμβαλαιὸς ἦν
Larissa (a)-tourma — of-Sebasteia was — and Kymbalaios was
τοῦρμα τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ, τὸ δὲ Συμπόσιον ἦν ἐρημία πρὸς
(a)-tourma — of-Charsianon — and Symposion was (a)-wilderness toward
τὰ μέρη τῆς Λυκανδοῦ παρακείμενον. καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας
the parts — of-Lykandos lying-near and under the reign
Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου Εὐστάθιος ὁ τοῦ
of-Leo the Christ-loving lord Eustathios the(-son) —
Ἀργυροῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐξορίας ἀνακληθεὶς εἰς τὸ Χαρσιανὸν
of-Argyros from the exile having-been-recalled to — Charsianon
στρατηγὸς ἐχωρίσθη· ὁ δὲ Μελίας εἰς τὴν Μελιτηνὴν ἔτι
(as)-general was-assigned — and Melias in — Melitene still

πρόσφυγος ἦν, καὶ ὁ Βαασάκιος μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν
(a)-refugee was and — Baasakios with the two brothers
αὐτοῦ τοῦ τε Κρικορίκη καὶ τοῦ Παζουνῆ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ
his — both Krikorikios and — Pazounes but also —
Ἰσμαὴλ ὁ Ἀρμένιος ἐκεῖνος, οἵτινες καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ
Ishmael the Armenian that who also to him and
τὸν προρρηθέντα Ἀργυρὸν ἔγραψαν διὰ τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου
the aforesaid Argyros wrote through the chrysobull
λόγον λαβεῖν καὶ ἐξελθεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν Βαασάκιον
(a)-promise to-receive and to-come-out and — indeed Baasakios
καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς αὐτοῦ εἰς Λάρισσαν καθεσθῆναι, καὶ
and the brothers his at Larissa to-be-settled and
ὀνομασθῆναι τὸν μὲν Βαασάκιον Λαρίσσης κλεισουριάρχην,
to-be-named — indeed Baasakios of-Larissa clisurarch
ὅπερ καὶ γέγονε, τὸν δὲ Ἰσμαὴλ κλεισουριάρχην εἰς τὸ
which also happened — and Ishmael clisurarch at —
Συμπόσιον, ὃ καὶ γέγονε, τὸν δὲ Μελίαν εἰς Εὐφράτειαν
Symposion which also happened — and Melias at Euphrateia
εἰς τὰ Τρυπία εἰς τὴν ἐρημίαν γενέσθαι τουρμάρχην, ὅπερ
at — Trypia in the wilderness to-become tourmarch which
καὶ ἐγένετο. ἐξελθόντων δὲ τῶν Μελιτηνιατῶν καὶ τὸν
also happened having-come-out and the Melitenians and —
Ἰσμαὴλ ἐκεῖνον ἀνελόντων ἔμενε τὸ Συμπόσιον ἔρημον·
Ishmael that having-killed remained — Symposion deserted
τοῦ δὲ Βαασακίου ὅτι προδοσίαν μελετᾷ διαβληθέντος
— and Baasakios that treason he-plans having-been-slandered
καὶ ἐξορισθέντος πάλιν ὑπὸ τῆς Σεβαστείας ἡ Λάρισσα
and having-been-exiled again under — Sebasteia — Larissa
τοῦρμα ἐγένετο, στρατηγοῦ προβληθέντος ἐκεῖσε τοῦ
(a)-tourma became (a)-general having-been-appointed there —
Ἀργυροῦ Λέοντος τοῦ υἱοῦ Εὐσταθίου, τοῦ μετὰ ταῦτα
Argyros Leo the son of-Eustathios the(-one) after these(-things)

μαγίστρου γεγονότος καὶ δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν. ὁ δὲ
magistros having-become and domestic of-the scholae — and
Μελίας εἰς Εὐφράτειαν καθεζόμενος, ὁπότε προεβλήθη
Melias at Euphrateia sitting when was-appointed
Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ δοὺξ εἰς τὸ Χαρσιανόν, κατῆλθεν οὗτος ὁ
Constantine the Doux to — Charsianon came-down this the
προρρηθεὶς Μελίας, καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν κάστρον τὴν Λυκανδὸν
aforesaid Melias and the ancient fortress — Lykandos
ἐκράτησε, καὶ ἔκτισεν αὐτὸ καὶ ὠχυροποίησε, καὶ ἐκεῖσε
took and built it and fortified(-it) and there
ἐκαθέσθη, καὶ ὠνομάσθη παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
settled and was-named by Leo the Christ-loving
βασιλέως κλεισοῦρα. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο διεπέρασεν ἀπὸ
emperor (a)-clisura and after this he-crossed from
Λυκανδοῦ εἰς τὸ ὄρος τῆς Τζαμανδοῦ, κἀκεῖσε τὸ νῦν
Lykandos to the mountain — of-Tzamandos and-there the now
ὂν κάστρον ἔκτισε· καὶ ὡσαύτως κἀκεῖνο κλεισοῦρα
being fortress he-built and likewise that-too (a)-clisura
ἐκαλεῖτο. ἐκράτησε δὲ καὶ τὸ Συμπόσιον, ποιήσας αὐτὸ
was-called he-took and also — Symposion having-made it
τουρμαρχάτον. ἐπὶ δὲ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
(a)-tourmarchate under and Constantine the Christ-loving
δεσπότου, τοῦτο πρῶτον, συνούσης αὐτῷ καὶ Ζωῆς
lord this first being-with him also Zoe
τῆς μητρὸς αὐτοῦ, γέγονεν ἡ Λυκανδὸς στρατηγίς, καὶ
the mother his became — Lykandos (a)-command and
πρῶτος Λυκανδοῦ στρατηγὸς ὠνομάσθη ὁ πατρίκιος
first of-Lykandos general was-named the patrician
Μελίας, δηλονότι τῷ τότε καιρῷ αὐτοῦ κλεισουριάρχου ἐν
Melias evidently at-the then time him clisurarch at
Λυκανδῷ τυγχάνοντος. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς Μελίας διά τε τὴν
Lykandos being the and same Melias because-of both the

συνοῦσαν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων πίστιν
being-with him toward the emperor of-the Romans faith
καὶ τὰς πολλὰς καὶ ἀπείρους αὐτοῦ κατὰ Σαρακηνῶν
and the many and boundless his against Saracens
ἀνδραγαθίας μετέπειτα μάγιστρος ἐτιμήθη.
brave-deeds afterward (as)-magistros was-honored
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Ἄβαρα τοῦρμα ἦν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα
(one)-must-know that — Abara (a)-tourma was under the theme
Σεβαστείας, ἐπὶ δὲ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου γέγονε κλεισοῦρα.
of-Sebasteia under and Romanos (the)-lord it-became (a)-clisura
Ἰστέον ὅτι τύπος ἐκράτησε παλαιὸς τὸν κατεπάνω
(one)-must-know that (a)-rule has-prevailed ancient the katepano
Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλίας παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως δηλονότι
of-(the)-Mardaites of-Attaleia by the emperor evidently
προβάλλεσθαι· διὸ καὶ παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ μακαριωτάτου
to-be-appointed therefore also by Leo the most-blessed
βασιλέως κατεπάνω προεβλήθη Σταυράκιος ὁ Πλατὺς
emperor (as)-katepano was-appointed Staurakios the Platys
ἐπονομαζόμενος, ὃς χρόνους μὲν διέτριψεν ἱκανούς, οὐχὶ
surnamed who years indeed spent considerable not
καλῶς δὲ καὶ τὰ τέλη διέθηκε. τοῦ γὰρ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
well and also the end disposed the for protospatharius
Εὐσταθίου καὶ ἀσηκρῆτις ἐν τῷ τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν
Eustathios and asekretis to the of-the Kibyrrhaiotai
θέματι ἐκ προσώπου ἀποσταλέντος φθόνοι τινὲς ἀναμεταξὺ
theme by proxy having-been-sent envies some between
τούτων καὶ μάχαι γεγόνασιν· ὅ τε γὰρ Σταυράκιος ὁ
these and battles arose — both for Staurakios the
Πλατὺς εἰς τὸν πατρίκιον Ἡμέριον καὶ λογοθέτην τοῦ
Platys in the patrician Himerios and logothete of-the
δρόμου θαρρῶν ὡς ἅ τε παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλέα
course trusting as inasmuch as by him to the emperor

μεσιτευθείς, τῷ ἐκ προσώπου Εὐσταθίῳ ἀντέπιπτε καὶ
having-been-sponsored to-the by proxy Eustathios opposed and
μάλιστα ἐναντίως εἶχεν ἐν οἷς αὐτὸν ἑώρα ἔξω τοῦ
especially contrarily was-disposed in which him he-saw beyond the
δέοντός τι διαπραττόμενον ἢ καὶ προστάττοντα· ὅ τε
needful something doing or also commanding he both
δὲ πάλιν ὁ ἐκ προσώπου Εὐστάθιος πρὸς τὸν Σταυράκιον
and again the by proxy Eustathios toward — Staurakios
διέκειτο ἐχθρωδῶς, καὶ πολλὰς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐπιθέσεις καὶ
was-disposed hostilely and many against him attacks and
μηχανὰς ἐπλάττετο. ὅθεν αἰτίας ὁ προρρηθεὶς Εὐστάθιος
devices fabricated whence charges the aforesaid Eustathios
κατὰ τοῦ Σταυρακίου ἀνήγαγεν, ὡς τὸ τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν
against — Staurakios referred that the of-the Kibyrrhaiotai
θέμα δύο στρατηγοὺς ἔχειν οὐ δύναται, δηλονότι ἐμὲ καὶ
theme two generals to-have not is-able evidently me and
τὸν Σταυράκιον τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρδαϊτῶν· ἄλλα γὰρ
— Staurakios the katepano of-(the)-Mardaites some-things for
ἐμοῦ προστάττοντος καὶ διοικεῖν ἐθέλοντος, ἄλλα ποιεῖν
I commanding and to-administer wishing other-things to-do
ὁ κατεπάνω Μαρδαϊτῶν βούλεται, καὶ αὐτεξούσιος ὢν
the katepano of-(the)-Mardaites wishes and independent being
τὰ αὐτῷ δοκοῦντα μανικῶς διαπράττεται. ἀνήγαγε δὲ
the(-things) to-him seeming madly does he-referred and
καὶ ἄλλας ψευδολογίας τινάς, καὶ πολλὰς μηχανὰς κατ᾽
also other false-tales some and many devices against
αὐτοῦ συνερράψατο, τὰς μὲν πιθανῶς συνθείς, τὰς
him stitched-together the indeed plausibly having-composed the
δὲ συκοφαντικῶς τε καὶ μανικῶς ἀναπλασάμενος. καὶ
and calumniously both and madly having-fabricated and
οὗτος δηλονότι τῷ πατρικίῳ Ἡμερίῳ καὶ λογοθέτῃ τοῦ
he evidently in-the patrician Himerios and logothete of-the

δρόμου θαρρῶν ταῦτα ἔγραψεν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τότε καιρῷ
course trusting these(-things) wrote at and the then time
φίλος Εὐσταθίου μᾶλλον ἦν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἡμέριος ἤπερ
(a)-friend of-Eustathios rather was the patrician Himerios than
Σταυρακίου, κἂν ὕστερον ἐχθρανθέντες ἀμφότεροι ἔχθρας
of-Staurakios even-if later having-become-enemies both of-enmity
ἀνάμεστοι καὶ μανίας πλήρεις γεγόνασι. τὴν οὖν τοιαύτην
full and of-madness full became the then such
ἀναφορὰν Εὐσταθίου δεξάμενος ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ τῇ αἰτήσει
report of-Eustathios having-received the emperor and by-the request
τοῦ πατρικίου Ἡμερίου πεισθείς, δέδωκε τὴν τοῦ
of-the patrician Himerios having-been-persuaded gave the of-the
τοιούτου κατεπάνω ἐξουσίαν τῷ πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ Εὐσταθίῳ
such katepano authority to-the protospatharius Eustathios
τῷ ἐκ προσώπου. τοῦ δὲ μακαρίου βασιλέως τὸν βίον ἀπὸ
the by proxy the and blessed emperor the life from
τῶν κάτω πρὸς τὰ ἄνω μετηλλαχότος, Ἀλέξανδρος
the(-things) below to the(-things) above having-exchanged Alexander
ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ τῆς αὐτοκράτορος ἀρχῆς ἐγκρατὴς
the brother his of-the autocratic rule master
γεγονώς, ὡς πάντας τοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως καὶ
having-become as all those by the blessed emperor and
ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ προβληθέντας ἔν τισιν ἀρχαῖς διεδέξατο,
brother his appointed in some offices he-replaced
χαιρεκάκοις καὶ κακοβούλοις ἀνδράσι πεισθείς, οὕτω
by-malicious and ill-counseling men having-been-persuaded thus
δὴ καὶ τὸν προρρηθέντα Εὐστάθιον διεδέξατο καὶ ἀντ᾽
indeed also the aforesaid Eustathios he-replaced and in-place-of
αὐτοῦ πεποίηκεν ἕτερον. ὁ γὰρ Χασὲ ἐκεῖνος ὁ ἐκ
him made another — for Chase that the(-one) from
Σαρακηνῶν τῷ γένει ὁρμώμενος, Σαρακηνὸς δὲ τῷ ὄντι
Saracens by-the race sprung (a)-Saracen and in-the reality

τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τῇ λατρείᾳ διατελῶν, ὁ
in-the mind and in-the manner and in-the worship continuing the
τοῦ πατρικίου Δαμιανοῦ δοῦλος, ἐπεὶ πολλὴν παρρησίαν
of-the patrician Damianos slave since much freedom-of-speech
εἶχε τῷ τότε καιρῷ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος οὗτος Χασὲ
had at-the then time the protospatharius this Chase
πρὸς τὸν κῦριν Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν βασιλέα, ὡσαύτως καὶ ὁ
toward the lord Alexander the emperor likewise also the
πρωτοσπαθάριος Νικήτας ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Χασέ, ὁ καὶ
protospatharius Niketas the brother — of-Chase the(-one) also
τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν στρατηγὸς γεγονὼς παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
of-the Kibyrrhaiotai general having-become by the same
κυροῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ βασιλέως. ὁ Νικήτας οὖν οὗτος
lord Alexander the emperor — Niketas then this
ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος Χασὲ τὸν βασιλέα ᾐτήσατο
the brother of-the aforesaid Chase the emperor asked
ὅτι ὡς ἀρχαῖόν σου φίλον εὐεργετεῖν με πρέπον ἐστίν,
that as (an)-old your friend to-benefit me fitting it-is
ἓν δὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν σου αἴτημα ἔχω, καὶ δίκαιόν
one and to the majesty your request I-have and just
ἐστιν εἰσακοῦσαί μου. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως διαπορουμένου καὶ
it-is to-hear me the and emperor being-at-a-loss and
ἀντερωτῶντος τί ἂν εἴη τοῦτο τὸ αἴτημα, καὶ ὅπερ
asking-in-return what — might-be this the request and whatever
ἐάν ἐστιν ὑπακοῦσαι ὑποσχομένου, ὁ προρρηθεὶς Νικήτης
if it-is to-heed having-promised the aforesaid Niketas
ᾐτήσατο ὅτι τὸν υἱόν μου αἰτοῦμαι ἵνα ποιήσῃ ἡ βασιλεία
asked that the son my I-ask that make the majesty
σου κατεπάνω τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλίας· οὗ τινὸς
your katepano of-the Mardaites of-Attaleia of-whom some
ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ αἰτήσει πεισθείς, ἐπὶ προελεύσεως
the emperor by-the request having-been-persuaded at (a)-procession

εἰσαγαγὼν ἐπὶ τοῦ Χρυσοτρικλίνου τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ
having-brought(-him)-in into the Chrysotriklinos the son of-the
πρωτοσπαθαρίου Νικήτα τὸν σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον Ἀβέρκιον,
protospatharius Niketas the spatharocandidatus Aberkios
προεβάλετο αὐτὸν κατεπάνω τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλίας,
appointed him katepano of-the Mardaites of-Attaleia
καθὼς καὶ ὁ μακάριος Λέων ὁ βασιλεὺς πρότερον
as also the blessed Leo the emperor formerly
Σταυράκιον τὸν Πλατὺν ἐπονομαζόμενον. καὶ ὁ ἐξ
Staurakios the Platys surnamed and the from
ἀρχῆθεν παλαιὸς ἔχων τύπος, καθὼς ἐν ἀρχαῖς εἴρηται,
(the)-beginning ancient having rule as at (the)-beginnings has-been-said
ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως προβάλλεσθαι τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρδαϊτῶν.
by the emperor to-be-appointed the katepano of-(the)-Mardaites
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ βασιλέως τοῦ Θεοφίλου παρακοιμώμενος
(one)-must-know that under (the)-emperor — Theophilos parakoimomenos
γέγονε Σχολαστίκιος ὀστιάριος, ἐπὶ δὲ Μιχαὴλ υἱοῦ
became Scholastikios (the)-ostiarios under and Michael son
Θεοφίλου παρακοιμώμενος Δαμιανὸς πατρίκιος· καὶ μετὰ
of-Theophilos parakoimomenos Damianos (the)-patrician and after
τοῦτον ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ γέγονε παρακοιμώμενος Βασίλειος ὁ
him under the same became parakoimomenos Basil the
φιλόχριστος βασιλεύς. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ Βασιλείου φιλοχρίστου
Christ-loving emperor under and — Basil Christ-loving
δεσπότου παρακοιμώμενος οὐ γέγονε δι' ὅλης αὐτοῦ
lord parakoimomenos not there-was through whole his
τῆς βασιλείας. ἐπὶ δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου
the reign under and Leo the Christ-loving lord
παρακοιμώμενος γέγονε Σαμωνᾶς ὁ πατρίκιος, καὶ μετὰ
parakoimomenos became Samonas the patrician and after
τοῦτον ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως γέγονε Κωνσταντῖνος
him under the same emperor became Constantine

ὁ πατρίκιος. ἐπὶ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ βασιλέως γέγονε
the patrician under and Alexander the emperor became
παρακοιμώμενος πατρίκιος Βαρβάτος. ἐπὶ δὲ Κωνσταντίνου
parakoimomenos (the)-patrician Barbatos under and Constantine
τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου γέγονε πάλιν Κωνσταντῖνος
the Christ-loving lord became again Constantine
πατρίκιος ὁ προρρηθεὶς ἐπὶ Λέοντος δεσπότου, ἐπὶ
(the)-patrician the(-one) aforesaid under Leo (the)-lord under
δὲ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου Θεοφάνης πατρίκιος· ἐπὶ δὲ
and Romanos (the)-lord Theophanes (the)-patrician under and
Κωνσταντίνου τὸ δεύτερον γέγονε Βασίλειος πατρίκιος.
Constantine the second(-time) became Basil (the)-patrician
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ ἀειμνήστου
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving and ever-memorable
βασιλέως ἦν ὁ Κτενᾶς ἐκεῖνος, γέρων κληρικὸς πάνυ
emperor was — Ktenas that old cleric very
πλούσιος, ὅστις ἦν καὶ δομέστικος εἰς τὴν νέαν ἐκκλησίαν·
rich who was also domestic at the New Church
ὑπῆρχε δὲ τεχνίτης εἰς τὸ ᾄσμα, οἷος τῷ τότε καιρῷ
he-was and (an)-artist in the chant such-as at-the then time
ἕτερος οὐκ ἦν. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς Κτενᾶς τὸν πατρίκιον
another not was the and same Ktenas the patrician
Σαμωνᾶν ἐδυσώπησε, τῷ τότε καιρῷ παρακοιμωμένου
Samonas entreated at-the then time parakoimomenos
αὐτοῦ ὄντος, μεσιτεῦσαι αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ γενέσθαι
him being to-mediate him to the emperor of-the to-become
πρωτοσπαθάριον καὶ φορεῖν ἐπικούτζουλον καὶ προέρχεσθαι
protospatharius and to-wear (the)-epikoutzoulon and to-go-forth
εἰς τὸν Λαυσιακὸν καὶ καθέζεσθαι ὡς πρωτοσπαθάριον
into the Lausiakos and to-sit as protospatharius
καὶ ῥογεύεσθαι αὐτὸν λίτραν μίαν, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης
and to-be-paid him pound one and for the such

ἀντιλήψεως δοῦναι τῷ βασιλεῖ λίτρας τεσσαράκοντα. ὁ δὲ
support to-give to-the emperor pounds forty the and
βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο τοῦτο ποιῆσαι, λέγων τῶν ἀδυνάτων
emperor not endured this to-do saying of-the impossible(-things)
τυγχάνειν καὶ εἰς μεγάλην ἀδοξίαν τῆς βασιλείας μου
to-be and to great disgrace of-the majesty my
κληρικὸν γενέσθαι πρωτοσπαθάριον. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς
(a)-cleric to-become protospatharius having-heard and the same
Κτενᾶς παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Σαμωνᾶ ταῦτα προσέθηκεν
Ktenas from the patrician Samonas these(-things) added
εἰς τὰς τεσσαράκοντα λίτρας καὶ σχολαρίκια ζυγὴν μίαν,
to the forty pounds also ear-pendants pair one
ἐκτιμηθεῖσαν λίτρας δέκα, καὶ τραπεζίου ἀσίμιν ἔνζωδον
valued pounds ten and of-table silver figured
διάχρυσον ἀνάγλυφον, ἐκτιμηθὲν καὶ αὐτὸ λίτρας δέκα. καὶ
gilded embossed valued also it pounds ten and
δυσωπηθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ παρακλήσει τοῦ πατρικίου
having-been-entreated the emperor by-the plea of-the patrician
Σαμωνᾶ καὶ παρακοιμωμένου ἀνελάβετο τὰς τεσσαράκοντα
Samonas and parakoimomenos took the forty
τοῦ χρυσίου λίτρας καὶ τὴν ζυγὴν τὰ σχολαρίκια καὶ
of-the gold pounds and the pair the ear-pendants and
τοῦ τραπεζίου τὸ ἀνάγλυφον καὶ διάχρυσον ἀσίμιν, ὡς
of-the table the embossed and gilded silver so-that
γενέσθαι τὸ πᾶν δόμα τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κτενᾶ λίτρας ἑξήκοντα.
to-be the whole gift of-the same Ktenas pounds sixty
τότε ἐποίησεν αὐτὸν ὁ βασιλεὺς πρωτοσπαθάριον καὶ
then made him the emperor protospatharius and
ἐρογεύθη τῷ καιρῷ ἐκείνῳ λίτραν μίαν. ἔζησε δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς
he-was-paid at-the time that pound one lived and the same

Κτενᾶς μετὰ τὸ τιμηθῆναι αὐτὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον ἔτη δύο
Ktenas after the to-be-honored him (as)-protospatharius years two
καὶ ἐτελεύτησεν, ἐρογεύθη δὲ τὰ δύο ἔτη ἀνὰ λίτραν μίαν.
and died was-paid and the two years each pound one

LI · THE IMPERIAL DROMONS

Leo the Wise first built imperial dromons to carry more officials. The protospatharius of the Phiale judged the rowers. The chapter follows the captains who served, among them Barkalas, who cut Symeon's barriers on the river so the Turks could cross, and how the captain of the dromon came to command all the imperial rowers. Levies from the western themes follow.

περὶ τοῦ τίνι τρόπῳ γέγονε τὸ βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον,
concerning the in-what way came-about the imperial dromon
καὶ περὶ τῶν πρωτοκαράβων τοῦ αὐτοῦ δρομωνίου, καὶ
and concerning the chief-captains of-the same dromon and
ὅσα περὶ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλας.
(the-things)-which concerning the protospatharius of-the Phiale
Ἰστέον ὅτι μέχρι τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ ἀοιδίμου
(one)-must-know that until the reign of-Leo the celebrated
καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως οὐκ ἦν βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον
and most-wise emperor not was (an)-imperial dromon
ἐν ᾧ εἰσήρχετο ὁ βασιλεύς, ἀλλ' εἰς ῥούσιον ἀγράριον
in which embarked the emperor but on (a)-red agrarion
εἰσήρχετο. πλὴν ἐπὶ Βασιλείου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου,
he-embarked except under Basil the Christ-loving lord
ὅτε ἐπῆλθεν ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς εἰς τὰ Θέρμα τῆς Προύσης,
when went the same emperor to the Therma — of-Prousa
καὶ πάλιν ὅτε ἀπῆλθε θεάσασθαι τὸ γεφύριον τοῦ Ῥηγίου
and again when he-went-away to-see the bridge — of-Rhegion

δηλονότι τῇ κελεύσει αὐτοῦ καὶ προνοίᾳ κτιζόμενον,
evidently by-the order his and providence being-built
εἰς δρομώνιον εἰσῆλθε, καὶ ἕτερον δρομώνιον ἠκολούθει
on (a)-dromon he-embarked and another dromon followed
ὄπισθεν. οἱ δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ εἰσελθόντες ἐλάται ὑπῆρχον ἀπὸ
behind those and on it having-embarked rowers were from
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἀγραρίου καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν Στενιτῶν πλωΐμων.
the imperial agrarion and from the Stenite seamen
τὸ γὰρ παλαιὸν εἶχε τὸ Στενὸν χελάνδια βασιλικὰ
in-the for old(-days) had the Stenon warships imperial
πλώϊμα μέχρι τῶν δέκα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς ὅλα
of-the-fleet up-to the ten since and the blessed emperor all
τὰ πλείονα αὐτοῦ μεταστασίματα εἰς τὰς Πηγὰς ἐποίει
the most his removals to the Pegai made
διὰ τὸ καὶ ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ κτισθῆναι τὰ τοιαῦτα παλάτια,
because-of the also by him to-have-been-built the such palaces
ὁμοίως καὶ εἰς τὸ Ἕβδομον καὶ εἰς τὴν Ἱερίαν καὶ εἰς τὴν
likewise also to — Hebdomon and to — Hieria and to —
Βρύαν, εἰσήρχετο εἰς τὸ ἀγράριον κατὰ τὸν παλαιὸν
Bryas he-embarked on the agrarion according-to the old
τύπον. ὅτε δὲ εἰς μακρότερον ἀπῄει πρόκενσον, οἷον εἰς
custom when but on (a)-longer he-went-away excursion such-as to
τὰ Θέρμα τῆς Προύσης καὶ εἰς ἐπιτήρησιν τοῦ Ῥηγίου τῆς
the Therma — of-Prousa and to inspection — of-Rhegion of-the
γεφύρας, εἰσῄει, καθὼς προείρηται, εἰς δρομώνιον, καὶ
bridge he-embarked as has-been-said-before on (a)-dromon and
ἠκολούθει ἕτερον δρομώνιον, διότι καὶ πλείονας ἄρχοντας
followed another dromon because also more officers
εἰσέρχεσθαι μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ τοὺς ὑπολοίπους εἰς τὸ
to-embark with the emperor and the remaining on the
δεύτερον δρομώνιον. ὁ δὲ ἀοίδιμος καὶ σοφώτατος Λέων
second dromon the and celebrated and most-wise Leo

ὁ βασιλεὺς φιλοτιμότερόν πως πρὸς τοὺς μαγίστρους
the emperor more-generously somehow toward the magistroi
καὶ πατρικίους καὶ οἰκείους συγκλητικοὺς διακείμενος καὶ
and patricians and own senators disposed and
θέλων ἀεὶ τοῦτο συγχαίρεσθαι, λογισάμενος μὴ ἐπαρκεῖν
wishing always this to-rejoice-together having-reckoned not to-suffice
εἰς ὑποδοχὴν πλειόνων ἀρχόντων τὸ ἀγράριον, ἐποίησε
for reception of-more officers the agrarion made
δρομώνιον, καὶ δὴ ἀπαύστως εἰσήρχετο ἐν αὐτῷ ὁπουδὰν
(a)-dromon and indeed unceasingly he-embarked on it wherever
ἐβούλετο ἀπελθεῖν. συνήρχοντο δὲ μετὰ αὐτοῦ οἵους
he-wished to-go-away went-with and with him whichever
ἂν ἐβούλετο τῶν ἀρχόντων, ἀπό τε μαγίστρων καὶ
— he-wished of-the officers from both magistroi and
πατρικίων· κατὰ τύπον γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἀγραρίῳ οὐδεὶς ἕτερος
patricians by rule for on the agrarion no-one other
εἰσήρχετο μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰ μὴ ὁ δρουγγάριος τῆς
embarked with the emperor if not the drungarius of-the
βίγλης καὶ ὁ δρουγγάριος τοῦ πλωΐμου καὶ ὁ λογοθέτης
watch and the drungarius of-the fleet and the logothete
τοῦ δρόμου καὶ ὁ ἑταιρειάρχης καὶ ὁ μυστικὸς καὶ
of-the course and the hetaereiarch and the mystikos and
ὁ τῶν δεήσεων, καὶ ὅτε παρῆν ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ
the(-one) of-the petitions and when he-was-present in the city also
ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν, καὶ ὁ παρακοιμώμενος, καὶ
the domestic of-the scholae and the parakoimomenos and
ὁ πρωτοβεστιάριος, καὶ ἐκ τῶν κοιτωνίτων οὓς ἂν
the protovestiarios and of the chamberlains whom-ever —
ἐκέλευσεν ὁ βασιλεύς. δι' οὖν τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον
ordered the emperor because-of then the way this
ἐποίησε Λέων ὁ ἀοίδιμος καὶ σοφώτατος βασιλεὺς τὸ
made Leo the celebrated and most-wise emperor the

δρομώνιον, καὶ μετά τινα καιρὸν ἐποίησε καὶ ἕτερον
dromon and after some time made also another
δρομώνιον, ὃ καὶ δεύτερον προσηγορεύθη καὶ ἀκολούθως
dromon which also second was-called and accordingly
ὠνομάσθη. καὶ γὰρ εἰς μακρόκενσα ἀπῄει ὁ μακάριος
was-named and for on long-excursions went-away the blessed
οὗτος βασιλεύς, οἷον εἰς Νικομήδειαν, εἰς τὸν Ὄλυμπον,
this emperor such-as to Nicomedia to the Olympus
εἰς τὰ Πύθια· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐπετηδεύσατο τὰ δύο
to the Pythia and because-of this he-contrived the two
δρομώνια εἰς ὑπηρεσίαν καὶ ἀνάπαυσιν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν
dromons for service and rest his both and of-the
ἀρχόντων αὐτοῦ. πολλάκις γὰρ ἐξερχομένου αὐτοῦ εἰς
officers his often for going-out him to
τὰ πλησίον πρόκενσα, τὴν μίαν οὐσίαν κατελίμπανεν εἰς
the near excursions the one squadron he-left at
τὸν Ἱππόδρομον πρὸς φύλαξιν τοῦ παλατίου, διὰ τὸ
the Hippodrome for guarding of-the palace because-of the
τάγμα τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ κατὰ τὸν ἐπικρατήσαντα παλαιὸν
regiment of-the Arithmos according-to the having-prevailed old
τύπον μετὰ τοῦ δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν ταξιδεύειν, καὶ
custom with the domestic of-the scholae to-campaign and
ἐναπομένοντες εἰς τὸν Ἱππόδρομον συνεξιοῦσι κατὰ
those-remaining at the Hippodrome go-out-with according-to
τύπον τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν εἰς τὰ πρόκενσα.
custom the emperors on the excursions
Ὅτι ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ ἄνωθεν βασιλικὸν ὀφφίκιον ἦν τῷ
that from (the)-beginning and from-of-old imperial (an)-office was to-the
πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ τῆς φιάλης· οὗτος δὲ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
protospatharius of-the Phiale this and the protospatharius
τῆς φιάλης ἐπεκράτει καὶ εἶχεν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν πάντας τοὺς
of-the Phiale held-power and had under him all the

ἐλάτας τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀγραρίων ῥουσίων τε καὶ μαύρων,
rowers of-the imperial agraria red both and black
ἄνευ τῶν ἀγραρίων τῆς Αὐγούστης· τὰ γὰρ ἀγράρια
except the agraria of-the Augusta the for agraria
τῆς Αὐγούστης τά τε ῥούσια καὶ μαῦρα ἐπεκράτει καὶ
of-the Augusta the both red and black controlled and
ἐξουσίαζεν ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης. ἐπὶ
had-authority-over the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta under
δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου
and the reign of-Leo the celebrated and most-wise
βασιλέως καινουργηθέντα τὰ δρομώνια κελεύσει βασιλικῇ
emperor newly-made the dromons by-order imperial
εἶχεν ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης καὶ τῶν
had the same protospatharius of-the Phiale also of-the
τοιούτων δρομωνίων τοὺς ἐλάτας ὑπὸ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἐξουσίαν.
such dromons the rowers under the his-own authority
ὁ οὖν προρρηθεὶς πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης καθ'
the then aforesaid protospatharius of-the Phiale by
ἑκάστην ἡμέραν καὶ καθ' ἑκάστην δείλην ἀπὸ παλαιοῦ
each day and by each evening from old
τύπου κατήρχετο καὶ ἐκαθέζετο ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ (διὰ τοῦτο
custom came-down and sat in the Phiale because-of this
γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης) καὶ τὰς
for also he-was-called protospatharius of-the Phiale and the
ἀναμεταξὺ δίκας τῶν ἐλατῶν τῶν τε ἀγραρίων καὶ τῶν
among(-them) suits of-the rowers of-the both agraria and of-the
δρομωνίων τῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐξουσιαζομένων ἔκρινε καὶ
dromons those by him being-governed he-judged and
κατὰ τὸ δίκαιον ἐδίκαζέ τε καὶ ἐδιοίκει· καὶ ἡνίκα
according-to the just judged both and administered and when
παρὰ τὸ δέον εὕρισκέ τινα ἢ ἐργαζόμενον ἤ τινα
contrary-to the needful he-found anyone either working or anyone

ἀδικοῦντα ἢ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν δουλείαν βαγεύοντα, τοῦτον διὰ
wronging or in the own service idling him with
μαγκλαβίων σφοδρῶν ἐπεξήρχετο. καὶ καθ' ὃν εἴρηται
whips violent he-punished and in which has-been-said
τρόπον, πάντες οἱ τῶν δρομωνίων ἐλάται καὶ οἱ τῶν τοῦ
way all the of-the dromons rowers and those of-the of-the
βασιλέως ἀγραρίων, τῶν ῥουσίων καὶ τῶν μαύρων, ὑπὸ
emperor agraria the red and the black under
τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν θεωρίαν ὑπῆρχον τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
the hand and the inspection were of-the protospatharius
τῆς φιάλης. τὰ δὲ τῆς Αὐγούστης ἀγράρια τά τε ῥούσια
of-the Phiale the and of-the Augusta agraria the both red
καὶ μαῦρα ὑπὸ τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν ἐφορείαν ὑπῆρχον
and black under the hand and the oversight were
τοῦ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης, δηλονότι τὸν λόγον
of-the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta evidently the account
τῶν ἀγραρίων τούτων ποιοῦντος τοῦ τῆς τραπέζης
of-the agraria these making the(-one) of-the table
οὐχὶ πρὸς τὴν Αὐγοῦσταν ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα. ἐπὶ
not to the Augusta but to the emperor under
δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως ἦν
and Leo the celebrated and most-wise emperor was
πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης ὁ Ἰωάννης, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην
protospatharius of-the Phiale — John whose the surname
ὁ Θαλάσσων, καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν γέγονεν ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
the Thalasson and after him became the protospatharius
ὁ Ποδάρων, καὶ μετ' ἐκεῖνον ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων ὁ
— Podaron and after that-one the protospatharius Leo the
Ἀρμένης ὁ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀρσενίου καὶ μαγκλαβίτου
Armenian the of-the protospatharius Arsenios and manglabites
πατήρ. οὗτοι δέ, ὅ τε ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Ποδάρων καὶ
father these and the both the protospatharius Podaron and

ὁ Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, πρωτελάται γεγόνασι τοῦ πατρικίου
— Leo the Armenian chief-rowers became of-the patrician
Νάσαρ καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου, καὶ ἐπὶ Βασιλείου
Nasar and drungarius of-the fleet and under Basil
τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου ἀνῆξαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πλωΐμου καὶ
the Christ-loving lord they-went-up from the fleet and
γεγόνασι πρωτελάται τοῦ ἀγραρίου τοῦ βασιλέως· ἐπὶ
became chief-rowers of-the agrarion of-the emperor under
δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου
and the reign of-Leo the celebrated and most-wise
βασιλέως, ἡνίκα καὶ τὰ δρομώνια ἐποίησε, διὰ τὴν
emperor when also the dromons he-made because-of the
ἀνδρίαν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν ἐμπειρίαν τῆς θαλάσσης ἐποίησεν
bravery their and the experience of-the sea he-made
αὐτοὺς πρωτοκαράβους. καὶ περιστάσεως γενομένης
them chief-captains and (a)-crisis having-arisen
εἰσήγαγεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῶν δύο δρομωνίων τοὺς ἐλάτας
put the emperor of-the two dromons the rowers
μετὰ τῶν δύο πρωτοκαράβων τοῦ πρώτου δρομωνίου εἰς
with the two chief-captains of-the first dromon on
χελάνδια πλώϊμα, δοὺς αὐτοῖς ἐξόπλισιν πολλὴν καὶ
warships of-the-fleet having-given them equipment much and
ἀναγκαίαν, οἷον σκουτάρια δόρκας κλιβάνια κάλλιστα,
necessary such-as shields hides corselets very-fine
καὶ ἄλλα ὅσα ἐπιδέονται πλώϊμοι στρατιῶται
and other(-things) as-many-as need seagoing soldiers
ἐπιφέρεσθαι· καὶ ἀνελάβετο αὐτοὺς ὁ πατρίκιος Εὐστάθιος
to-carry and took them the patrician Eustathios
καὶ δρουγγάριος τοῦ πλωΐμου μετὰ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στόλου,
and drungarius of-the fleet with the imperial fleet
καὶ ἀπῄει κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων. τοῦτο δὲ ὅλον ἐποίησεν ὁ
and went-away against the adversaries this and all did the

βασιλεὺς διὰ τὸ ἀποβλέπειν τὸν πατρίκιον Εὐστάθιον καὶ
emperor because-of the to-look the patrician Eustathios and
δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου πρὸς πόλεμον τῶν ἐναντίων. καὶ
drungarius of-the fleet to war of-the adversaries and
ἀντ᾽ ἐκείνων ἐκυβέρνα τὸ βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον Μιχαὴλ
in-place-of those piloted the imperial dromon Michael
ὁ γέρων καὶ συνετὸς ἐκεῖνος, ὄντων αὐτῶν τῷ τότε
the old-man and intelligent that being them at-the then
καιρῷ πρωτελατῶν. οἱ δὲ ἐλαύνοντες εἰς τὰ δρομώνια
time chief-rowers those and rowing in the dromons
ἕως τῆς ἐλεύσεως τῶν βασιλικῶν ἐλατῶν ὑπῆρχον
until the coming of-the imperial rowers were
Στενῖται ἐκ τῶν οὐσιῶν τοῦ Στενοῦ. ὅτε δὲ ὑπέστρεψαν
Stenites from the squadrons of-the Stenon when and they-returned
ἐκ τοῦ ταξιδίου, πάλιν ἦσαν εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν δουλείαν
from the campaign again they-were in the own service
καθὼς καὶ προϋπῆρχον. τότε οἱονεὶ φιλοτιμούμενος ὁ
as also they-had-been-before then as-it-were honoring the
βασιλεὺς τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον τὸν Ποδάρωνα διὰ τὸ
emperor the protospatharius — Podaron because-of the
ἀνδραγαθῆσαι αὐτὸν καὶ εὐδοκιμῆσαι ὑπὲρ πάντας
to-have-been-brave him and to-have-distinguished-himself above all
εἰς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ μαρτυρηθῆναι καὶ παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου
in the war and to-have-been-testified also by the patrician
Εὐσταθίου καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου ἕτερον τοιοῦτον
Eustathios and drungarius of-the fleet another such
μὴ εἶναι εἰς τὸ πλώϊμον ἐπί τε ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ διεγέρσει
not to-be in the fleet in both bravery and alertness
καὶ ταῖς λοιπαῖς ἀρεταῖς καὶ μάλιστα τῇ πρὸς τὸν
and the other virtues and especially the toward the
βασιλέα εὐνοίᾳ καὶ ὀρθῇ πίστει, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν
emperor goodwill and upright faith gave to-him also the

ἐξουσίαν τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλης. διά τε
authority of-the protospatharius of-the Phiale because-of and
τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν ἀγράμματον, προστάξει τοῦ βασιλέως
the to-be him unlettered by-command of-the emperor
κατήρχετο κριτὴς ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἱπποδρόμου καὶ συνεκαθέζετο
came-down (a)-judge from the Hippodrome and sat-with
μετὰ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ καὶ ἔκρινε τοὺς ἐλάτας. τὰ
with him in the Phiale and judged the rowers the
δὲ αὐγουστιακὰ ἀγράρια, καθὼς προείρηται, ἐπεκράτει
and Augusta's agraria as has-been-said-before controlled
ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης. μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ
the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta after this and
προεβάλετο ὁ βασιλεὺς τόν τε Ποδάρωνα καὶ τὸν
appointed the emperor — both Podaron and —
Λέοντα τὸν Ἀρμένην τοποτηρητὰς τοῦ βασιλικοῦ πλωΐμου·
Leo the Armenian topoteretai of-the imperial fleet
πρωτοκαράβους δὲ τοῦ δρομωνίου αὐτοῦ προεβάλετο τὸν
chief-captains and of-the dromon his he-appointed —
Μιχαὴλ ἐκεῖνον τὸν γέροντα, πρωτελάτην τῷ τότε καιρῷ
Michael that the old-man chief-rower at-the then time
δρομωνίου τυγχάνοντα, δευτεροελάτην δὲ γεγονότα τοῦ
of-(the)-dromon being second-rower and having-been of-the
ἀγραρίου Βασιλείου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου, καὶ τὸν
agrarion of-Basil the Christ-loving lord and the
ἕτερον Μιχαήλ, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην Βαρκαλᾶς, ὅστις ἦν
other Michael whose the surname Barkalas who was
πρότερον εἰς τὸ πλώϊμον πρωτελάτης τοῦ δρουγγαρίου
formerly in the fleet chief-rower of-the drungarius
Εὐσταθίου καὶ πατρικίου, ὅτε ἐπέρασε τοὺς Τούρκους
Eustathios and patrician when he-ferried-across the Turks
καὶ κατεπολέμησε τὸν Συμεὼν τὸν ἄρχοντα Βουλγαρίας.
and warred-down — Symeon the prince of-Bulgaria

οὗτος οὖν ὁ Συμεὼν ὁ ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας μαθὼν τὴν
this then — Symeon the prince of-Bulgaria having-learned the
τοῦ πλωΐμου πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν ἄφιξιν, καὶ ὅτι μέλλει
of-the fleet to the river arrival and that is-about
τὸ πλώϊμον τοὺς Τούρκους κατ' αὐτοῦ περᾶσαι, ἐποίησε
the fleet the Turks against him to-ferry made
λέσας ἤτοι πλοκὰς ἰσχυρὰς πάνυ καὶ στερεμνίους, ὥστε
wattles that-is plaitings strong very and solid so-that
μὴ δύνασθαι τοὺς Τούρκους ἀντιπερᾶν· δι' ἣν ἐπίνοιαν
not to-be-able the Turks to-cross-over by which device
καὶ ἐκωλύθησαν οἱ Τοῦρκοι τὸ πρῶτον περᾶσαι. ὁ οὖν
also were-hindered the Turks the first(-time) to-cross the then
προρρηθεὶς Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς μετὰ καὶ ἄλλων δύο
aforesaid Michael — Barkalas with also other two
πλωΐμων ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰ σκουτάρια καὶ σπαθία αὐτῶν,
seamen having-taken the shields and swords their
ἀνδρείῳ καὶ ῥωμαλέῳ ὁρμήματι ἐκπηδήσαντες τοῦ
with-(a)-brave and strong rush having-leapt from-the
χελανδίου κατέκοψαν τὰς λέσας ἤτοι τοὺς πλοκούς, καὶ
warship cut-down the wattles that-is the plaitings and
ἤνοιξαν τὸν πόρον Τούρκοις. τοῦτον οὖν τὸν Βαρκαλᾶν οἱ
opened the passage to-(the)-Turks this then — Barkalas the
Τοῦρκοι ἰδόντες καὶ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον αὐτοῦ ὑπερθαυμάσαντες,
Turks having-seen and the bravery his having-greatly-admired
ὅτι μόνος τῶν δύο προπορευόμενος πλωΐμων πρῶτος
that alone of-the two going-ahead seamen first
κατέκοψε τὸν πλοκόν, θαυμάσαντες εἶπον ὅτι τοῦτον
he-cut-down the plaiting having-wondered said that this-man
ἔπρεπεν ὀνομάζεσθαι πατρίκιον καὶ εἶναι κεφαλὴν τοῦ
it-befitted to-be-named patrician and to-be head of-the
πλωΐμου. τὴν οὖν τοῦ Βαρκαλοῦ ἀνδρειότητα ἀκούσας ὁ
fleet the then — of-Barkalas bravery having-heard the

βασιλεὺς ἐποίησεν αὐτὸν δευτεροελάτην εἰς τὸ δρομώνιον
emperor made him second-rower in the dromon
βασιλικόν. εἶθ' οὕτως τοῦ Ποδάρωνος καὶ τοῦ Λέοντος
imperial then thus — Podaron and — Leo
γενομένων τοποτηρητῶν προεβλήθη ὁ Μιχαὴλ ὁ γέρων
having-become topoteretai was-appointed — Michael the old-man
καὶ οὗτος ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς πρωτοκάραβοι τοῦ δρομωνίου.
and this — Barkalas chief-captains of-the dromon
Ὅτι ὁ προρρηθεὶς Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, ὁ πατὴρ
that the aforesaid Leo the Armenian the father
τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀρσενίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου τοῦ
of-the protospatharius Arsenios and manglabites the
τελευτήσαντος, τελευτᾷ τοποτηρητὴς ὢν εἰς τὸ πλώϊμον·
deceased dies topoteretes being in the fleet
ὁ δὲ πρωτοσπαθάριος ὁ Ποδάρων μετά τινας χρόνους
the and protospatharius — Podaron after some years
προεβλήθη στρατηγὸς ἐν τῷ θέματι τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν.
was-appointed general in the theme of-the Kibyrrhaiotai
Ὅτι τοῦ Ποδάρωνος γεγονότος τοποτηρητοῦ προεβλήθη
that — Podaron having-become topoteretes was-appointed
πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
protospatharius of-the Phiale the protospatharius
Θεοφύλακτος ὁ Βιμβιλίδης, ἀνεψιὸς τυγχάνων τοῦ
Theophylaktos the Bimbilides nephew being of-the
πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην Θαλάσσων,
protospatharius John whose the surname Thalasson
καὶ διήρκεσεν ἐν ἔτεσί τισι τῆς πρώτης αὐτοκρατορίας
and he-lasted for years some of-the first autocracy
Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ πορφυρογενήτου καὶ φιλοχρίστου
of-Constantine the porphyrogennetos and Christ-loving
δεσπότου. τούτου οὖν τελευτήσαντος, διὰ τὸ
lord him then having-died because-of the

ὑπεργηρᾶσαι τὸν προρρηθέντα Μιχαὴλ τὸν γέροντα
to-have-grown-very-old the aforesaid Michael the old-man
καὶ εἰς πολλῶν ἐτῶν περιόδους διατρῖψαι ἐν τῇ
and in of-many years cycles to-have-spent in the
τοῦ πρωτοκαράβου ὑπουργίᾳ ἐτιμήθη τῇ τοῦ
of-the chief-captain service he-was-honored with-the of-the
πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀξίᾳ καὶ προεβλήθη καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριος
protospatharius dignity and was-appointed also protospatharius
τῆς φιάλης. καὶ εἰσερχομένου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ
of-the Phiale and embarking the emperor at the Phiale
ἐν τῷ δρομωνίῳ καὶ ἀπιόντος εἴτε ἐν προκένσῳ εἴτε
on the dromon and departing whether on excursion or
ἀλλαχοῦ, ἵστατο ὁ καλὸς ἐκεῖνος γέρων καὶ ἀείμνηστος
elsewhere stood the good that old-man and ever-memorable
κατὰ τὴν τῆς θαλάσσης ἐμπειρίαν μέσον τοῦ
according-to the of-the sea experience in-(the)-middle of-the
δρομωνίου, προθυμοποιῶν καὶ προτρεπόμενος τοὺς τοῦ
dromon encouraging and urging the of-the
δρομωνίου ἐλάτας γενναιότερον καὶ ἀνδρειότερον ἐλαύνειν
dromon rowers more-nobly and more-bravely to-row
τε καὶ κωπηλατεῖν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τοῖς τότε πρωτοκαράβοις
both and to-ply-oars together and also to-the then chief-captains
ὑποτιθέμενος κατὰ τὴν δυσκρασίαν καὶ πνεῦσιν τῶν
advising according-to the inclemency and blowing of-the
ἀνέμων τὴν βασίλειον ναῦν πηδαλιουχεῖν τε καὶ κυβερνᾶν.
winds the imperial ship to-steer both and to-pilot
τούτου οὖν τελευτήσαντος, διὰ τὸ νήπιον τυγχάνειν τὸν
him then having-died because-of the infant to-be the
βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀδιάκριτον τοῦ πατρικίου Κωνσταντίνου καὶ
emperor and the indiscretion of-the patrician Constantine and
παρακοιμωμένου γέγονεν ὁ Θεόδοτος ἐκεῖνος πρωτοκάραβος,
parakoimomenos became — Theodotos that chief-captain

τῷ τότε καιρῷ πρωτελάτης ὤν, τιμηθεὶς κατὰ
at-the then time chief-rower being having-been-honored at
διαφόρους καιροὺς κανδιδᾶτος, στράτωρ, σπαθάριος,
various times candidatus strator spatharius
σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα πρωτοσπαθάριος
spatharocandidatus and after these(-things) protospatharius
καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης· ὃς ἦν γαμβρὸς τοῦ
and protospatharius of-the Phiale who was son-in-law of-the
προρρηθέντος Μιχαὴλ τοῦ γέροντος. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀπὸ
aforesaid Michael the old-man not-even for from
παλαιοῦ τύπου ποτὲ ἐγεγόνει ἢ ἐτιμήθη πρωτοκάραβος τοῦ
old custom ever had-been or was-honored (a)-chief-captain of-the
βασιλέως πρωτοσπαθάριος, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος,
emperor protospatharius but not-even spatharocandidatus
ἀλλ᾽ ἢ κανδιδᾶτος ἢ στράτωρ ἢ τὸ πολὺ σπαθάριος. ἐπὶ
but only candidatus or strator or the most spatharius under
δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως οὗτος
and Leo the celebrated and most-wise emperor this
μόνος ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἐτιμήθη σπαθάριος καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
alone — Michael was-honored spatharius and after these(-things)
σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος. διὰ δὲ τὸ ἀδιάκριτον τοῦ πατρικίου
spatharocandidatus because-of and the indiscretion of-the patrician
Κωνσταντίνου παρακοιμωμένου γεγόνασιν οἱ πρωτοκάραβοι
Constantine parakoimomenos became the chief-captains
σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτοι καὶ οὗτος ὁ Μιχαὴλ πρωτοσπαθάριος.
spatharocandidati and this — Michael protospatharius
τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ἀνελθόντος ἐν τῷ
the and emperor the lord Romanos having-gone-up into the
παλατίῳ καὶ τῆς βασιλείας οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅπως εἰπεῖν ἐγκρατοῦς
palace and of-the empire not I-know how to-say master
γενομένου, τὸν μὲν Θεόδοτον διὰ τὴν πρὸς Κωνσταντῖνον
having-become — indeed Theodotos because-of the toward Constantine

τὸν φιλόχριστον δεσπότην καὶ βασιλέα εὔνοιαν οὐ μόνον
the Christ-loving lord and emperor goodwill not only
διεδέξατο, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν διὰ δαρμοῦ καὶ κουρᾶς ὑπεξῆλθε
replaced but also the by flogging and tonsure he-underwent
τιμωρίαν, καὶ ἐν διηνεκεῖ παρέπεμπεν ἐξορίᾳ, ἐν ᾗ
punishment and into continual sent(-him) exile in which
καὶ τῷ τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο, ἐάσας τὸν σὺν αὐτῷ
also the end of-the life he-met having-let the with him
πρωτοκάραβον Κωνσταντῖνον ἐκεῖνον τὸν Λωρικάτον
chief-captain Constantine that the Lorikatos
διὰ τὸ διὰ φόβου εὐνοϊκῶς διακεῖσθαι πρὸς αὐτόν,
because-of the through fear well-disposed to-be toward him
καὶ ὅρκῳ ἰδιοχείρῳ ἐξαρνησάμενον τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
and by-oath handwritten having-renounced the toward the emperor
Κωνσταντῖνον εὔνοιαν καὶ ἀγάπην· ὃν πρῶτον μὲν
Constantine goodwill and love whom first indeed
σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον ἐτίμησε, καὶ πρῶτον πρωτοκάραβον
(with)-spatharocandidatus he-honored and first chief-captain
ποιήσας, καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον τῆς φιάλης προβαλόμενος
having-made and protospatharius of-the Phiale having-appointed
μετὰ ὀλίγον καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον ἐτίμησεν. οὗτος οὖν δι᾽
after little also (with)-protospatharius honored he then by
ὑπομνήσεως τοῦ κληρικοῦ Ἰωάννου καὶ κατὰ συγχώρησιν
(the)-prompting of-the cleric John and by permission
θεοῦ ῥαίκτωρος γεγονότος ὑπέθετο τῷ μακαρίτῃ τῷ
of-God raiktor having-become suggested to-the late the
βασιλεῖ κυρῷ Ῥωμανῷ ὅτι ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Θεοφύλακτος
emperor lord Romanos that the protospatharius Theophylaktos
καὶ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης, ἐπεὶ προβολὴ καὶ
also of-the table of-the Augusta since (an)-appointment and
ἀντίληψις τῆς μητρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως τυγχάνει καὶ αὐτοῦ
protégé of-the mother of-the emperor he-is and of-the-very

τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀνάγκη καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἰδίους δεσπότας καὶ
the emperor necessity also toward the own lords and
εὐεργέτας προσπαθεῖν. καὶ τίς ἡ χρεία τὸν λαὸν τῶν
benefactors to-be-partial and what the need the people of-the
ἀγραρίων τῆς φιάλης ἐν δυσὶν ἐξουσίαις διαιρεῖσθαι;
agraria of-the Phiale under two authorities to-be-divided
δύναται γὰρ ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης, τῇ
is-able for the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta by-the
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὴν Αὐγούστην εὐνοίᾳ κρατούμενος,
toward the emperor and the Augusta goodwill being-held
ἐξαπατῆσαι τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ κρατουμένους αὐγουστιατικοὺς
to-deceive the by him held Augusta's
ἀγραριώτας, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τοὺς τῶν δρομωνίων ἐλάτας,
agrarion-men often and also the of-the dromons rowers
καὶ μελετήσωσί τινα ἐπανάστασιν κατὰ τῆς βασιλείας
and they-might-plan some rising against the majesty
σου. ταῦτα εἰπὼν πείθει τὸν κακὸν ἐκεῖνον καὶ
your these(-things) having-said he-persuades the bad that and
σκολιὸν ῥαίκτωρα καὶ δι᾽ αὐτοῦ τὸν βασιλέα· εὔκολον
crooked raiktor and through him the emperor easy
γὰρ ἡ κουφότης καὶ ἀδιάκριτος γνώμη πρὸς ἅπαν τὸ
for the levity and undiscerning mind toward all the(-thing)
κακούργως λεγόμενον καὶ ὑποτιθέμενον ἀποπλανᾶσθαι καὶ
maliciously said and suggested to-be-led-astray and
ἐκκυλίεσθαι. καὶ εἰπὼν πείθει, καὶ πείσας δίδοται
to-be-rolled-away and having-spoken he-persuades and having-persuaded is-given
αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ τῶν αὐγουστιατικῶν ἀγραρίων ἐξουσία· καὶ
to-him also the of-the Augusta's agraria authority and
ἔκτοτε ἐπεκράτησε τὸ τὸν πρωτοκάραβον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
from-then prevailed the the chief-captain of-the imperial
δρομωνίου ἐπέχειν καὶ ἐξουσιάζειν πάντας τοὺς ἐλάτας
dromon to-control and to-have-authority-over all the rowers

τῶν τε δρομωνίων βασιλικῶν τε καὶ αὐγουστιατικῶν
of-the both dromons imperial both and Augusta's
ἀγραρίων, καὶ εἶναι καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον τῆς φιάλης.
agraria and to-be also protospatharius of-the Phiale
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ ἀειμνήστου καὶ φιλοχρίστου
(one)-must-know that under Leo the ever-memorable and Christ-loving
βασιλέως ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς δύσεως θεμάτων λογαρίου
emperor there-was from the of-the west themes of-cash
ἀπαίτησις διὰ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Λέοντος καὶ γεγονότος
(a)-levy through the protospatharius Leo and having-become
στρατηγοῦ τοῦ Τζικάνη ἐκ τῶν αἱρουμένων μὴ ταξιδεύειν.
general — Tzikanes from those choosing not to-campaign
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ φιλοχρίστου
(one)-must-know that also again under the same Christ-loving
καὶ ἀειμνήστου Λέοντος ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς δύσεως
and ever-memorable Leo there-was from the of-the west
θεμάτων λογαρίου ἀπαίτησις διὰ τοῦ μαγίστρου Ἰωάννου
themes of-cash (a)-levy through the magistros John
τοῦ Ἑλαδᾶ, τῷ τότε πατρικίου αὐτοῦ ὄντος.
the Eladas at-the then(-time) patrician him being
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου,
(one)-must-know that also again under Romanos (the)-lord
βουληθέντος ταξιδεῦσαι τοὺς Πελοποννησίους ἐν
having-wished to-campaign the Peloponnesians in
Λογουβαρδίᾳ, τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου τοῦ
Lombardy the protospatharius John the
Πρωτεύοντος ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ τότε στρατηγοῦντος,
Proteuon in Peloponnese then being-general
ᾑρετίσαντο οἱ αὐτοὶ Πελοποννήσιοι μὴ ταξιδεῦσαι ἀλλὰ
chose the same Peloponnesians not to-campaign but
δοῦναι ἱππάρια χίλια ἐστρωμένα καὶ χαλινωμένα καὶ
to-give horses thousand saddled and bridled and

λογάριον κεντηνάριον ἕν· ἅπερ μετὰ πολλῆς προθυμίας
cash centenarium one which with much eagerness
παρέσχον.
they-furnished

LII · THE LEVY OF HORSES IN THE PELOPONNESE

The chapter lists the horses demanded from the bishops, officials, and monasteries of the Peloponnese under the lord Romanos, the holders of imperial dignities, seamen, purple-fishers, and paper-makers who gave none, and the five nomismata required from each soldier, which made up a centenarium of coin.

ἡ γενομένη ἀπαίτησις τῶν ἱππαρίων ἐν τῷ θέματι
the having-been-made levy of-the horses in the theme
Πελοποννήσου ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου, καθὼς προείρηται.
of-Peloponnese under Romanos (the)-lord as has-been-said-before
Ὁ μητροπολίτης Κορίνθου ἱππάρια τέσσαρα, ὁ
the metropolitan of-Corinth horses four the
μητροπολίτης Πατρῶν ἱππάρια τέσσαρα, οἱ ἐπίσκοποι
metropolitan of-Patras horses four the bishops
πάντες τοῦ θέματος ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο, οἱ πρωτοσπαθάριοι
all of-the theme each horses two the protospatharii
ἀνὰ ἱππάρια τρία, οἱ σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτοι ἀνὰ ἱππάρια
each horses three the spatharocandidati each horses
δύο, οἱ σπαθάριοι, οἱ στράτωρες ἀνὰ ἱππαρίου ἑνός,
two the spatharii the stratores each horse one
τὰ βασιλικὰ καὶ πατριαρχικὰ μοναστήρια ἀνὰ ἱππάρια
the imperial and patriarchal monasteries each horses
δύο, τὰ τῶν ἀρχιεπισκόπων μητροπόλεων καὶ ἐπισκόπων
two the of-the archbishops of-metropolises and of-bishops
μοναστήρια ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο, τὰ ἄπορα μοναστήρια
monasteries each horses two the poor monasteries

σύνδυο ἱππάριον ἕν. οἱ δὲ ἔχοντες βασιλικὰ ἀξιώματα,
two-together horse one those and having imperial dignities
πλώϊμοι κογχυλευταὶ χαρτοποιοί, ἱππάρια οὐ δεδώκασιν.
seamen purple-fishers paper-makers horses not have-given
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ πᾶς ὁ στρατὸς Πελοποννήσου
(one)-must-know that also all the army of-Peloponnese
ἀπητήθησαν ὑπὲρ τοῦδε τοῦ ταξιδίου ἀνὰ νομίσματα ε΄, οἱ
were-required for this the campaign each nomismata 5 those
δὲ παντελῶς ἄποροι σύνδυο νομίσματα ε΄, ἐξ ὧν συνέστη
and utterly poor two-together nomismata 5 from which was-made-up
καὶ τὸ προρρηθὲν διὰ χαράγματος κεντηνάριον ἕν.
also the aforesaid through coin centenarium one

LIII · THE HISTORY OF CHERSON

Under Diocletian the Chersonites helped the Romans by taking Bosporus, and were rewarded with freedom and exemption from tax; under Constantine they fought for him beyond the Ister and were granted annonae as ballistarii. They later defeated two Sauromatai; Pharnakos killed the second in single combat by a trick, and the kingdom of the Sauromatai at Bosporus ended. Gykia learned through her maid that her Bosporan husband had hidden two hundred men in her house to burn the city, and she had the house burned over them. The citizens honored her with statues; when she feigned death to test their oath, they carried her outside the walls, and she rose and shamed them into swearing again. The chapter ends with naphtha springs and how Cherson can be brought to heel if it rebels.

ἱστορία περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος.
(a)-history concerning the fortress of-Cherson
Βασιλεύοντος Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐν Ῥώμῃ, ἐν δὲ τῇ
reigning Diocletian in Rome in and the
Χερσωνιτῶν στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος
of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) wearing-the-crown and being-first

Θεμιστοῦ τοῦ Θεμιστοῦ, Σαυρόματος ὁ ἐκ
Themistos the(-son) of-Themistos Sauromatos the(-one) from
τῶν Βοσποριανῶν, Κρισκωνόρου δὲ παῖς γενόμενος,
the Bosporans of-Kriskonoros and son having-been
συναθροίσας Σαρμάτας τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην οἰκοῦντας
having-gathered Sarmatians the Maeotis lake inhabiting
ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο κατὰ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ καταλαβὼν τὴν
encamped against (the)-Romans and having-reached the
τῶν Λαζῶν χώραν καὶ πολεμήσας τοὺς ἐκεῖσε φθάζει
of-the Lazi land and having-warred-upon those there arrives
καὶ ἕως τοῦ Ἅλυος ποταμοῦ. μαθὼν δὲ τοῦτο
even up-to the Halys river having-learned and this
ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός, πορθεῖσθαι τὴν τῶν Λαζῶν
the emperor Diocletian to-be-sacked the of-the Lazi
χώραν καὶ τὴν Ποντικήν, ἀπέστειλεν ἐκεῖσε στρατὸν
land and the Pontic(-land) sent there (an)-army
ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι Σαρμάταις βουλόμενος· ἦν δὲ ἔξαρχος
to-oppose (the)-Sarmatians wishing was and commander
τοῦ στρατοῦ Κώνστας τριβοῦνος. καὶ καταλαβὼν τὸν
of-the army Constans (a)-tribune and having-reached the
Ἅλυν ὁ Κώνστας σὺν τῷ στρατῷ κατέστη ἐκεῖσε,
Halys — Constans with the army took-position there
κωλύων Σαρμάτας ἀντιπερᾶσαι τὸν Ἅλυν. καὶ μὴ
preventing (the)-Sarmatians to-cross-over the Halys and not
δυναμένου αὐτοῦ ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι αὐτοῖς, ἐβουλεύετο
being-able him to-oppose them took-counsel
καθ' ἑαυτὸν ὁ Κώνστας μηδαμῶς ἄλλως δύνασθαι
by himself — Constans in-no-way otherwise to-be-able
τοὺς Σαρμάτας ἐκδιῶξαι, εἰ μή τί γε ἐκ τῶν
the Sarmatians to-drive-out if not something at-least from the
πλησιοχώρων τῆς Βοσποριανῶν καὶ τῆς Μαιώτιδος
neighbors of-the(-land) of-(the)-Bosporans and of-the Maeotis

λίμνης τινὰς κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐκπεμφθῆναι εἰς πόλεμον καὶ
lake some against them be-sent to war and
τὰς τούτων φαμιλίας ἐκπορθεῖσθαι, ὅπως ταῦτα ἀκούσας
the their households be-sacked so-that these(-things) having-heard
ὁ Σαυρομάτας ὑποστρέψῃ ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου· καὶ ταῦτα
— Sauromatos may-return from the war and these(-things)
μηνύσῃ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐφ᾽ ᾧτε ἀπέστειλε κατὰ τῶν
may-report to-the emperor on (condition)-that he-should-send to the
Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ τούτους διήγειρε κατὰ τῶν Σαρμάτων
Chersonites and them should-rouse against the Sarmatians
ὡς πλησιοχώρων αὐτῶν ὄντων, καὶ πολεμῆσαι τὰς αὐτῶν
as neighbors their being and to-war-upon the their
φαμιλίας πρὸς τὸ τὸν Σαυρομάταν ἀκούσαντα τὸ τάχος
households for the — Sauromatos having-heard the speed
ὑποστρέψαι ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς
to-return from the war the and emperor Diocletian
ταῦτα ἀκούσας ἀπέστειλεν εὐθέως κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν,
these(-things) having-heard sent at-once to the Chersonites
προτρεπόμενος συμμαχῆσαι αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπελθόντας τὴν
urging to-fight-alongside him and having-gone-away the
Βοσποριανῶν καὶ Σαρμάτων χώραν ἐκπορθῆσαι καὶ τὰς
of-Bosporans and of-Sarmatians land to-sack and the
τούτων φαμιλίας αἰχμαλωτίσαι. στεφανηφοροῦντος δὲ τότε
their households to-take-captive wearing-the-crown and then
καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν χώρας Χρήστου τοῦ
and being-first of-the of-(the)-Chersonites land Chrestos the(-son)
Παπίου, οἱ Χερσωνῖται τοῖς τοῦ βασιλέως ῥήμασιν ἀσμένως
of-Papias the Chersonites to-the of-the emperor words gladly
ὑπακούσαντες ἐμηχανῶντο λοιπὸν ποίῳ τρόπῳ δυνηθεῖεν
having-obeyed contrived then in-what way they-might-be-able
τήν τε τοῦ Σαυρομάτου πόλιν Βόσπορον καὶ τὰ τῆς
the both — of-Sauromatos city Bosporus and the of-the

Μαιώτιδος καστέλλια παραλαβεῖν. καὶ συναθροίσαντες τοὺς
Maeotis castles to-take and having-gathered the
τῶν πλησιοχώρων καστελλίων ἄνδρας καὶ κατασκευάσαντες
of-the neighboring castles men and having-made
ἅρματα πολεμικὰ καὶ ἐνθέντες ἐν αὐτοῖς τὰς λεγομένας
chariots war and having-placed on them the called
χειροβολίστρας παρεγένοντο κατὰ τὴν Βοσποριανῶν πόλιν,
hand-ballistae came against the of-(the)-Bosporans city
καὶ ποιήσαντες ἐγκρύμματα διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς ὀλίγιστοι
and having-made ambushes through the night very-few
προσῆψαν τὸν πόλεμον τῇ πόλει, καὶ τειχομαχήσαντες
joined the battle with-the city and having-fought-at-the-wall
ἀπὸ ὄρθρου ἕως ὥρας τρίτης ἐτεκμήραντο τοῦ φυγεῖν,
from dawn until (the)-hour third they-feigned of-the to-flee
μὴ προσδέξαντες τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἅρμασι κατεσκευασμένας
not having-awaited the on the chariots constructed
χειροβολίστρας. καὶ δὴ τῶν ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ νομισάντων
hand-ballistae and indeed those in — Bosporus having-supposed
ὡς δι᾽ ὀλιγότητα ἡττημένους φεύγειν τοὺς Χερσωνίτας,
that because-of fewness defeated to-be-fleeing the Chersonites
καταθαρρήσαντες ἑαυτῶν ἐξῆεσαν πρὸς δίωξιν αὐτῶν. οἱ δὲ
having-taken-courage themselves went-out for pursuit of-them the and
Χερσωνῖται ἠρέμα, φησί, φεύγοντες ταῖς χειροβολίστραις
Chersonites quietly he-says fleeing with-the hand-ballistae
τοὺς διώκοντας ἀνήλισκον Βοσποριανούς. ἀναστάντες δὲ
the pursuing destroyed Bosporans having-risen and
καὶ οἱ ἐνεδρεύοντες Χερσωνῖται, καὶ περικυκλώσαντες
also the lying-in-ambush Chersonites and having-surrounded
τοὺς Βοσποριανούς, πάντας αὐτοὺς κατέσφαξαν. καὶ
the Bosporans all them slaughtered and
ὑποστρέψαντες κατέλαβον τὴν Βόσπορον, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ
having-returned took — Bosporus likewise and also

τὰ πρὸς τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην καστέλλια καὶ πάσας
the toward the Maeotis lake castles and all
τὰς φαμιλίας τῶν Σαυροματῶν, καὶ ἐκαθέζοντο ἐν τῇ
the households of-the Sauromatai and they-sat in —
Βοσπόρῳ, μηδένα τοῦ λοιποῦ κατασφάζοντες πλὴν τῶν
Bosporus no-one of-the rest slaughtering except those
πολεμησάντων. καὶ ἐχόμενοι τὴν Βόσπορον ἐφύλαττον
having-fought and holding — Bosporus guarded
αὐτήν. ἡμερῶν δὲ τινῶν διαγενομένων λέγει Χρῆστος ὁ
it days and some having-passed says Chrestos the(-son)
τοῦ Παπίου ταῖς τῶν Σαυροματῶν γυναιξὶν ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐκ
— of-Papias to-the of-the Sauromatai women that we not
ἔχομεν χρείαν ὑμᾶς πολεμεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ ὁ Σαυρόματος
have need you to-war-upon but since — Sauromatos
ἀπῆλθε τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων χώραν πορθῆσαι, τούτου χάριν
went-away the of-the Romans land to-sack of-this for-the-sake
προτραπέντες ἡμεῖς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων ὡς
having-been-urged we by the emperor of-(the)-Romans as
ὑπήκοοι αὐτοῦ ὄντες ἐπολεμήσαμεν ὑμᾶς. ἐὰν οὖν θέλητε
subjects his being warred-upon you if then you-wish
ζῆσαι ἐν τῇ πόλει ὑμῶν, δεῦτε ἀποστέλλωμεν πρέσβεις πρὸς
to-live in the city your come let-us-send envoys to
τὸν κύριον ὑμῶν Σαυρόματον ἐφ' ᾧτε αὐτὸν ποιῆσαι
the lord your Sauromatos on (condition)-that he make
εἰρήνην μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐπ' ὄψεσι τῶν πρέσβεων
peace with the Romans in (the)-sight of-the envoys
ἡμῶν καὶ ἀναχωρῆσαι τῶν ἐκεῖσε, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀφίεμεν
our and withdraw from-the(-places) there and we let
ὑμᾶς καὶ ἀπερχόμεθα ἐν τῇ πόλει ἡμῶν, οὕτω μέντοι,
you(-go) and go-away to the city our thus however
προπέμποντος Σαυρόματος ἐνταῦθα τοὺς πρέσβεις ἡμῶν,
sending-ahead Sauromatos here the envoys our

καὶ μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων ἀνθρώπων μηνύων ἡμῖν τὰ τῆς
and with the own men announcing to-us the(-terms) of-the
εἰρήνης, καὶ οὕτως ἀφίωμεν ὑμᾶς καὶ ἀναχωροῦμεν. εἰ δὲ
peace and thus let-us-let you(-go) and we-withdraw if and
καὶ δοκιμάσῃ Σαυρόματος δόλῳ τινὶ ἔρχεσθαι ὡς νομίζων
also attempts Sauromatos by-guile some to-come as supposing
ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα συγκλεῖσαι καὶ πολεμῆσαι, καὶ γνῶμεν τοῦτο
us here to-shut-in and to-war-upon and we-know this
διὰ τῶν σκουλκατόρων ἡμῶν, πάντας ὑμᾶς ἀπὸ μικροῦ
through the scouts our all you from small
ἕως μεγάλου κατασφάξομεν, καὶ οὕτως ἀναχωροῦμεν
to great we-will-slaughter and thus we-withdraw
τῶν ἐντεῦθεν· καὶ τί τὸ λοιπὸν Σαυρομάτῳ ὄφελος
from-the(-places) here and what the then to-Sauromatos profit
τῆς φαμιλίας αὐτοῦ πάσης καὶ τῆς πόλεως ἀπολλυμένης;
of-the household his all and of-the city perishing
αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες Σαυρομάτου ταῦτα ἀκούσασαι σπουδαίως
the and women of-Sauromatos these(-things) having-heard eagerly
τοῦτο γενέσθαι παρεσκεύασαν. καὶ δὴ ἀποστέλλουσιν οἱ
this to-come-about arranged and indeed send the
Χερσωνῖται μετὰ Βοσποριανῶν καὶ ἰδίους πέντε πρέσβεις
Chersonites with Bosporans also own five envoys
πρὸς Σαυρόματον, μηνύοντες αὐτῷ τὰ γενόμενα
to Sauromatos announcing to-him the(-things) having-happened
καὶ λεχθέντα. καὶ δὴ τῶν πρέσβεων καταλαβόντων
and said and indeed the envoys having-reached
τὸν Σαυρόματον κατὰ τοὺς τοῦ Ἅλυος ποταμοῦ τόπους,
— Sauromatos at the of-the Halys river places
ἀνήγγειλαν αὐτῷ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα κατὰ τῶν
reported to-him all the(-things) having-happened against the
Βοσποριανῶν παρὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν. ὁ δὲ ἐν πολλῇ
Bosporans by the Chersonites he and in much

στενώσει γενόμενος, ὡς δῆθεν, φησί, βουλόμενος τοὺς
distress having-come as forsooth he-says wishing the
τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις ἐκ τῆς ὁδοιπορίας ἀναπαῦσαι,
of-the Chersonites envoys from the journey to-rest
λέγει αὐτοῖς "ἐπειδὴ κοπώμενοί ἐστέ, θέλω ὑμᾶς ὀλίγας
says to-them since tired you-are I-wish you few
ἡμέρας ἀναπαῆναι, καὶ εἶθ' οὕτως πάντα τὰ ὑφ'
days to-rest and then thus all the(-things) by
ὑμῶν λεχθέντα ποιήσω. ἐντεῦθεν ἀπέλθετε πρὸς τοὺς
you said I-will-do from-here go-away to the(-men)
Ῥώμης, καὶ μάθετε παρ' αὐτῶν, καὶ πείθεσθε ὅτι ἀληθεύω
of-Rome and learn from them and be-persuaded that I-speak-truth
ὑμῖν καὶ μὴ ψεύδομαι." τῶν δὲ Χερσωνιτῶν ἀπελθόντων
to-you and not I-lie the and Chersonites having-gone-away
πρὸς Κώνσταντα μετὰ καὶ πρέσβεων τοῦ Σαυρομάτου,
to Constans with also envoys — of-Sauromatos
ἐπύθοντο τὰ μεταξὺ αὐτῶν γενόμενα. ἀνήγγειλαν δὲ
inquired the(-things) between them having-happened they-reported and
τῷ Κώνστᾳ καὶ πάντα τὰ ὑπ' αὐτῶν κατὰ τῶν
— to-Constans also all the(-things) by them against the
Βοσποριανῶν καὶ τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην γενόμενα, καὶ τὸ
Bosporans and the Maeotis lake having-happened and the
πῶς τὰς φαμιλίας Σαυρομάτου παρέλαβον, καὶ ὅτι τῇ
how the households of-Sauromatos they-had-taken and that by-the
ἀνάγκῃ ταύτῃ εἰς εἰρήνην ἦλθεν ὁ Σαυρόματος. ἀκούσας
necessity this to peace came — Sauromatos having-heard
δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κώνστας πάνυ ἐλυπήθη, καὶ λέγει τοῖς
and these(-things) — Constans greatly was-grieved and says to-the
Χερσωνίταις "καὶ τί μοι τὸ ὄφελος λοιπὸν τῆς ὑμετέρας
Chersonites and what to-me the profit then of-the your
συμμαχίας, ἀφ' ἧς ἐγὼ ἐποίησα πάκτα δοῦναι αὐτοῖς
alliance from which I made tributes to-give to-them

χρυσίον τοσοῦτον;" λέγουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ Χερσωνῖται "μὴ
gold so-much say to-him the Chersonites not
λυπηθῇς, δέσποτα, καὶ ἐὰν θέλῃς, ἡμεῖς ἀναλύομεν τὸ
be-grieved master and if you-wish we undo the
περὶ τῆς δόσεως πάκτον." λέγει αὐτοῖς ὁ Κώνστας "καὶ
concerning the giving tribute says to-them — Constans and
πῶς δυνατόν;" λέγουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ Χερσωνῖται "δήλωσον
how (is-it)-possible say to-him the Chersonites declare
καὶ αὐτὸς τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἤδη μεταξὺ
also yourself — to-Sauromatos that the indeed already between
ἡμῶν γενόμενα πάκτα κεκράτηνται· ἐπεὶ οὖν τῇ αἰτίᾳ
us having-been-made tributes have-been-held since then by-the cause
τῇ σῇ κἀγὼ ἀναλώματα καὶ ζημίας πολλὰς ἐποίησα
the your I-too expenses and losses many made
σὺν τῷ στρατῷ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἕως ὧδε, δός μοι καὶ
with the army from Rome up-to here give to-me also
σὺ ταῦτα, κἀγώ σοι ἀποδίδωμι τὰς φαμιλίας σου
you these(-things) and-I to-you restore the households your
πάσας καὶ τὴν πόλιν σου." περιχαρὴς δὲ γενόμενος
all and the city your overjoyed and having-become
ὁ Κώνστας ἐμήνυσε ταῦτα τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ. ὁ δὲ
— Constans announced these(-things) — to-Sauromatos — and
Σαυρόματος ἀκούσας καὶ λυπηθεὶς σφόδρα μηνύει τῷ
Sauromatos having-heard and having-been-grieved greatly sends-word —
Κώνστᾳ λέγων ὅτι οὐ θέλω δοῦναί τί ποτ' οὖν οὐδὲ
to-Constans saying that not I-wish to-give anything ever then nor
λαβεῖν· ἀλλὰ μόνον ἀπόστειλόν μοι τοὺς Χερσωνίτας, ἵνα
to-receive but only send me the Chersonites so-that
τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀναχωρήσω. λέγουσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται
from-the(-places) here I-may-withdraw say the Chersonites
τῷ Κώνστᾳ "μὴ ἀπολύσῃς ἡμᾶς ἕως ἂν πάντας τοὺς
— to-Constans not release us until — all the

αἰχμαλώτους ἀπολάβῃς.” τότε μηνύει ὁ Κώνστας τῷ
captives you-receive-back then sends-word — Constans —
Σαυρομάτῳ λέγων ὅτι ἀπόστειλόν μοι πάντας οὓς ἂν
to-Sauromatos saying that send me all whom —
ἔχεις αἰχμαλώτους, καὶ ἀπολύω τοὺς Χερσωνίτας. ὁ δὲ
you-have captives and I-release the Chersonites — and
Σαυρόματος ταῦτα ἀκούσας ἄκων καὶ μὴ βουλόμενος
Sauromatos these(-things) having-heard unwilling and not wishing
ἀπέλυσεν ἅπαντας οὓς ἂν εἶχεν αἰχμαλώτους ἕως ἑνός.
released all whom — he-had captives to one
ἀπολαβὼν οὖν ὁ Κώνστας ἅπαντας τοὺς πραιδευθέντας,
having-received then — Constans all those plundered
δύο τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις κατασχὼν παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ,
two of-the Chersonites envoys having-kept with himself
τοὺς ἄλλους ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν Σαυρόματον· ὅστις
the others he-sent to — Sauromatos which
Σαυρόματος παραλαβὼν αὐτοὺς προαπέστειλεν ἐκ τῆς
Sauromatos having-taken them sent-ahead from the
τῶν Λαζῶν χώρας μετὰ καὶ τῶν ἰδίων ἀνθρώπων
of-the Lazi land with also the own men
πρὸς τὸ παραδοῦναι αὐτοῖς τήν τε Βόσπορον καὶ τὰς
for the to-hand-over to-them — both Bosporus and the
φαμιλίας αὐτῶν. αὐτὸς δὲ Σαυρόματος τὴν πορείαν
households their he and Sauromatos the journey
μετὰ τοῦ ἔθνους αὐτοῦ ἐν καταστάσει ἐποιεῖτο πρὸς τὸ
with the nation his in order made for the
ἀθρόους τοὺς Χερσωνίτας παραδοῦναι τὰς φαμιλίας καὶ
all-together the Chersonites to-hand-over the households and
ἀναχωρῆσαι. οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται τοὺς οἰκείους πρέσβεις
to-withdraw the and Chersonites the own envoys
ὑποδεξάμενοι ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ, καὶ μεμαθηκότες τὰ
having-received in — Bosporus and having-learned the(-things)

γενόμενα ἅπαντα ὑπὸ Κώνσταντος καὶ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου,
having-happened all by Constans and — Sauromatos
παρέδωκαν τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἀνθρώπῳ τήν τε Βόσπορον
handed-over — of-Sauromatos to-(the)-man — both Bosporus
καὶ τὰ τῆς Μαιώτιδος καστέλλια καὶ τὰς φαμιλίας πάσας
and the of-the Maeotis castles and the households all
ἀβλαβεῖς, καὶ κατέλαβον ἐν εἰρήνῃ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν.
unharmed and reached in peace the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land)
ὁ δὲ Κώνστας ἀναχωρήσαντος τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἐκ τῶν
— and Constans having-withdrawn — Sauromatos from the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν τόπων καὶ αὐτὸς ἀνέζευξεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ῥώμην, καὶ
Roman places also he marched-back to — Rome and
ἀνήγγειλε πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ ὑπὸ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν
reported all to-the emperor the(-things) by the Chersonites
γενόμενα, προσαγαγὼν καὶ τοὺς δύο αὐτῶν πρέσβεις,
done having-brought-forward also the two their envoys
οὕστινας ἰδὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ φιλοφρόνως ἀποδεξάμενος
whom having-seen the emperor and kindly having-received
καὶ τὰ μέγιστα εὐχαριστήσας εἶπεν αὐτοῖς "τί θέλετε
and the greatest having-thanked said to-them what do-you-wish
παράσχω ὑμῖν τε καὶ τῇ πόλει ὑμῶν ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης
I-may-furnish to-you both and to-the city your for the such
εὐνοίας τε καὶ συμμαχίας;" οἱ δὲ εἶπον τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅτι
goodwill both and alliance they and said to-the emperor that
ἡμεῖς, δέσποτα, οὐδὲν ἕτερον θέλομεν, εἰ μή τί γε
we master nothing other wish if not something at-least
τοῦτο μόνον αἰτοῦμεν, ἐφ' ᾧτε δεξιὰς ἐλευθερίας καὶ
this only we-ask on (condition)-that pledges of-freedom and
ἀτελείας παρασχέσθαι ἡμῖν ὑπὸ τοῦ κράτους ὑμῶν. ὁ δὲ
of-exemption be-furnished to-us by the might your the and
βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως ὑποκύψας τῇ αἰτήσει αὐτῶν ἀφθόνως
emperor gladly having-bowed to-the request their abundantly

παρέσχεν αὐτοῖς τὰς τοιαύτας τῆς ἐλευθερίας καὶ ἀτελείας
furnished to-them the such of-the freedom and of-exemption
δεξιάς, ἀποστείλας αὐτοὺς μετὰ καὶ δώρων πλείστων κατὰ
pledges having-sent them with also gifts very-many to
τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν ὡς γνησίους ὄντας αὐτοὺς ὑπηκόους
the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) as genuine being them subjects
τῆς Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας. ὁ δὲ Κώνστας μεγάλως καὶ
of-the of-(the)-Romans empire — and Constans greatly also
αὐτὸς ὑποδεχθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ
he having-been-received by the emperor Diocletian
ὡς ἀνδρείως παραταξάμενος κατὰ τὸν τῶν Σαυρομάτων
as bravely having-drawn-up in the of-the Sauromatai
πόλεμον καὶ περιφανὴς καὶ ἔνδοξος γενόμενος, μετ᾽
war and distinguished and glorious having-become after
ὀλίγον τινὰ χρόνον τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀνεδέχθη βασιλείας,
little some time the of-(the)-Romans received empire
Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν Νικομήδειαν ἐπαναγαγόντος.
Diocletian to — Nicomedia having-gone-back
Κώνστα δὲ τελευτήσαντος ἐν Ῥώμῃ ἐβασίλευσε
Constans and having-died in Rome reigned
Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ· καὶ ἐρχομένου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ
Constantine the son his and coming him to
τὸ Βυζάντιον ἀντιστάσεως αὐτῷ ὑπό τινων ἐν τῇ
— Byzantium resistance to-him by some in —
Σκυθίᾳ γενομένης, ὑπεμνήσθη τὸ ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
Scythia having-arisen he-remembered the(-thing) by the father
αὐτοῦ Κώνστα λεχθὲν περὶ τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν
his Constans said concerning the of-the Chersonites
εὐνοίας τε καὶ συμμαχίας, καὶ ἀπέστειλε κατὰ τὴν τῶν
goodwill both and alliance and sent to the of-the
Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις ἐφ᾽ ᾧτε ἐλθεῖν κατὰ τὴν
Chersonites envoys on (condition)-that to-come to the

τῶν Σκυθῶν χώραν καὶ μαχήσασθαι τοῖς ἀνθεστηκόσιν
of-the Scythians land and to-fight the(-ones) having-opposed
αὐτῷ. στεφανηφοροῦντος δὲ τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς
him wearing-the-crown and then and being-first of-the
Χερσωνιτῶν Διογένους τοῦ Διογένους, οἱ Χερσωνῖται
of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) Diogenes the(-son) of-Diogenes the Chersonites
τὴν κέλευσιν ἀσμένως πειθαρχήσαντες, πάσῃ σπουδῇ
the order gladly having-obeyed with-all eagerness
κατασκευάσαντες τά τε πολεμικὰ ἅρματα καὶ τὰς
having-made the both war chariots and the
χειροβολίστρας καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν Ἴστρον ποταμόν, καὶ
hand-ballistae reach the Ister river and
τοῦτον περάσαντες ἀντεπαρατάξαντο τοῖς ἀνθεστηκόσι
it having-crossed drew-up-against the(-ones) having-opposed
καὶ ἐτροπώσαντο αὐτούς. μαθὼν δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν
and routed them having-learned and the emperor the
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν γενομένην τροπὴν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς κατὰ
by them having-come-about rout ordered them to
τὴν ἐνεγκαμένην ἀπιέναι· τοὺς δὲ τούτων πρωτεύοντας
the having-borne(-them) to-go-away the and their first-men
προσκαλεσάμενος κατὰ τοῦ Βυζαντίου καὶ εὐχαριστήσας
having-summoned to — Byzantium and having-thanked(-them)
τὰ μέγιστα ἔφη αὐτοῖς "ἐπειδὴ καὶ νῦν εὐνοϊκῶς ὑπὲρ
the greatest said to-them since also now loyally on-behalf-of
ἡμῶν ἐκάμετε καθὼς καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν εὐσεβῶν προγόνων τῆς
us you-labored as also under the pious ancestors of-the
ἡμετέρας θειότητος, ἰδοὺ καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπικυροῦντες τὰς ἤδη
our divinity behold also we confirming the already
ἐπ᾽ ἐλευθερίᾳ καὶ ἀτελείᾳ δοθείσας ὑμῖν ἐν τῇ Ῥωμαίων
for freedom and exemption given to-you in the of-(the)-Romans(-land)
ἐκ τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας δεξιάς, παρέχομεν ὑμῖν καὶ
from the our majesty pledges furnish to-you also

ἡμεῖς ἀνδριάντα χρυσοῦν μετὰ καὶ χλαμύδος βασιλικῆς καὶ
we (a)-statue golden with also (a)-cloak imperial and
φιβλατούρας καὶ στέφανον χρυσοῦν πρὸς εὐπρέπειαν τῆς
(a)-brooch and (a)-crown golden for adornment of-the
ὑμετέρας πόλεως, μετὰ καὶ ἐγγράφου ἡμῶν ἐλευθερίας καὶ
your city with also written our of-freedom and
ἀτελείας ὑμῶν τε καὶ τῶν πλωΐμων ὑμῶν· καὶ πρὸς τὴν
of-exemption your both and of-the seamen your and for the
γνησιότητα τῆς ὑμῶν εὐνοίας δίδομεν ὑμῖν καὶ δακτυλίους
genuineness of-the your goodwill we-give to-you also rings
χρυσοῦς ἐκτυποῦντας τὰς ἡμετέρας εὐσεβεῖς εἰκόνας, δι᾽
golden bearing-the-image-of the our pious images by
ὧν τὰς κατὰ καιρὸν μελλούσας ἀποστέλλεσθαι ἡμῖν
which the in time about to-be-sent to-us
παρ᾽ ὑμῶν ἀναφοράς τε καὶ δεήσεις σφραγίζοντες ταύτας
by you reports both and petitions sealing these
γνωρίμους ἡμῖν ἀποδείκνυτε τοὺς ἑαυτῶν πρέσβεις. πρὸς
recognizable to-us you-show the your-own envoys besides
ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ παρέχομεν ὑμῖν καθ᾽ ἕκαστον ἔτος νεῦρόν
upon these and we-furnish to-you by each year sinew
τε καὶ κάναβον σίδηρόν τε καὶ ἔλαιον ὑπὲρ κατασκευῆς
both and hemp iron both and oil for construction
τῶν βαλιστρῶν ὑμῶν, καὶ δίδομεν ὑμῖν πρὸς ἀποτροφὴν
of-the ballistae your and we-give to-you for maintenance
ὑμῶν χιλίας ἀννόνας ἐφ᾽ ᾧτε εἶναι ὑμᾶς βαλισταρίους,
your thousand annonae on (condition)-that to-be you ballistarii
λεγόμενον ὡς τὰς τοιαύτας σιτήσεις τε καὶ συνηθείας
called as the such rations both and customary-allowances
πάσας καθ᾽ ἕκαστον ἔτος τῶν ἐντεῦθεν μέλλομεν ὑμῖν
all by each year from-the(-places) here we-are-about to-you
ἀποστέλλειν κατὰ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν.” οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται
to-send to the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) the and Chersonites

τὰς τοιαύτας εἰληφότες ἀννόνας, εἰς ἑαυτούς τε καὶ τὰ
the such having-received annonae among themselves both and the
τούτων τέκνα διαμερίσαντες τὸν ἀριθμὸν συνεστήσαντο·
their children having-divided the roll established
διὰ τὸ καὶ ἕως τοῦ νῦν τὰ τούτων τέκνα κατὰ
because-of the also until the now the their children according-to
τῶν γονέων τῆς στρατείας συμπλήρωσιν ἐν τῷ ἀριθμῷ
the parents of-the service (the)-complement in the roll
κατατάσσονται. ἐφοδίοις δὲ καὶ δώροις πλείστοις τότε
are-enrolled with-provisions and also with-gifts very-many then
τιμηθέντων ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοφιλοῦς βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου
having-been-honored by the God-loving emperor Constantine
τοῦ τε Διογένους καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ, κατέλαβον τὴν
— both Diogenes and those with him reached the
Χερσωνιτῶν ἀποκομίσαντες καὶ τὰς θείας φιλοτιμίας.
of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) having-carried-back also the divine favors
Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινὰς τοῦ ταῦτα γεγονέναι
after and years some of-the these(-things) to-have-happened
Σαυρόματος ὁ ἔγγονος Σαυρομάτου τοῦ Κρισκορόνου
Sauromatos the grandson of-Sauromatos the(-son) of-Kriskonoros
τοῦ πολεμήσαντος τὴν Λαζικήν, συναθροίσας πόλεμον
the(-one) having-warred-upon — Lazike having-gathered (a)-host
ἐκ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης ἐπανέστη τοῖς Χερσωνίταις,
from the Maeotis lake rose-up against-the Chersonites
βουλόμενος, φησί, τὴν τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας ὕβριν τοῦ οἰκείου
wishing he-says the of-the captivity insult of-the own
πάππου ἐκδικῆσαι τὴν παρ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ Διοκλητιανοῦ τοῦ
grandfather to-avenge the(-one) by them under Diocletian the
βασιλέως γενομένην. μαθόντες δὲ τοῦτο οἱ Χερσωνῖται,
emperor having-happened having-learned and this the Chersonites
στεφανηφοροῦντος τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσῶνος
wearing-the-crown then and being-first — of-Cherson

Βύσκου τοῦ Σουπολίχου, ἀντιπαραταξάμενοι καὶ αὐτοὶ
Byskos the(-son) of-Soupolichos having-drawn-up also they
ὑπήντησαν τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ ἔξω ἐν τοῖς τοῦ λεγομένου
met — Sauromatos outside in the of-the called
Καφᾶ τόποις, καὶ πολεμήσαντες μετὰ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ θεοῦ τοῖς
Kaphas places and having-warred with him — God to-the
Χερσωνίταις βοηθοῦντος, ἐνίκησαν τὸν Σαυρόματον καὶ
Chersonites helping conquered — Sauromatos and
ἐδίωξαν, θήσαντες καὶ ὁροθεσίας ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ λεγομένῳ
pursued(-him) having-set also boundary-marks in the same called
Καφᾷ, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ πολεμήσαντες τὸν Σαυρόματον
Kaphas in which place having-warred — Sauromatos
ἐνίκησαν· ἐν ᾧ καὶ ὅρκους ἐπετέλεσεν ὁ αὐτὸς Σαυρόματος
they-conquered in which also oaths performed the same Sauromatos
καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὑπολειφθέντες τοῦ μηκέτι αὐτοὺς χάριν
and those with him left-behind of-the no-longer them for-the-sake
πολέμου ὑπερβαίνειν τὰς μεταξὺ αὐτῶν τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας,
of-war to-cross the between them set boundary-marks
ἀλλ' ἕκαστον αὐτῶν τοὺς ἰδίους ἔχειν τόπους πρὸς
but each of-them the own to-have places toward
τὰς τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας. καὶ οὕτως ἀνεχώρησεν ἐπὶ τὴν
the set boundary-marks and thus withdrew to —
Βόσπορον ὁ Σαυρόματος καὶ οἱ Χερσωνῖται εἰς τὰ ἴδια.
Bosporus — Sauromatos and the Chersonites to the own(-places)
Καὶ δὴ τούτων οὕτω γενομένων πάλιν μετὰ χρόνους
and indeed these thus having-happened again after years
τινὰς ἕτερος Σαυρόματος ἀναστὰς καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ πλῆθος
some another Sauromatos having-risen and with him (a)-multitude
ἀνδρῶν ἐκ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης παρετάξατο πόλεμον
of-men from the Maeotis lake drew-up war
κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ παρελθὼν τὰς μεθ' ὅρκου
against the Chersonites and having-passed the with oath

τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας ἐν τῷ Καφᾷ ὑπὸ τοῦ πρώτου
set boundary-marks in — Kaphas by the first
γενομένου Σαυρομάτου τοῦ μηδένα ποτὲ ἐπιχειρῆσαι
having-been Sauromatos of-the no-one ever to-attempt
τῶν Βοσποριανῶν πολέμου χάριν ταύτας ὑπερβῆναι,
of-the Bosporans of-war for-the-sake these to-overstep
οὗτος ὁ Σαυρόματος ὑπερέβη ὡς οἷα βουλόμενος
this — Sauromatos overstepped as such-as wishing
τὴν μετὰ βίας αὐτῷ ἀφαιρεθεῖσαν γῆν ἐκδικῆσαι καὶ
the with force from-him taken-away land to-avenge and
ἀπολαβεῖν. καὶ δὴ ἐν τοῖς τότε καιροῖς στεφανηφοροῦντος
to-recover and indeed in the then times wearing-the-crown
καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν Φαρνάκου τοῦ
and being-first of-the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) Pharnakos the(-son)
Φαρνάκου ἀντιπαρετάξαντο καὶ οἱ Χερσωνῖται τῷ
of-Pharnakos drew-up-against also the Chersonites —
Σαυρομάτῳ, καὶ ἀπαντήσαντες ἀλλήλοις ἐν τοῖς τοῦ
Sauromatos and having-met each-other in the of-the
προειρημένου Καφᾶ τόποις ἔστησαν ἑκάτερα τὰ μέρη ἐν
aforesaid Kaphas places stood each the parts on
τοῖς ὄρεσιν. ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος ὢν μέγας τὴν ἡλικίαν
the mountains — and Sauromatos being great in-the stature
ἐθάρρησεν ἑαυτῷ καὶ ἐμεγαλαύχει κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν
took-courage in-himself and boasted against the Chersonites
φρυαττόμενος, θαρρῶν ἅμα καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἀπείρῳ
snorting trusting at-the-same-time also in the boundless
πλήθει τῷ μετ' αὐτοῦ ὄντι· ὁ δὲ Φάρνακος μικρὸς ἦν
multitude the(-one) with him being — and Pharnakos small was
τῇ ἡλικίᾳ κατὰ τὸν Σαυρόματον, καὶ ἰδὼν τὸ πλῆθος
in-the stature compared-to — Sauromatos and having-seen the multitude
τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἐσκέψατο μετὰ τοῦ ἰδίου στρατοῦ ἐφ'
— of-Sauromatos considered with the own army on

ὥτε μονομαχῆσαι αὐτὸν μετὰ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου καὶ
(condition)-that to-fight-in-single-combat him with — Sauromatos and
μὴ ἄπειρον πλῆθος ἀπολέσθαι. καὶ δὴ σκέψεως τοιαύτης
not (a)-boundless multitude to-perish and indeed consideration such
γενομένης δηλοῖ ὁ Φάρνακος τῷ πλήθει Σαυρομάτου,
having-happened makes-known — Pharnakos to-the multitude of-Sauromatos
λέγων ὅτι τίς χρεία ἐστὶ τοσούτου ὄχλου γενέσθαι
saying that what need is of-so-great (a)-crowd to-come-about
ἀπώλειαν; οὐ γὰρ ὑμεῖς οἰκείᾳ προαιρέσει πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον
destruction not for you by-own choice to the war
ἐτράπητε, ἀλλὰ Σαυρόματος ὑμᾶς προετρέψατο. θελήσατε
turned but Sauromatos you urged be-willing
οὖν τοῦτον παρακαλέσαι τοῦ μονομαχῆσαι μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ· καὶ
then him to-exhort of-the to-fight-in-single-combat with me and
ἐὰν διὰ τοῦ θεοῦ δυνηθῶ αὐτόν, ὑμεῖς ἀναχωρεῖτε εἰς τὰ
if through — God I-overcome him you withdraw to the
ἴδια ἀβλαβῶς, καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ πόλις αὐτοῦ ὑπέπεσάν
own(-places) unharmed and he and the city his have-fallen
μοι· εἰ δὲ καὶ δυνηθῇ με αὐτός, καὶ οὕτως ὑμεῖς ἀναχωρεῖτε
to-me if and also overcomes me he also thus you withdraw
εἰς τὰ ἴδια, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπέβη ἐν τοῖς ἐμοῖς. ὁ
to the own(-places) and he has-stepped into the my(-places) the
δὲ ὄχλος τῶν Σαυροματῶν ἡδέως τοῦτο ἀποδεξάμενος
and crowd of-the Sauromatai gladly this having-accepted
προετρέψατο τὸν Σαυρόματον μονομαχῆσαι μετὰ τοῦ
urged — Sauromatos to-fight-in-single-combat with —
Φαρνάκου. ὁ οὖν Σαυρόματος μαθὼν μικρὸν πάνυ
Pharnakos — then Sauromatos having-learned small very
ὄντα τῇ ἡλικίᾳ τὸν Φάρνακον, ἑαυτὸν δὲ ὑπερμεγέθη,
being in-the stature — Pharnakos himself and very-large
ἐχάρη ἐπὶ τούτῳ, πεποιθὼς τῇ οἰκείᾳ δυνάμει καὶ οἷς
rejoiced at this having-trusted in-the own strength and with-which

ἐκέχρητο ὅπλοις κατατεθωρακισμένος. καὶ τούτων
he-had-provided-himself arms fully-armored and these
οὕτως δοξάντων λέγει ὁ Φάρνακος τῷ ἰδίῳ στρατῷ
thus having-been-resolved says — Pharnakos to-the own army
ὅτι ὅταν κατέλθω διὰ τοῦ θεοῦ εἰς τὸ μονομαχῆσαι,
that when I-go-down through — God for the to-fight-in-single-combat
καὶ ἴδητε ὅτι ὁ Σαυρόματος τὰ νῶτα αὐτοῦ εἶχε πρὸς
and you-see that — Sauromatos the back his had toward
ὑμᾶς καὶ τὴν ὄψιν πρὸς τοὺς ἰδίους, ἐγὼ δὲ τὴν ὄψιν
you and the face toward the own(-men) I and the face
μου πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τὰ νῶτά μου πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους,
my toward you and the back my toward the opponents
ἅπαντες ὑμεῖς βάλλετε μίαν κραυγήν, καὶ μόνον λέγοντες
all you cast one shout and only saying
τὸ ἆ ἆ, καὶ μὴ δευτερώσητε ἐπὶ τῇ κραυγῇ. καὶ δὴ
the ah ah and not repeat at the shout and indeed
κατελθόντων αὐτῶν ἀμφοτέρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ πρὸς τὴν
having-gone-down them both into the plain for the
μονομαχίαν καὶ τρακτευόντων ἑαυτούς, καὶ τοῦ Φαρνάκου
single-combat and maneuvering themselves and — Pharnakos
γενομένου εἰς τὸ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου μέρος καὶ Σαυρομάτου
having-come to the — of-Sauromatos side and Sauromatos
εἰς τὸ τοῦ Φαρνάκου, ἔδωκεν ὁ τοῦ Φαρνάκου στρατὸς
to the — of-Pharnakos gave the — of-Pharnakos army
μίαν φωνὴν τὸ ἆ ἆ. ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος τῆς τοιαύτης
one cry the ah ah — and Sauromatos the such
φωνῆς ἀκούσας περιεστράφη ἰδεῖν ἐναγώνιος τίς ἡ
cry having-heard turned-round to-see anxious what the
γενομένη κραυγή· ἐν δὲ τῷ περιστρέψαι τὸν Σαυρόματον
having-happened shout in and the to-turn-round — Sauromatos
τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ὄψιν εἰς τὰ ὀπίσω διηνοίχθη μικρὸν τὸ
the his-own face to the back(-parts) was-opened (a)-little the

τοῦ κασσιδίου αὐτοῦ πέταλον, καὶ εὐθέως ἐπιδραμὼν ὁ
of-the helmet his plate and at-once having-run-at —
Φάρνακος ἔδωκε τῷ κόντῳ τὸν Σαυρόματον καὶ ἀνεῖλεν
Pharnakos struck with-the lance — Sauromatos and killed
αὐτόν. πεσόντος δὲ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου κατελθὼν ὁ
him having-fallen and — Sauromatos having-dismounted —
Φάρνακος τοῦ ἵππου ἀπεκεφάλισεν αὐτόν, καὶ γενόμενος
Pharnakos from-the horse beheaded him and having-become
ἐγκρατὴς τοῦ πολέμου τὸ μὲν πλῆθος τῆς Μαιώτιδος
master of-the war the indeed multitude of-the Maeotis
ἀπέλυσε, τοὺς δὲ τῆς Βοσπόρου αἰχμαλώτους λαβὼν καὶ
he-released the and — of-Bosporus captives having-taken and
τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν ἀφελόμενος ἐν Κυβερνικῷ ἄνω τῆς τῶν
the land their having-taken-away at Kybernikon above of-the of-the
Χερσωνιτῶν ὁροθεσίας ἔστησεν, ἄχρι τεσσαράκοντα καὶ
Chersonites boundary-mark he-set up-to forty and
μόνον μιλίων γῆν αὐτοῖς ἐάσας· αἵτινες ὁροθεσίαι μέχρι
only miles land to-them having-left which boundary-marks until
τοῦ νῦν διαμένουσιν, αἱ δὲ εἰρημέναι πρῶται ὁροθεσίαι ἐν
the now remain the and said first boundary-marks at
Καφᾷ εἰσὶν ἀποκείμεναι. ὀλίγους δέ τινας κατασχὼν παρ᾽
Kaphas are laid-up few and some having-kept with
ἑαυτῷ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν ὁ Φάρνακος γεωργῶν ἕνεκα,
himself of-the Bosporans — Pharnakos of-farmers for-the-sake
τοὺς ἄλλους ἅπαντας οἴκτου ἀξιώσας ἀπέλυσε κατὰ
the others all of-pity having-deemed-worthy be-released to
τῶν Βοσποριανῶν ἀπελθεῖν· οἵτινες ἀπολυθέντες ὑπὸ τοῦ
the Bosporans to-go-away who having-been-released by —
Φαρνάκου ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης εὐεργεσίας καὶ φιλανθρωπίας
Pharnakos for the such benefaction and humanity
αὐτοῦ τῆς εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένης στήλην αὐτῷ ἤγειραν
his the toward them having-come (a)-stele to-him raised

ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ. ἔκτοτε οὖν λοιπὸν ἡ τῶν Σαυρομάτων
in — Bosporus from-then then henceforth the of-the Sauromatai
ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ βασιλεία κατελύθη.
in — Bosporus kingdom was-dissolved
Τούτων δὲ οὕτω γενομένων, Λαμάχου στεφανηφοροῦντος
these and thus having-happened Lamachos wearing-the-crown
καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, Ἀσάνδρου δὲ τῆς
and being-first of-the of-the Chersonites(-land) Asandros and the
Βοσποριανῶν βασιλεύοντος, κακίᾳ πολλῇ μεμεστωμένοι
of-Bosporans(-land) reigning with-wickedness much filled
οἱ Βοσποριανοὶ κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν καὶ μηδαμῶς
the Bosporans against the Chersonites and in-no-way
δυνάμενοι τῇ πονηρίᾳ ἠρεμεῖν ἔσπευδον ἀεὶ τρόπῳ
being-able in-the malice to-be-quiet hastened always in-way
τινὶ τὴν ἀνταμοιβὴν τῶν αἰχμαλωσιῶν τοῖς Χερσωνίταις
some the requital of-the captivities to-the Chersonites
ἀποδοῦναι· καὶ δὴ μεμαθηκότες ἔχειν θυγατέρα μονογενῆ
to-pay and indeed having-learned to-have (a)-daughter only-begotten
τὴν Γυκίαν, ἔχοντος δὲ καὶ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱούς,
— Gykia having and also — Asandros sons
ἐμηχανῶντο ἐπιγαμβρίαν ποιήσασθαι, ὅπως διὰ τούτου
they-contrived (a)-marriage-alliance to-make so-that through this
ἀδεῶς ἐπιβαίνοντες τῇ Χερσωνιτῶν ἀμύνασθαι. καὶ
fearlessly setting-foot on-the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) to-take-revenge and
δὴ ἀποστέλλουσι πρέσβεις κατὰ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν
indeed they-send envoys to the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land)
παρακαλοῦντες, ἐὰν οἴδαμεν ὅτι ἀγάπη ἀληθὴς μεταξὺ ἡμῶν
exhorting if we-know that love true between us
ἐστὶν καὶ ἀδόλως πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἔχομεν, ἐπιγαμβρεύσομεν
is and without-guile toward each-other we-are we-will-ally-by-marriage
ἑαυτοῖς· καὶ δότε ἡμῖν εἰς νύμφην τὴν θυγατέρα Λαμάχου
ourselves and give us for (a)-bride the daughter of-Lamachos

τοῦ πρώτου ὑμῶν ἕνεκεν τοῦ υἱοῦ Ἀσάνδρου τοῦ κυρίου
the first your for-the-sake of-the son of-Asandros the lord
ἡμῶν, ἢ λάβετε αὐτὸν αὐτόθι εἰς γαμβρόν, καὶ οἴδαμεν ὅτι
our or take him there for son-in-law and we-know that
πιστὰ ἔχομεν εἰς ἀλλήλους, τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ βασιλεύοντος
pledges we-have toward each-other of-the son of-the reigning(-one)
μεθ' ὑμῶν. λέγουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Χερσωνῖται ὅτι ἡμεῖς
with you say to-them the Chersonites that we
πρὸς ὑμᾶς θυγατέρα ἡμῶν δοῦναι οὐκ ἀνεχόμεθα· εἰ
to you (a)-daughter our to-give not endure if
δὲ ἐκ τῶν υἱῶν Ἀσάνδρου τοῦ βασιλέως ὑμῶν θέλετε
and from the sons of-Asandros the king your you-wish
δοῦναι ἡμῖν εἰς γαμβρόν, δεχόμεθα, οὕτω μέντοι, μὴ
to-give us for son-in-law we-accept thus however not
δυναμένου ἔτι τοῦ υἱοῦ Ἀσάνδρου, τοῦ ἀρχομένου
being-able any-longer the son of-Asandros the(-one) beginning
πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐπιγαμβρεύσασθαι, καιρῷ ποτὲ ἢ χρόνῳ
to us to-ally-by-marriage at-season any or time
πειραθῆναι τοῦ ὑποστρέψαι κατὰ τὴν τῶν Βοσποριανῶν
to-attempt of-the to-return to the of-the Bosporans(-land)
χάριν ἐπισκέψεως ἢ προσηγορίας τοῦ οἰκείου πατρός·
for-the-sake of-visit or of-greeting of-the own father
εἰ δὲ τοῦτο βούλει, πάντως ὅτι τῇ ὥρᾳ ἀποθνήσκει,
if and this he-wishes surely that in-the hour he-dies
τῶν δὲ πρέσβεων ἀπολυθέντων καὶ καταλαβόντων τὴν
the and envoys having-been-released and having-reached the
Βοσποριανῶν καὶ ταῦτα ἀναγγελλόντων, ἀπέστειλε πάλιν
of-Bosporans(-land) and these(-things) reporting sent again
ὁ Ἄσανδρος πρέσβεις, λέγων τοῖς Χερσωνίταις ὅτι ἐὰν
— Asandros envoys saying to-the Chersonites that if
ἀληθῶς λέγετε καὶ πιστοποιεῖτέ με ὅτι Λάμαχος ἀνέχεται
truly you-speak and assure me that Lamachos consents

ζεῦξαι τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ τῷ μειζοτέρῳ μου υἱῷ,
to-yoke the daughter his to-the elder my son
ἀποστελῶ ὑμῖν αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνον αὐτόθι ἐπιγαμβρεύσασθαι.
I-will-send to-you him himself there to-ally-by-marriage
ἦν δὲ Λάμαχος τοῖς τότε καιροῖς, ὡς λόγος, πλούτῳ
was and Lamachos in-the then times as (the)-account in-wealth
πολλῷ κομῶν ἔν τε χρυσίῳ καὶ ἀργυρίῳ παισί τε
much abounding in both gold and silver in-menservants both
καὶ παιδίσκαις καὶ ἀλόγοις διαφόροις καὶ κτήμασι πολλοῖς,
and maidservants and beasts various and possessions many
καὶ τέσσαρσι δὲ ῥεγεῶσι τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ ἐπικρατεῖν ἐν
and over-four too quarters the house his to-hold-sway in
πλάτει καὶ μήκει, ἕως κάτω τῶν λεγομένων Σουσῶν,
breadth and length as-far-as below the called Sousai
ἐν οἷς καὶ ἰδίαν πύλην εἶχεν ἐν τῷ τείχει, καὶ τέσσαρας
in which also (an)-own gate he-had in the wall and four
πυλεῶνας μεγάλους εἰς τὴν εἴσοδον καὶ τὴν ἔξοδον,
gateways great for the entrance and the exit
σὺν ἑτέροις δὲ παραπυλίοις σεμνοῖς ὥστε εἰσερχομένων
with other and side-gates stately so-that entering
τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἑκάστην ἀγέλην ζώων,
the beasts his into the city each herd of-animals
ἵππων τε καὶ φορβάδων, βοῶν καὶ δαμάλεων, προβάτων
of-horses both and of-brood-mares of-oxen and of-heifers of-sheep
τε καὶ ὄνων, καὶ δι' ἰδίας πύλας εἰσιέναι καὶ εἰς
both and of-asses also through own gates to-enter and to
ἰδίαν στάσιν ἀπιέναι. παρεκάλεσαν οὖν οἱ Χερσωνῖται
own stall to-go-away exhorted then the Chersonites
τὸν Λάμαχον ἐφ' ᾧτε ἐπιγαμβρεύσεσθαι αὐτὸν τὸν
— Lamachos on (condition)-that to-take-as-son-in-law him the
τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱόν. τοῦ δὲ Λαμάχου ἐπινεύσαντος τῇ
— of-Asandros son — and Lamachos having-assented to-the

παρακλήσει αὐτῶν ἦλθεν ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱὸς ἐν τῇ
exhortation their came the — of-Asandros son into —
Χερσῶνι καὶ ἔγημε τὴν γυναῖκα. καὶ διετοῦς μικροῦ
Cherson and married the woman and two-years little
χρόνου διαγενομένου ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Λάμαχος· ἡ γὰρ
time having-passed died — Lamachos the for
μήτηρ τῆς Γυκίας προτελευτήσασα ἦν. ἡ οὖν Γυκία
mother — of-Gykia had-died-before was — then Gykia
μετὰ τὴν τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ περαίωσιν τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς ταφῆς
after the of-the year completion of-the of-the father burial
τῆς ἐνιαυσιαίας ἡμέρας ἐνστάσης, τὴν μνήμην θέλουσα
the anniversary day having-come the memory wishing
φαιδρῦναι τοῦ ἰδίου πατρός, στεφανηφοροῦντος τότε
to-brighten of-the own father wearing-the-crown then
καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσῶνος Ζήθου τοῦ Ζήθωνος,
and being-first — of-Cherson Zethos the(-son) of-Zethon
παρεκάλεσε τοῖς προύχουσι τῆς πόλεως ἐφ' ᾧτε
exhorted to-the leading-men of-the city on (condition)-that
ἄνευ ὕβρεως ἀναχθῆναι αὐτοὺς τοῦ λαβεῖν παρ' αὐτῆς
without insult to-be-brought-up them of-the to-receive from her
σὺν παντὶ τῷ δήμῳ οἶνόν τε καὶ ἄρτους καὶ ἔλαιον κρέα
with all the people wine both and loaves and oil meats
τε καὶ ὄρνεα καὶ ὄψα καὶ εἴ τι ἕτερον πρὸς τὴν τῆς
both and birds and relishes and if anything other for the of-the
εὐφρασίας χρείαν, πρὸς τὸ τὴν ἡμέραν τῆς μνήμης τοῦ
merriment need for the the day of-the memory —
Λαμάχου ἅπαντας τοὺς πολίτας σὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις
of-Lamachos all the citizens with wives and children
καὶ πάσῃ τῇ φαμιλίᾳ αὐτῶν εὐφρανθῆναι καὶ ἀγάλλεσθαι
and all the household their to-make-merry and to-exult
ἕκαστον ἐν τῷ ἰδίῳ ῥεγεῶνι καὶ δημοσίᾳ χορεύειν καὶ
each in the own quarter and publicly to-dance and

ἔργου τινὸς τὸ σύνολον μὴ ἅψασθαι, συνταξαμένη τοῖς
of-work any the at-all not to-touch having-arranged with-the
πολίταις ἐν ὅρκῳ ἐφ᾽ ᾧτε ἅπαντα τὸν χρόνον τῆς
citizens on oath on (condition)-that all the time of-the
ζωῆς αὐτῆς οὕτω τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας καθ᾽ ἕκαστον
life her thus the(-things) of-the merriment by each
χρόνον διδόναι αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τοῦ Λαμάχου μνήμῃ.
year to-give them on the same — of-Lamachos memorial
τούτων δὲ οὕτω γενομένων καὶ ἐν ὅρκῳ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῆς
these and thus having-happened and on oath by her
παγιωθέντων, ὁ ταύτης ἀνὴρ ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱὸς ἔχων
having-been-made-firm the her husband the — of-Asandros son having
ἐν κρυπτῷ τὸν δόλον καὶ ἐπιζητῶν καιρὸν προδοσίας,
in secret the guile and seeking (an)-occasion of-treachery
ἀκούσας ταῦτα τὰ παρὰ τῆς Γυκίας λεχθέντα
having-heard these(-things) the(-things) by — Gykia said
καὶ ἐν ὅρκῳ παγιωθέντα, ἐθαύμασε καὶ ἐπῄνεσε τὴν
and on oath made-firm wondered and praised —
Γυκίαν ἐπὶ τῇ ἐνόρκῳ συντάξει ὡς γνησίως περὶ τοὺς
Gykia for the sworn arrangement as genuinely toward the
γονεῖς ἔχουσαν, συνθέμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτός, φησί, χαίρειν
parents being having-agreed and also he he-says to-rejoice
καὶ σπένδειν ἐπὶ τῇ τοιαύτῃ συντάξει. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο
and to-pour-libation at the such arrangement and after this
παρελθούσης τῆς μνήμης καὶ τῆς εὐφρασίας δηλοῖ
having-passed the memorial and the merriment he-makes-known
τοῖς ἐν Βοσπόρῳ δι᾽ οἰκείου παιδός, λέγων αὐτοῖς ὅτι
to-those in Bosporus through own servant saying to-them that
εὗρον μέθοδον δι᾽ ἧς ἀκόπως τὴν Χερσῶνα μέλλομεν
I-have-found (a)-method through which without-toil — Cherson we-are-about
παραλαβεῖν. ὑμεῖς οὖν ἐκ διαλειμμάτων ἀποστέλλετέ μοι
to-take you then at intervals send me

δέκα ἢ δώδεκα νεωτέρους χρησίμους ἐκτὸς τῶν ἐν τῷ
ten or twelve young-men useful besides those on the
καράβῳ ἐλαυνόντων ὡς δῆθεν ξένιά μοι πέμποντες, ἐν
boat rowing as forsooth gifts to-me sending at
συμβόλῳ δὲ παραβαλλόντων τῶν ἐρχομένων καράβων
Symbolon and putting-in the coming boats
ὑμῶν καὶ ἐκεῖ μενόντων, ἐμοῦ δὲ πέμποντος καὶ δι᾽
your and there remaining I and sending and on
ἵππων φέροντος τοὺς ἐρχομένους νεωτέρους ἐν τῇ πόλει
horses bringing the coming young-men into the city
καὶ τὰ πεμπόμενα. καὶ δὴ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐπὶ
and the(-things) sent and indeed in-the way this for
διετῆ χρόνον ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ μέρος ἐρχομένων τῶν
(a)-two-year time from the by part coming the
Βοσποριανῶν μετὰ τῶν ξενίων, πρὸς τὸ μὴ γνωσθῆναι
Bosporans with the gifts for the not to-be-known
τῇ πόλει τὸν δόλον ἔφερε μὲν αὐτοὺς πεζικῶς ἐκ τοῦ
to-the city the guile he-brought indeed them on-foot from the
συμβόλου ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱός, καὶ μετὰ ἡμέρας τινὰς
Symbolon the — of-Asandros son and after days some
πάλιν ἐπὶ πάντων πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἀπέλυεν αὐτούς, φησίν,
again before all toward evening he-released them he-says
ἐπὶ τὰ ἔξω, ὡς δῆθεν βραδέστερον διὰ τὴν ὥραν·
to the outside as forsooth rather-late because-of the hour
οἱ δὲ ἐξερχόμενοι ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἄχρι τριῶν μιλίων
they and going-out from the country up-to three miles
σκοτιᾶς βαθείας γενομένης ὑπέστρεφον καὶ ἤρχοντο ἐν τῷ
darkness deep having-come returned and came to the
λεγομένῳ λίμνῳ καὶ ἐκεῖθεν διὰ καράβου ἔφερεν αὐτοὺς
called lake and from-there by boat he-brought them
ἐν ταῖς Σώσαις, καὶ διὰ τοῦ παραπυλίου, ὃ εἶχεν ἐν
into the Sousai and through the side-gate which he-had in

τῷ τείχει, εἰσέφερεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτοῦ μηδενὸς
the wall brought them into the house his no-one
εἰδότος, εἰ μή τί γε τρεῖς τῶν παίδων αὐτοῦ τῶν
knowing if not something at-least three of-the servants his the
Βοσποριανῶν καὶ μόνον πιστῶν αὐτοῦ ὄντων, ἑνὸς μὲν
Bosporans and only trustworthy his being one indeed
τοῦ ἐν συμβόλῳ ἀπερχομένου καὶ μηνύοντος ἀναχωρεῖν
the(-one) at Symbolon going-away and announcing to-withdraw
τοὺς καράβους, ἄλλου δὲ τοῦ ὑποστρέφοντος τοὺς
the boats another and the(-one) bringing-back the
Βοσποριανοὺς καὶ φέροντος ἐν λιμῶνι, ἑτέρου δὲ τοῦ
Bosporans and bringing(-them) to (the)-harbor another and the(-one)
ἐκ λιμῶνος μετὰ καράβου ἀποκομίζοντος ἐν ταῖς Σώσαις
from (the)-harbor with boat carrying(-them) into the Sousai
καὶ ἀποκαθιστῶντος ἐν τῷ τοῦ Λαμάχου οἴκῳ, καὶ δι᾽
and settling(-them) in the — of-Lamachos house and through
ὧν ἀπέτρεφεν αὐτοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἀποθήκαις αὐτοῦ, μήτε
whom he-fed them in the storehouses his not-even
τῆς Γυκίας εἰδούσης τὸν δόλον, προσδοκῶν, καθὰ εἴρηται,
— Gykia knowing the guile expecting as has-been-said
κατὰ τὴν ἐνιαυσίαν ἡμέραν τῆς τοῦ Λαμάχου μνήμης,
on the anniversary day of-the — of-Lamachos memorial
τῆς πόλεως πάσης εὐφραινομένης τε καὶ ἀποκοιμωμένης,
the city all making-merry both and falling-asleep
αὐτὸν τὴν νύκτα ἐπαναστῆναι μετὰ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν
he the night to-rise-up with the Bosporans
τε καὶ οἰκείων καὶ ἐμπρῆσαι τὴν πόλιν καὶ πάντας
both and household and to-burn the city and all
κατασφάξαι. συναχθέντων δὲ ἐν τῷ διετεῖ χρόνῳ ἐν τῷ
to-slaughter having-been-gathered and in the two-year time in the
τῆς Γυκίας οἴκῳ ἄχρι διακοσίων Βοσποριανῶν, καὶ τῆς
— of-Gykia house up-to two-hundred Bosporans and the

μνήμης τοῦ Λαμάχου ἤδη λοιπὸν ἐγγιζούσης, ἐγένετο
memorial — of-Lamachos already then approaching it-happened
παιδίσκην τῆς Γυκίας κουβουκλαρέαν, πάνυ αὐτῇ οὖσαν
(a)-maidservant — of-Gykia chamber-maid very to-her being
προσφιλέστατον, πταίσασαν ἀπὸ ὄψεως αὐτῆς γενέσθαι
dearest having-offended out-of (the)-sight her to-be
καὶ ἀποκλεισθῆναι αὐτήν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἴκῳ ἀπεκλείσθη
and to-be-shut-up she in which and house was-shut-up
ἡ παιδίσκη, ὑποκάτωθεν αὐτοῦ ἦσαν οἱ Βοσποριανοὶ
the maidservant beneath it were the Bosporans
ἀποτρεφόμενοι. τῆς δὲ παιδίσκης καθεζομένης καὶ νηθούσης
being-fed the and maidservant sitting and spinning
τὸ λίνον, ἐγένετο τὸ σφοντύλιν τῆς ἀτράκτου πεσεῖν καὶ
the flax it-happened the whorl of-the spindle to-fall and
κυλισθὲν εἰσελθεῖν εἰς βαθυτάτην ὀπὴν πρὸς τὸν τοῖχον· ἡ
having-rolled to-go into (a)-very-deep hole by the wall she
δὲ ἀναστᾶσα πρὸς τὸ ἐπᾶραι αὐτὸ ὁρᾷ αὐτὸ ἐν βαθυτάτῃ
and having-risen for the to-pick-up it sees it in (a)-very-deep
ὀπῇ ὄν· καὶ μὴ δυναμένης αὐτῆς ἐκσπάσαι αὐτὸ διὰ
hole being and not being-able she to-pull-out it because-of
τὸ βάθος, ἠναγκάσθη ἐκ τοῦ πάτου πρὸς τὸν τοῖχον
the depth was-compelled from the floor by the wall
ἀνασπάσαι ἕνα βήσαλον πρὸς τὸ τοῦτο ἐπᾶραι· καὶ ὁρᾷ
to-pull-up one brick for the it to-pick-up and sees
διὰ τῆς ὀπῆς κάτω ἐν τῷ ὑπογέῳ οἴκῳ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν
through the hole below in the underground room the multitude of-the
ὄντων ἀνδρῶν. καὶ ἰδοῦσα εὐφυῶς πάλιν ἀπέθετο ἐν τῷ
being men and having-seen cleverly again put in the
τόπῳ τὸ βήσαλον πρὸς τὸ μὴ γνωσθῆναι τοῖς κάτω· καὶ
place the brick for the not to-be-known to-those below and
λαθραίως ἀποστείλασα μίαν τῶν παίδων προσεκαλεῖτο τὴν
secretly having-sent one of-the servants summoned the

κυρίαν αὐτῆς τοῦ ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτήν, ὀφείλουσάν τι
mistress her of-the to-come to her (as)-needing something
ἀναγκαῖον ἀκοῦσαι καὶ ἰδεῖν. ἡ δὲ Γυκία ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ
necessary to-hear and to-see — and Gykia by — God
κατανυγεῖσα ἀπῆλθε πρὸς τὴν παιδίσκην· καὶ εἰσελθούσης
pricked-in-heart went-away to the maidservant and having-come
αὐτῆς κατὰ μόνας ἐν τῷ οἰκήματι καὶ κλεισάσης τὴν
she in private into the room and having-shut the
θύραν, πεσοῦσα ἡ παιδίσκη πρὸς τοὺς πόδας αὐτῆς εἶπε
door having-fallen the maidservant at the feet her said
"δέσποινα, ἐξουσίαν ἔχεις τὴν ἀχρείαν σου δούλην·
lady authority you-have-over the unprofitable your slave-woman
πλὴν βούλομαι τῇ κυρίᾳ μου ξένον τι καὶ παράδοξον
but I-wish to-the mistress my strange something and incredible
πρᾶγμα δεῖξαι." ἡ δὲ Γυκία εἶπεν αὐτῇ "ἀφόβως εἰπέ,
(a)-thing to-show — and Gykia said to-her fearlessly speak
δεῖξον· καὶ τί τὸ τοιοῦτον;" ἡ δὲ παιδίσκη ἀπαγαγοῦσα
show and what the such(-thing) the and maidservant having-led
αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸν τοῖχον, καὶ εὐφυῶς ἐπάρασα τὸ βήσαλον,
her to the wall and cleverly having-lifted the brick
λέγει αὐτῇ "ὁρᾷς διὰ τῆς ὀπῆς, δέσποινα, τὸν κάτω
says to-her do-you-see through the hole lady the below
κρυπτόμενον ὄχλον τῶν Βοσποριανῶν." ἡ δὲ Γυκία
hidden crowd of-the Bosporans — and Gykia
ἰδοῦσα καὶ ἐκπλαγεῖσα ἐπὶ τῷ πράγματι ἔφη "οὐκ
having-seen and having-been-astounded at the thing said not
ἀργὸν τὸ σκέμμα τοῦτο." καὶ λέγει τῇ παιδίσκῃ "πῶς
idle the scheme this and says to-the maidservant how
εὗρες τὸ πρᾶγμα τοῦτο;" ἡ δὲ παιδίσκη λέγει "πάντως,
did-you-find the thing this the and maidservant says surely
δέσποινα, ὅτι ἐκ θελήματος θεοῦ ἔπεσε τὸ σφοντύλιν
lady that by (the)-will of-God fell the whorl

ἐκ τῆς ἀτράκτου μου καὶ κυλισθὲν εἰσῆλθεν ἐν τῇ ὀπῇ
from the spindle my and having-rolled went into the hole
ταύτῃ, καὶ μὴ δυναμένης μου ἐπᾶραι αὐτὸ ἠναγκάσθην
this and not being-able I to-pick-up it I-was-compelled
τὸ βήσαλον ἀνασπάσαι, καὶ τότε εἶδον αὐτούς." ἡ δὲ
the brick to-pull-up and then I-saw them she and
ἐκέλευσε τῇ παιδίσκῃ ἀποθέσθαι τὸ βήσαλον εὐφυῶς ἐν
ordered to-the maidservant to-put-back the brick cleverly in
τῷ τόπῳ αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἐπιλαβομένη αὐτῆς καὶ περιπλακεῖσα
the place its and having-taken-hold-of her and having-embraced(-her)
κατεφίλησε γνησίως, καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ· "μηδὲν πτοηθῇς,
kissed(-her) genuinely and said to-her nothing be-afraid
τέκνον. συγκεχώρηταί σου τὸ πταῖσμα· ὁ γὰρ θεὸς
child has-been-forgiven your the offense — for God
ἠθέλησέ σε πταῖσαι, ἵνα τὸν δόλον ἡμῖν φανερώσῃ.
willed you to-offend so-that the guile to-us he-might-reveal
βλέπε οὖν ὅσῃ δυνάμει φυλάξαι τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ μὴ
see then with-what power to-guard the thing and not
τολμήσῃς τινὶ τὸ σύνολον τοῦτο θαρρῆσαι." καὶ λοιπὸν
dare to-anyone the at-all this to-confide and thereafter
εἶχεν αὐτὴν δι' ὅλου μεθ' ἑαυτῆς πλέον τοῦ πρώτου
she-kept her through all with herself more than-the first(-time)
ὡς πιστὴν αὐτὴν οὖσαν. καὶ προσκαλεσαμένη ἡ Γυκία
as faithful her being and having-summoned — Gykia
δύο τινὰς τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτῆς, πιστοὺς αὐτῇ ὄντας πάνυ,
two some of-the kinsmen her faithful to-her being very
λέγει αὐτοῖς ἐν τοῖς ἰδιάζουσιν "ἀπελθόντες συνάγετε
says to-them in the private(-rooms) having-gone-away gather
καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἐν μυστηρίῳ τοὺς πρωτεύοντας καὶ εὐγενεῖς
by yourselves in secret the first-men and nobles
τῆς πόλεως, καὶ ἐκλεξάτωσαν τρεῖς ἄνδρας πιστούς,
of-the city and let-them-choose three men faithful

δυναμένους φυλάξαι μυστήριον καὶ πρᾶγμα ποιῆσαι, καὶ
able to-keep (a)-secret and (a)-thing to-do and
πιστοποιήσουσιν αὐτοὺς οἱ πάντες ἐνόρκως πρὸς τὸ
will-assure them the all on-oath for the
καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐμὲ πληροφορῆσαι ἐν οἷς μέλλω
also them me to-satisfy in (the-things)-which I-am-about
ἐπερωτᾶν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀποστειλάτωσαν αὐτοὺς πρός με ἐν
to-ask them and let-them-send them to me in
μυστηρίῳ, καὶ ἔχω αὐτοῖς ἀναγκαῖόν τι καὶ ὠφέλιμον
secret and I-have for-them necessary something and useful
τῇ πόλει θαρρῆσαι. μόνον διὰ τάχους ποιήσατε ὃ
to-the city to-confide only with speed do what
λέγω ὑμῖν.” ἀπελθόντων δὲ τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτῆς καὶ ἐν
I-tell you having-gone-away and the kinsmen her and in
μυστηρίῳ ταῦτα τοῖς πρωτεύουσιν εἰρηκότων, εὐθέως
secret these(-things) to-the first-men having-told at-once
ἐξελέξαντο τρεῖς ἄνδρας, οὓς ᾔδεσαν αὐτοὶ πιστοὺς εἶναι,
they-chose three men whom knew they faithful to-be
καὶ πιστοποιήσαντες αὐτοὺς πάντες ἐν ὅρκῳ ὅτι εἴ τι
and having-assured them all on oath that if anything
συνθῶνται τῇ Γυκίᾳ εἴτε ποιῆσαι εἴτε δοῦναι, μὴ
they-agree — with-Gykia whether to-do or to-give not
ἀκυρῶσαι τοὺς λόγους αὐτῶν, ἀλλ’ εἰς πέρας ἀγαγεῖν
to-annul the words their but to (the)-end to-bring
τὰ ὑπ’ αὐτῶν συνταττόμενα αὐτῇ. τούτων δὲ πρὸς
the(-things) by them arranged with-her these and to
τὴν Γυκίαν ἐν μυστηρίῳ ἀπελθόντων, ἐδέξατο αὐτοὺς καὶ
— Gykia in secret having-gone-away she-received them and
λέγει αὐτοῖς “δύνασθέ με ἐν ὅρκῳ πληροφορῆσαι περὶ
says to-them can-you me on oath satisfy concerning
ὧν μέλλω ἐπερωτᾶν ὑμᾶς, ὅτι ποιεῖτε ταῦτα;”
(the-things)-which I-am-about to-ask you that you-do these(-things)

οἱ δὲ εἶπον αὐτῇ "ναί, κυρία, ἑτοίμως ἔχομεν περὶ
they and said to-her yes lady ready we-are concerning
ὧν μέλλεις ἡμῖν ἐπιζητεῖν πληροφορῆσαί σε ὅτι
(the-things)-which you-are-about of-us to-seek to-satisfy you that
εἰς πέρας ἄγωνται οἱ λόγοι σου." τότε λέγει αὐτοῖς ἡ
to (the)-end are-brought the words your then says to-them —
Γυκία "πληροφορήσατέ με ὅτι ἂν ἀποθάνω ἐν μέσῳ
Gykia satisfy me that if I-die in (the)-middle
τῆς πόλεώς με θάπτετε, καὶ λέγω ὑμῖν τὸ μυστήριόν μου.
of-the city me you-bury and I-tell you the secret my
ἰδοῦ βαρὺ ὑμῖν τί ποτε οὐκ ἐπιζητῶ." οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες
behold heavy to-you anything ever not I-seek the and men
ἀκούσαντες τοῦτο μετὰ πάσης προθυμίας ἐπληροφόρησαν
having-heard this with all eagerness satisfied
αὐτὴν ἐν ὅρκῳ, λέγοντες ὅτι ἐὰν τελευτήσῃς ἐν μέσῳ
her on oath saying that if you-die in (the)-middle
τῆς πόλεώς σε θάψομεν καὶ οὐκ ἐξάξομέν σε ἔξω τῶν
of-the city you we-will-bury and not we-will-carry you outside the
τειχῶν. ἡ δὲ Γυκία πεισθεῖσα τοῖς ὅρκοις αὐτῶν
walls — and Gykia having-been-persuaded by-the oaths their
λέγει αὐτοῖς "ἐφ' οἷς ἐπληροφορήσατέ με, κἀγὼ λοιπὸν
says to-them upon which you-have-satisfied me I-too then
ἐμφαίνω ὑμῖν τὸ μυστήριόν μου. ἰδοὺ εἰδέναι ὑμᾶς θέλω
reveal to-you the secret my behold to-know you I-wish
ὅτι ὁ ἀνήρ μου τὸ ἔμφυτον κακὸν τῆς πόλεως αὐτοῦ
that the husband my the inborn evil of-the city his
ἔχων, τὸ τοῦ δόλου καὶ φθόνου καθ' ἡμῶν, ὄχλον ἐκ
having the of-the guile and envy against us (a)-crowd from
τοῦ κατὰ μέρος Βοσποριανῶν ἐν κρυφῇ εἰσαγαγὼν ἐν τῷ
the by part Bosporans in secret having-brought-in into the
οἴκῳ μου ἄχρις διακοσίων ψυχῶν ἐνόπλων διατρέφει, ἐμοῦ
house my up-to two-hundred souls armed feeds I

μὴ εἰδυίας τὸ πρᾶγμα· ἀλλ᾽ ὁ θεὸς νῦν διὰ προφάσεως
not knowing the thing but — God now through (an)-occasion
ἐφανέρωσέ μοι αὐτό. αὐτὸς οὖν ταύτην ἔχει τὴν σκέψιν
revealed to-me it he then this has the scheme
ἐφ᾽ ᾧτε, φησίν, εἰς τὴν μνήμην τοῦ πατρός μου
on (condition)-that he-says on the memorial of-the father my
διδούσης μου τὴν εὐφρασίαν τῇ πόλει καὶ εὐφρανθέντων
giving I the merriment to-the city and having-made-merry
ὑμῶν ἀποκοιμωμένων αὐτὸν τὴν νύκτα ἐπαναστῆναι μετὰ
you falling-asleep he the night to-rise-up with
τῶν συνόντων αὐτῷ Βοσποριανῶν τε καὶ οἰκείων, καὶ
the(-ones) being-with him Bosporans both and household and
βαλεῖν ἐμπρησμὸν ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις ὑμῶν καὶ κατασφάξαι
to-throw fire in the houses your and to-slaughter
πάντας ὑμᾶς. ἰδοὺ λοιπὸν φθάζει καὶ ἡ μνήμη τοῦ πατρός
all you behold then arrives also the memorial of-the father
μου, καὶ δέον μέν ἐστι πρὸς τὸν ὅρκον μου δοῦναι
my and needful indeed it-is according-to the oath my to-give
ὑμῖν κατὰ τὸ ἔθος μου τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας· πάντα
you according-to the custom my the(-things) of-the merriment all
γὰρ ἑτοίμως ἔχω. θελήσατε οὖν πάντες προσδραμεῖν
for ready I-have be-willing then all to-run-up
χαίροντες καὶ ζητῆσαι καὶ λαβεῖν πάντα προθύμως,
rejoicing and to-ask and to-take all eagerly
πρὸς τὸ μήπω νοῆσαι αὐτὸν ὅτι ἔγνωμεν τὸ πρᾶγμα,
for the not-yet to-perceive him that we-have-known the thing
καὶ ἄφνω ἐμφύλιος πόλεμος γένηται. θελήσατε οὖν καὶ
and suddenly civil war arise be-willing then also
δημοσίως κατὰ τὸ ἔθος εὐφραίνεσθαι, συμμέτρως δέ,
publicly according-to the custom to-make-merry moderately but
καὶ χορεύειν ἐν ταῖς πλατείαις. ἑτοιμάσατε δὲ ἕκαστος ἐν
and to-dance in the streets prepare and each in

τοῖς οἴκοις ὑμῶν ξύλα τε καὶ φορτία καὶ δᾷδας στεγνὰς
the houses your wood both and loads and torches dry
πρὸς τὸ μισοποιούντων ὑμῶν τὰς εὐφρασίας καὶ τοὺς
for the half-finishing you the merriments and the
χοροὺς δόξασθαι πρὸς ἀνάπαυσιν ὑμῶν ἀπιέναι. καὶ ἐμοῦ
dances to-be-thought for rest your to-go-away and I
δὲ ταχέστερον μισοποιησάσης καὶ κελευούσης ἀσφαλισθῆναι
too more-quickly having-half-finished and ordering to-be-secured
τοὺς πυλεῶνάς μου, ὑμεῖς εὐθέως ἐν ἡσυχίᾳ πολλῇ σὺν
the gateways my you at-once in quiet much with
παισὶ καὶ παιδίσκαις ὑμῶν πανοικὶ παρενεγκόντες
servants and maidservants your with-all-the-household having-brought
τὰ ξύλα καὶ φορτία καὶ δᾷδας παράθετε ταῦτα ἐν τοῖς
the wood and loads and torches set these at the
πυλεῶσί μου καὶ παραπυλίοις καὶ κύκλῳ τῆς οἰκίας πάσης,
gateways my and side-gates and around the house all
ἐπιχέαντες καὶ ἔλαιον τοῖς ξύλοις πρὸς τὸ τάχιον ἀφθῆναι.
having-poured also oil on-the wood for the more-quickly to-be-kindled
καὶ ἡνίκα ἐξέλθω ἐγὼ καὶ εἴπω ὑμῖν, εὐθέως λάβετε τὴν
and when go-out I and say to-you at-once take the
πυράν, καὶ ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐν ὅπλοις παρεστήκετε κύκλῳ τῆς
fire and you too in arms stand-by around the
οἰκίας, ἵνα ὅπου τινὰς θεωρήσητε ἐκπηδῶντας ἐκ τοῦ
house so-that where anyone you-behold leaping-out from the
οἴκου διὰ θυρίδος τούτους κατασφάζητε. ἀπελθόντες οὖν
house through (a)-window these you-may-slaughter having-gone-away then
τὸ μυστήριον τοῦτο λαλήσατε, καὶ ἑτοιμάσατε πάντα ἃ
the secret this tell and prepare all-things which
εἶπον ὑμῖν." οἱ δὲ πολῖται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ἀπὸ τῶν
I-said to-you the and citizens these(-things) having-heard from the
τριῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐν συντομίᾳ κατὰ τὸν
three men did all-things in haste according-to the

λόγον τῆς Γυκίας. ἐνστάσης δὲ τῆς μνημοσύνου ἡμέρας,
word — of-Gykia having-come and the memorial day
ὡς δῆθεν χαιρομένη ἡ Γυκία μετεπέμψατο τοὺς τῆς
as forsooth rejoicing — Gykia sent-for the of-the
πόλεως ἄνδρας, προτρεπομένη τοῦ λαβεῖν αὐτοὺς τὰ
city men urging(-them) of-the to-take them the(-things)
τῆς εὐφρασίας· συνέτρεχε δὲ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἐπὶ
of-the merriment ran-together and also the husband her for
τοῦτο, καὶ παρεκάλει πλεῖον οἶνον δοθῆναι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ
this and urged more wine to-be-given them for
τῇ εὐφρασίᾳ. οἱ δὲ πολῖται ἀσμένως πάντα δεξάμενοι
the merriment the and citizens gladly all-things having-received
ηὐφραίνοντο καθὼς παρηγγέλθησαν, καὶ ἐχόρευον τὴν
made-merry as they-had-been-charged and danced the
πᾶσαν ἡμέραν· φθασάσης δὲ τῆς ἑσπέρας ἤρξαντο
whole day having-come and the evening began
μισοποιεῖν οἱ πολῖται καὶ ἀπιέναι ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις αὐτῶν
to-half-finish the citizens and to-go-away to the houses their
εἰς τὸ ἀναπαῆναι. ηὐφραίνοντο δὲ πανοικί. καὶ ἡ
for the to-rest made-merry and with-all-the-household also —
Γυκία ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτῆς προτρεπομένη πάντας τοὺς αὐτῆς
Gykia in the house her urging all those her
ἀδεῶς πίνειν πρὸς τὸ μεθυσθέντας αὐτοὺς τάχιον
fearlessly to-drink for the having-been-made-drunk them more-quickly
κοιμηθῆναι, μόνον ταῖς κουβικουλαρίαις αὐτῆς παρήγγειλε
to-fall-asleep only to-the chamber-maids her she-charged
τοῦ νήφειν καὶ ἑαυτὴν τοῦ οἴνου ἐφύλαττεν. εὑροῦσα
of-the to-be-sober and herself from-the wine she-guarded having-found
γὰρ ποτήριον πορφυροῦν δέδωκε τῇ κουβικουλαρέᾳ αὐτῆς
for (a)-cup purple she-gave to-the chamber-maid her
τῇ τὸ πρᾶγμα εἰδούσῃ, καὶ παρήγγειλεν αὐτῇ ἐν αὐτῷ
the(-one) the thing knowing and charged her in it

αὐτὴν κιρνᾶν σὺν ὕδατι· ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς θεωρῶν τὸ
her to-mix with water the and husband her seeing the
πορφυροῦν ποτήριον οὐχ ὑπενόει σὺν ὕδατι αὐτὴν πίνειν.
purple cup not suspected with water her to-drink
τῆς δὲ ἑσπέρας φθασάσης καὶ τῶν πολιτῶν, ὡς ἤδη
the and evening having-come and the citizens as already
εἶπον, μισοποιησάντων, λέγει τῷ ἀνδρὶ αὐτῆς ἡ Γυκία
I-said having-half-finished says to-the husband her — Gykia
"εὐφρανθέντων ἡμῶν δεῦρο λοιπὸν ἀναπαυθῶμεν καὶ
having-made-merry we come now let-us-rest also
ἡμεῖς." ὃ δὴ ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἀκούσας μᾶλλον ἐχάρη,
we which indeed the husband her having-heard more rejoiced
καὶ ἔπεσε τοῦ κοιμηθῆναι· οὐ γὰρ ἠδύνατο ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ
and fell of-the to-sleep not for he-was-able of himself
εἰπεῖν τοῦτο, μήπως ὑπόνοιαν δῷ τῇ γυναικὶ περὶ
to-say this lest suspicion he-give to-the wife about
οὗ ἐβουλεύετο δόλου. κελεύει οὖν ἡ Γυκία ἀσφαλισθῆναι
which he-was-planning guile orders then — Gykia to-be-secured
τοὺς πυλεῶνας καὶ πάντα τὰ παραθύρια καὶ ἐνεχθῆναι
the gateways and all the side-doors and to-be-brought
αὐτῇ τὰς κλεῖς κατὰ τὸ ἔθος· καὶ τούτου γενομένου
to-her the keys according-to the custom and this having-happened
λέγει ἐν τῷ λεληθότι τῇ πιστῇ αὐτῆς κουβικουλαρέᾳ
she-says in the having-escaped-notice to-the faithful her chamber-maid
τῇ τὸν δόλον εἰδούσῃ ὅτι θέλησον σὺν ταῖς λοιπαῖς
the(-one) the guile knowing that be-willing with the other
κουβικουλαρέαις εὐφυῶς ἐπᾶραι πάντα τὰ κόσμιά μου καὶ
chamber-maids cleverly to-take-up all the ornaments my and
τὸ χρυσίον καὶ εἴ τι χρήσιμον δύνασθε ἐγκολπίσασθαι,
the gold and if anything useful you-are-able to-put-in-your-bosom
καὶ ἑτοιμάσατε ἑαυτὰς ἵνα ὅταν εἴπω ὑμῖν, ἀκολουθήσατέ
and prepare yourselves so-that when I-say to-you follow

μοι. αἱ δὲ ποιήσασαι κατὰ τὴν κέλευσιν αὐτῆς ἦσαν
me they and having-done according-to the order her were
ἕτοιμαι. τοῦ δὲ ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς δῆθεν ἀνακλιθέντος τοῦ ἐκ
ready the and husband her forsooth having-lain-down of-the from
συντόμου κοιμηθῆναι διὰ τάχους αὐτὸν πάλιν ἀναστῆναι
short to-sleep with speed him again to-rise
πρὸς ἐπιβουλὴν τῆς πόλεως, ἡ δὲ Γυκία παρέσυρε τοῦ
for plot of-the city — and Gykia drew-on(-him) of-the
καθευδῆσαι ἕως ἂν πᾶσα ἡ φαμιλία αὐτῶν ἐκοιμήθη·
to-sleep until — all the household their had-fallen-asleep
ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἐκ τοῦ πολλοῦ πότου ἀφύπνωσεν. ἡ
the and husband her from the much drinking fell-fast-asleep —
δὲ Γυκία ἰδοῦσα τοῦτον κοιμηθέντα εὐφυῶς τὸν κοιτῶνα
and Gykia having-seen him asleep cleverly the bedchamber
τῷ κλειδίῳ ἠσφαλίσατο, ἀποκλείσασα τὸν ἄνδρα, καὶ
with-the key secured having-shut-in the husband and
κατελθοῦσα ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου σὺν ταῖς κουβικουλαρέαις αὐτῆς,
having-gone-down from the house with the chamber-maids her
ἐξελθοῦσα τῶν παραπυλίων ἡσύχως καὶ κλείσασα,
having-gone-out-of the side-gates quietly and having-shut(-them)
εὐθέως ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς τῆς πόλεως διὰ τάχους ἐμβληθῆναι
at-once she-committed to-those of-the city with speed to-be-thrown
τὸ πῦρ κύκλῳ τοῦ οἴκου. βληθέντος δὲ τοῦ πυρὸς
the fire around the house having-been-thrown and the fire
καὶ τοῦ οἴκου ἀναφθέντος, εἴ πού τις τῶν ἔσωθεν
and the house having-been-kindled if anywhere anyone of-those inside
ὄντων ἐκπηδῆσαι ἐδυνήθη ἢ ἑαυτὸν ῥῖψαι, ὑπὸ τῶν
being to-leap-out was-able or himself to-throw by the
πολιτῶν κατεσφάγη. τοῦ δὲ οἴκου παντὸς καὶ τῶν ἐν
citizens he-was-slaughtered the and house all and those in
αὐτῷ ἕως ἐδάφους καταφλεχθέντων διέσωσεν ὁ θεὸς τὴν
it to (the)-ground having-been-burned-down saved — God the

Χερσωνιτῶν πόλιν ἐκ τῶν ἐπιβούλων Βοσποριανῶν. ἡ δὲ
of-(the)-Chersonites city from the plotting Bosporans — and
Γυκία βουλομένων τῶν πολιτῶν τὴν καταφλεχθεῖσαν αὐτῆς
Gykia wishing the citizens the burned-down her
οἰκίαν ὀρύξαι καὶ καθᾶραι τὸν τόπον πρὸς οἰκοδομὴν οὐκ
house to-dig and to-clear the place for building not
εἴασεν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐπέτρεψε πάσῃ πόλει φέρειν ἕκαστον
allowed but rather committed to-all (the)-city to-bring each
αὐτῶν καὶ ἐγχέειν αὐτόθι τὴν πᾶσαν αὐτῶν κοπρίαν πρὸς
of-them and to-pour-in there the whole their dung for
τὸ ἐν αὐτοῖς καταχωσθῆναι τὴν πᾶσαν αὐτῆς οἴκησιν
the in them to-be-buried the whole her dwelling
ὡς πρὸς ἐπιβουλὴν τῆς πόλεως γενομένην· διὸ καὶ
as for plot of-the city having-been(-used) therefore also
ἐκλήθη ὁ τόπος Λαμάχου σκοπὴ ἕως τῆς σήμερον.
was-called the place of-Lamachos (the)-lookout until the today
Τούτων οὖν ἁπάντων γενομένων, ἰδόντες οἱ Χερσωνῖται
these then all having-happened having-seen the Chersonites
τὴν τοιαύτην ἄπειρον ὑπὸ τῆς Γυκίας εἰς αὐτοὺς μετὰ
the such boundless by — Gykia to them after
θεὸν γενομένην εὐεργεσίαν, καὶ ὅτι οὐδενὸς τῶν αὐτῆς
God having-come benefaction and that none of-the her(-things)
τὸ σύνολον ἐφείσατο ἀλλὰ τὴν σωτηρίαν τῆς πόλεως
the at-all she-spared but the safety of-the city
προετιμήσατο, ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης μισθαποδοσίας δύο χαλκοῦς
preferred for the such repayment two bronze
ἀνδριάντας πρὸς τιμὴν αὐτῆς ἐν τῇ πλατείᾳ τῆς πόλεως
statues for honor her in the square of-the city
ἀνήγειραν, νεάζουσαν αὐτὴν τῇ ἡλικίᾳ δεικνύοντες, καθ' ὃν
raised youthful her in-the age showing at which
καιρὸν ἦν τότε συμβαίνουσα, ἐν τούτοις δεικνύοντες καὶ
time she-was then happening(-to-be) in these showing also

τὴν αὐτῆς ἄφατον εὐεργεσίαν καὶ στοργὴν περὶ τοὺς πολίτας,
the her unspeakable benefaction and affection toward the citizens
ὅτι καὶ ἐν ἡλικίᾳ νέα οὖσα οὕτως ἐφρόνησε τὴν ἰδίαν
that also in age young being thus she-was-minded the own
πατρίδα μετὰ θεὸν περισῶσαι. ἐν μὲν γὰρ τῇ μιᾷ στήλῃ
fatherland after God to-save in indeed for the one statue
σωφρόνως αὐτὴν κεκαλλωπισμένην στήσαντες, καὶ τὰ
modestly her adorned having-set and the(-things)
τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς τοῦ οἰκείου ἀνδρὸς τοῖς πολίταις ἐμφαίνουσαν,
of-the plot of-the own husband to-the citizens revealing
ἐν δὲ τῇ ἑτέρᾳ ἐναγώνιον αὐτὴν καὶ ἐπαμυνομένην κατὰ
in and the other anxious her and defending-herself against
τῶν τῆς πόλεως ἐπιβούλων ἀποδεικνύοντες· ἐν οἷς καὶ
the of-the city plotters showing in which also
ἐπέγραψαν ἐν τῇ τοῦ ἀνδριάντος αὐτῆς βάσει ἅπασαν τὴν
they-inscribed on the of-the statue her base all the
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῆς μετὰ θεὸν γενομένην τοῖς πολίταις εὐεργεσίαν.
by her after God having-come to-the citizens benefaction
εἴπερ μέλλει τις εἶναι φιλόκαλος, τῆς αὐτῆς συνεχῶς
if is-about anyone to-be lover-of-the-beautiful of-the same continually
κατὰ καιρὸν τὴν βάσιν ἀποσμήχει πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
at times the base he-scours for the of-the(-things) on it
γενομένων ἀνάγνωσίν τε καὶ ὑπόμνησιν τῶν ὑπ᾽
having-been(-written) reading both and remembrance of-the(-things) by
αὐτῆς γενομένων, ἔλεγχον δὲ τῶν ἐπιβούλων Βοσποριανῶν.
her done refutation and of-the plotting Bosporans
Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινὰς στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος
after and years some wearing-the-crown and being-first
τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν Στρατοφίλου τοῦ Φιλομούσου, πάνυ
of-the Chersonites Stratophilos the(-son) of-Philomousos very
σοφωτάτη οὖσα ἡ Γυκία καὶ θέλουσα δοκιμάσαι τοὺς
most-wise being — Gykia and wishing to-test the

Χερσωνίτας καὶ γνῶναι εἰ ἄρα ἀληθῶς μέλλωσι τὴν τοῦ
Chersonites and to-know if then truly they-are-about the of-the
ὅρκου ὑπόσχεσιν ἐκπληροῦν καὶ θάπτειν αὐτὴν ἐν μέσῳ
oath promise to-fulfill and to-bury her in (the)-middle
τῆς πόλεως, συλλογισαμένη μετὰ τῶν παιδισκῶν αὐτῆς
of-the city having-reasoned with the maidservants her
ἐποίησεν ἑαυτήν τινα ἀηδιζομένην καὶ ἀποθανοῦσαν· καὶ
made herself as-it-were ailing and having-died and
κηδεύσασαι αὐτὴν αἱ παιδίσκαι ἐμήνυσαν τοῖς πολίταις,
having-laid-out her the maidservants announced to-the citizens
λέγουσαι ὅτι ἡ κυρία ἡμῶν ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ ἐν ποίῳ τόπῳ
saying that the mistress our has-died and in what place
μέλλει θάπτεσθαι, ὑποδείξατε ἡμῖν. οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται
she-is-about to-be-buried show us the and Chersonites
ἀκούσαντες ὅτι τέθνηκεν ἡ Γυκία, σκεψάμενοι καθ' ἑαυτοὺς
having-heard that has-died — Gykia having-considered among themselves
οὐκέτι τὸ ἱκανὸν τοῦ ὅρκου ἔσπευσαν ποιῆσαι ὥστε ἐν
no-longer the sufficient(-part) of-the oath hastened to-do so-that in
μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως αὐτὴν ταφῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἄραντες αὐτὴν
(the)-middle of-the city she to-be-buried but having-lifted her
ἐξήνεγκαν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως αὐτὴν ταφῆναι. ἀποτεθέντος
carried(-her)-out outside the city her to-be-buried having-been-set-down
δὲ τοῦ κραβάτου πρὸς τὸ μνῆμα ἀνακαθίσασα ἡ Γυκία,
and the bier at the tomb having-sat-up — Gykia
καὶ περιβλεψαμένη πάντας τοὺς πολίτας, λέγει "αὕτη ὑμῶν
and having-looked-round-at all the citizens says this your
ἐστὶν ἡ μετὰ ὅρκου ὑπόσχεσις; οὕτως ἀληθεύετε περὶ
is the with oath promise thus you-speak-truth about
πάντων; ἀβάλα λοιπὸν τῷ πιστεύοντι Χερσωνίτῃ πολίτῃ."
all-things alas then to-the trusting Chersonite citizen
οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται ἰδόντες τὴν ὑπ' αὐτῆς γενομένην αὐτῶν
the and Chersonites having-seen the by her having-come their

χλεύην, αἰσχυνθέντες μεγάλως ἐπὶ τῷ γεγονότι τῆς
mockery having-been-ashamed greatly at the having-happened of-the
παραβάσεως πράγματι, παρεκάλουν αὐτὴν πολλὰ τοῦ
transgression matter begged her much of-the
ἡσυχάσαι καὶ παραχωρῆσαι αὐτοῖς τὸ πταῖσμα καὶ μὴ
to-be-quiet and to-forgive them the offense and not
ἐπὶ πλεῖον ὀνειδίζειν αὐτοῖς. λοιπὸν δευτέροις ὅρκοις αὐτὴν
to more to-reproach them then with-second oaths her
ἐπιστώσαντο ὥστε μηκέτι ἔξω τῆς πόλεως θάψαι αὐτήν,
they-assured so-that no-longer outside the city to-bury her
ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως. ὃ δὴ καὶ ἐποίησαν·
but in (the)-middle of-the city which indeed also they-did
καὶ γὰρ αὐτῆς ζώσης ἔτι ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ ἡρετίσατο τὴν
and for her living still in which place she-chose the
σορὸν αὐτῆς ἐστήσαντο, καὶ ἀνδριάντα χαλκὸν καὶ ἕτερον
coffin her they-set-up also (a)-statue bronze and another
ἤγειραν, καὶ τοῦτον χρυσώσαντες ἔστησαν πρὸς τῇ ταφῇ
they-raised and this-one having-gilded set by the tomb
αὐτῆς πρὸς περισσοτέραν πίστωσιν.
her for greater assurance
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἔξω τοῦ κάστρου Ταμάταρχα πολλαὶ
(one)-must-know that outside the fortress Tamatarcha many
πηγαὶ ὑπάρχουσιν ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσαι.
springs are naphtha sending-up
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν Ζηχίᾳ πρὸς τὸν τόπον τῆς Πάγης τῆς
(one)-must-know that in Zichia toward the place — of-Page the(-one)
οὔσης πρὸς τὸ μέρος τῆς Παπαγίας, ἐν ᾧ κατοικοῦσι
being toward the part — of-Papagia in which dwell
Ζηχοί, ἐννέα πηγαὶ εἰσὶν ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσαι· πλὴν οὐχ
Zichians nine springs are naphtha sending-up but not

ὁμοχροοῦσι τῶν ἐννέα πηγῶν τὰ ἔλαια, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν ἐξ
are-of-one-color of-the nine springs the oils but the indeed of
αὐτῶν εἰσὶν ἐρυθρὰ τὰ δὲ ξανθὰ τὰ δὲ μελανώτερα.
them are red the(-others) and yellow the(-others) and blacker
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν Ζηχίᾳ ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τῷ καλουμένῳ
(one)-must-know that in Zichia in the place the(-one) called
Πάπαγι, ἐν ᾧ καὶ πλησίον ἔστι χωρίον ἐπονομαζόμενον
Papagi in which also near is (a)-village named
Σαπαξί, ὃ ἑρμηνεύεται κονιορτός, ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε βρύσις
Sapaxi which is-interpreted dust there-is there (a)-fountain
ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσα.
naphtha sending-up
Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ ἑτέρα βρύσις ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε ἄφθαν
(one)-must-know that also another fountain is there naphtha
ἀναδιδοῦσα ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ τῷ καλουμένῳ Χαμούχ.
sending-up in the village the(-one) called Chamouch
τὸ δὲ Χαμούχ ἐστιν ὄνομα τοῦ συστησαμένου ἀρχαίου
— and Chamouch is (the)-name of-the having-founded ancient
ἀνδρὸς τὸ χωρίον· τὸ οὖν χωρίον ἐκεῖνο διὰ τοῦτο
man the village the then village that because-of this
ἐκλήθη Χαμούχ. ἀπέχουσι δὲ οἱ τοιοῦτοι τόποι ἀπὸ τῆς
was-called Chamouch are-distant and the such places from the
θαλάσσης ὁδὸν ἰδιοκαβάλλου ἡμέρας μιᾶς.
sea (a)-journey of-single-horseman of-day one
Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τῷ θέματι Δερζηνῆς, πλησίον τοῦ
(one)-must-know that in the theme of-Derzene near the
χωρίου τὰ Σαπικίου καὶ τοῦ χωρίου τοῦ ὀνομαζομένου
village — Sapikiou and the village the(-one) named
Ἐπισκοπίου, ἔστι πηγὴ ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσα.
Episkopion is (a)-spring naphtha sending-up

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τῷ θέματι τοῦ Τζιλιάπερτ ὑπὸ τὸ
(one)-must-know that in the theme — of-Tziliapert under —
Σρεχιαβαρὰξ ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε πηγὴ ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσα.
Srechiabarax there-is there (a)-spring naphtha sending-up
Ἰστέον ὅτι εἰ ἀντάρωσί ποτε οἱ τοῦ κάστρου
(one)-must-know that if rebel ever those of-the fortress
Χερσῶνος ἢ ἐναντία τῶν βασιλικῶν κελεύσεων βουληθῶσι
of-Cherson or contrary-to the imperial orders wish
διαπράξασθαι, ὀφείλουσι τηνικαῦτα ὅσα εὑρεθῶσιν ἐν
to-act they-ought then as-many-as be-found in
τῇ πόλει Χερσωνιτικὰ καράβια μετὰ τοῦ γόμου αὐτῶν
the city Chersonite ships with the cargo their
εἰσκομίζεσθαι· οἱ δὲ ναῦται καὶ ἐπιβάται Χερσωνῖται ἵνα
to-be-confiscated the and sailors and passengers Chersonites that
δεσμεύωνται καὶ ἐναποκλείωνται εἰς τὰ ἐργαλεῖα, εἶθ᾽
they-be-bound and shut-up in the workhouses then
οὕτως ὀφείλουσιν ἀποσταλῆναι τρεῖς βασιλικοί, εἷς μὲν ἐν
thus ought to-be-sent three imperial-agents one indeed on
τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν, ἕτερος δὲ ἐν
the coast of-the theme of-the Armeniakoi another and on
τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος Παφλαγονίας, καὶ ἄλλος ἐν τῇ
the coast of-the theme of-Paphlagonia and another on the
παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων, ἵνα πάντα τὰ
coast of-the theme of-the Boukellarioi that all the
Χερσωνιτικὰ καράβια κρατῶσι, καὶ τὸν μὲν γόμον καὶ τὰ
Chersonite ships they-seize and the indeed cargo and the
καράβια εἰσκομίζωσι, τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους δεσμεύωσι καὶ
ships confiscate the and men bind and
ἐναποκλείωσιν εἰς δημοσίους φυλακάς, καὶ ἀναγάγωσι περὶ
shut-up in public prisons and refer about
τούτων καὶ ὡς ἂν δέξωνται. πρὸς τούτοις ἵνα
these(-things) and as — they-receive(-orders) in-addition-to these that

οἱ τοιοῦτοι βασιλικοὶ κωλύωσι καὶ τὰ Παφλαγονικὰ καὶ
the such imperial-agents prevent also the Paphlagonian and
Βουκελλαρικὰ πλοῖα καὶ πλαγιτικὰ τοῦ Πόντου τοῦ μὴ
Boukellarian vessels and coastal(-craft) of-the Pontus of-the not
διαπερᾶν ἐν Χερσῶνι μετὰ σίτου ἢ οἴνου ἢ οἱας δήποτε
to-cross to Cherson with grain or wine or of-what soever
χρείας ἢ πράγματος. εἶθ' οὕτως ὀφείλει δέξασθαι καὶ
need or merchandise then thus ought to-receive(-orders) also
ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῦ κόψαι καὶ τὰς δέκα λίτρας τὰς
the general of-the to-cut-off also the ten pounds the(-ones)
διδομένας ἀπὸ τοῦ δημοσίου εἰς τὸ κάστρον Χερσῶνος
given from the treasury to the fortress of-Cherson
καὶ τὰς δύο τοῦ πάκτου, καὶ τηνικαῦτα ἀναχωρῆσαι
and the two of-the tribute and then to-withdraw
ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος τὸν στρατηγόν, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ἐν ἑτέρῳ
from Cherson the general and to-go-away to another
κάστρῳ, καὶ καθεσθῆναι ἐκεῖσε.
fortress and to-sit there
Ὅτι ἐὰν οὐ ταξιδεύσωσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται εἰς Ῥωμανίαν
that if not they-voyage the Chersonites to Romania
καὶ πιπράσκωσι τὰ βυρσάρια καὶ τὰ κηρία, ἅπερ ἀπὸ
and sell the hides and the wax which from
τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν πραγματεύονται, οὐ δύνανται ζῆσαι.
the Pechenegs they-trade not they-are-able to-live
Ὅτι ἐὰν μὴ ἀπὸ Ἀμισσοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ Παφλαγονίας καὶ τῶν
that if not from Amisos and from Paphlagonia and the
Βουκελλαρίων καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλαγίων τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν
Boukellarioi and from the coasts of-the Armeniakoi
περάσωσι γεννήματα, οὐ δύνανται ζῆσαι οἱ Χερσωνῖται.
cross produce not are-able to-live the Chersonites